

M O D E L

567

CAR CARRIER



© 2026 PACCAR Inc. - All rights reserved

This manual illustrates and describes the operation of features or equipment which may be either standard or optional on this vehicle. This manual may also include a description of features and equipment which are no longer available or were not ordered on this vehicle. Please disregard any illustrations or descriptions relating to features or equipment which are not on this vehicle. PACCAR reserves the right to discontinue, change specifications, or change the design of its vehicles at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation. The information contained in this manual is proprietary to PACCAR. Reproduction, in whole or in part, by any means is strictly prohibited without prior written authorization from PACCAR Inc.

Safety	1
Emergency	2
Controls	3
Driving	4
Maintenance	5
Information	6

CHAPTER 1: SAFETY

1	Using This Manual.....	5
2	Safety Messages and Notes.....	5
3	Illustrations.....	6
4	General Safety Instructions.....	6
5	Data Recorder.....	8
6	Environmental Protection Agency.....	9
7	Repairs.....	9
8	Additional Sources of Information.....	10
9	Cab Access.....	10
10	Deckplate Access.....	12
11	How to Open the Hood.....	13
12	Seat.....	15
13	What to Do Before Starting the Vehicle.....	23
14	Vehicle Loading.....	24
15	Visual Inspection While Approaching the Vehicle.....	25
16	Daily Checks.....	25
17	Weekly Checks.....	26
18	Systems Check.....	27

1 USING THIS MANUAL

Please take the time to get acquainted with your vehicle by reading this operator's manual. We recommend that you read and understand this manual from beginning to end before you operate this equipment. This manual contains useful information for the safe and efficient operation of this equipment. It also provides maintenance information, with an outline for performing safety checks and basic preventive maintenance inspections. When replacement parts are needed, we recommend using only genuine PACCAR parts. We have tried to present the information needed to learn about functions, controls, and operation—and to present it as clearly as possible. Occasionally, you may need to reference this manual, and we hope you find it easy to use.

NOTE

After you have read this manual, it should be stored in the cab for convenient reference and remain with this vehicle when sold.

Your vehicle may not have all the features or options mentioned in this manual. Therefore, you should pay careful attention to the

instructions that pertain to just your vehicle. In addition, if your vehicle is equipped with special equipment or options not discussed in this manual, consult your dealer or the manufacturer of the equipment.

This manual includes several tools to help you find information quickly. The first is the Table of Contents, located at the front of the manual. This table arranges the subject matter into chapters, which you can reference using the numbers shown in the outer margin. The first page of each chapter presents a list of the major subjects contained in that chapter. Cross-referenced citations can also help you find information. If more information on the current subject is located elsewhere in the manual, a cross-reference may be provided, such as "see Safety Messages and Notes on page 5." Finally, you will find a helpful index at the back of the manual which lists the subjects covered alphabetically.

All information contained in this manual is based on the latest production information available at the time of publication. If you find differences between your instruments and the information in this manual, contact an authorized Peterbilt dealer. Peterbilt Motors Company reserves the right to make changes at any time without notice.

2 SAFETY MESSAGES AND NOTES

Read and follow all safety messages in this manual. When followed, injury to yourself and others, damage to equipment and/or property, or other unknown hazards are reduced. Both safety messages and notes are emphasized using a safety message symbol and one of three signal words: WARNING, CAUTION, or NOTE. Do not ignore any of these messages.

Warnings



Safety messages that follow this symbol and signal word provide a warning against operating procedures, actions, or a lack of action that could result in death or injury. An unheeded warning may also result in damage to equipment, property, or the environment. Warning messages will identify the hazard, how to avoid it, and the probable consequence of not avoiding the hazard.

Example:

**WARNING**

DO NOT change hot engine oil as you could be burned. Let the engine cool down before changing the engine oil. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Cautions

Safety messages that follow this symbol and signal word provide a caution against operating procedures, actions, or a lack of action that could result in equipment, property, or environmental damage. Caution messages will identify the hazard, how to avoid it, and the probable consequence of not avoiding the hazard.

Example:

**CAUTION**

DO NOT operate your vehicle with insufficient oil pressure as this will cause serious engine damage. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

Notes

Messages that follow this symbol and signal word provide important information that, while not safety related, should still be followed. A note will provide information that may be useful to the reader: clarifying the topic, providing valuable insight into the topic or process, or saving the reader time and effort.

Example:

**NOTE**

Pumping the accelerator pedal will not assist in starting the engine.

3 ILLUSTRATIONS

Some of the illustrations found in this manual are generic. They will not look exactly like the parts or assemblies you find installed on the vehicle.

When an illustration differs from what you see physically present on the vehicle, the language describing the procedure is still correct for the application.

4 GENERAL SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS**WARNING**

Improper practices, carelessness, or ignoring safety messages – Warnings and Cautions – may cause death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Before performing any repair, read and understand all of the safety precautions and warnings. The following is a list of general safety precautions that must be followed to provide personal safety. Failure to follow these instructions may cause death or injury. Special safety precautions are included in the procedures when they apply.

Keep in mind that even a well-maintained vehicle must be operated within the range of its mechanical capabilities and the limits of its load ratings. See the Weight Ratings label on the driver's door edge.

Every new vehicle is designed to conform to all Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards applicable at the time of manufacture. Even with these safety features, continued safe and reliable operation depends upon regular vehicle maintenance. Follow the maintenance recommendations

found in the Maintenance section. Following maintenance recommendations will help your vehicle maintain quality conditions.

Make sure your vehicle is in top working condition before heading out on the road, it is the driver's duty to do so. Inspect the vehicle according to the Driver's Check List:

- Work areas should be dry, well lit, well ventilated; free from clutter, loose tools, parts, ignition sources, and hazardous substances.
- Wear protective glasses and protective shoes when working.
- Wear protective gloves when working with hot liquids or surfaces, and when working with components that have sharp edges.
- DO NOT wear loose-fitting or torn clothing. Tie back and/or tuck in long hair. Remove all jewelry when working.
- Before beginning any repair, disconnect the battery (negative [-] cable) and discharge any capacitors.
- Put a "DO NOT OPERATE" tag in the operator's compartment or on the controls.
- Allow the engine to cool before slowly loosening the coolant fill cap to relieve the pressure from the cooling system.

**WARNING**

DO NOT remove the coolant fill cap while the engine is hot. Wait until coolant temperature is below 120°F (50°C). Scalding steam and fluid under pressure may escape and cause serious burns. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

**WARNING**

DO NOT attempt to service the high-pressure fuel system unless you are a certified technician. Escaping high-pressure fuel is dangerous. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

- Always use wheel chocks or proper jack stands to support the vehicle or vehicle components before performing any service work. DO NOT work on anything that is supported only by lifting jacks or a hoist. Before resting a vehicle on jack stands, be sure the stands are rated for the load you will be placing on them.
- Before loosening or disconnecting lines, fittings, or related items, always release line pressure in the system. Make sure to use the approved system point and method for the specific system (fuel, oil). Escaping high-pressure fluids can cause severe injury. PACCAR does not provide the approved system points and methods in operator's manuals. The service literature provides this information. You can obtain service literature through a certified service center.
- Always wear protective clothing when working on any refrigerant lines and make sure that the workplace is well ventilated. Inhalation of fumes can cause death or personal injury. To protect the environment, liquid refrigerant systems must be properly emptied and filled using equipment that prevents the release of refrigerant gas. Federal law requires capturing and recycling refrigerant.
- When moving or lifting any heavy equipment or parts, make sure to use proper techniques and assistance. Ensure all lifting devices such as chains, hooks, or slings are in good condition and are rated for the correct load capacity. Make sure all lifting devices are positioned correctly.
- Corrosion inhibitors and lubricating oils

may contain alkali. DO NOT get the substance in eyes and avoid prolonged or repeated contact with skin. DO NOT swallow. If ingested, seek immediate medical attention. DO NOT induce vomiting. In case of contact, immediately wash skin with soap and water. In case of harmful contact, immediately contact a physician. Always keep any chemicals OUT OF REACH OF CHILDREN.

- When working on the vehicle, be alert for hot parts on systems that have just been turned off, exhaust gas flow, and hot fluids in lines, tubes, and compartments. Contact with any hot surface may cause burns.
- Always use tools that are in good condition. Make sure you have the proper understanding of how to use the tools before performing any service work. Use only genuine replacement parts from PACCAR.
- Always use the same fastener part number (or equivalent) when replacing items. DO NOT use a fastener of lesser quality if replacements are necessary. (e.g., DO NOT replace a Metric 10.9 grade with 8.8 grade fastener).
- Always torque fasteners and fuel connections to the required specifications. Overtightening or under-

tightening can allow leakage.

- Close the manual fuel valves prior to performing maintenance and repairs, and when storing the vehicle inside.
- DO NOT perform any repair when impaired, tired, fatigued, or after consuming alcohol or drugs that can impair your functioning.
- Some state and federal agencies in the United States of America have determined that used engine oil can be carcinogenic and can cause reproductive toxicity. Avoid inhalation of vapors, ingestion, and prolonged contact with used engine oil.
- Coolant is toxic. If not reused, dispose of coolant in accordance with local environmental regulations.

CAUTION

DO NOT use corrosive chemicals on any part of the vehicle unless expressly directed. Corrosive chemicals can damage vehicle components. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

California Proposition 65 Warning

- Diesel engine exhaust and some of its constituents are known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth

defects, and other reproductive harm.

- The catalyst substrate located in the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) contains vanadium pentoxide, which has been determined by the State of California to cause cancer. Always wear protective clothing and eye protection when handling the catalyst assembly. Dispose of the catalyst in accordance with local regulations. If catalyst material gets into the eyes, immediately flood eyes with water for a minimum of 15 minutes. Avoid prolonged contact with skin. In case of contact, immediately wash skin with soap and water. In case of harmful contact, immediately contact a physician.
- Other chemicals in this vehicle are also known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects, or other reproductive harm.
- Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

5 DATA RECORDER

California Vehicle Code - Section 9951 - Disclosure of Recording Device

Your vehicle may be equipped with one or more recording devices commonly referred to as "event data recorders" (EDR) or "sensing and diagnostic modules" (SDM). If you are involved in an accident, the device(s) may have the ability to record vehicle data that occurred just prior to and/or during the accident. For additional information on your rights associated with the use of this data, contact:

- The California Department of Motor Vehicles - Licensing Operations Division
- <http://www.dmv.ca.gov/>

6 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY

Some of the ingredients in engine oil, hydraulic oil, transmission and axle oil, engine coolant, diesel fuel, air conditioning refrigerant (R12, R134a, and PAG oil), batteries, etc., may contaminate the environment if spilled or not disposed of properly.

WARNING

Engine exhaust and some of its constituents are known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects, and other reproductive harm. Other chemicals in this vehicle are also known

to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects or other reproductive harm. This warning requirement is mandated by California law (Proposition 65) and does not result from any change in the manner in which vehicles are manufactured.

Contact your local government agency for information concerning proper disposal.

7 REPAIRS

7.1 Repairs

WARNING

DO NOT attempt maintenance or repairs without proper training, tools, and up-to-date service instructions. Only carry out those tasks you are fully qualified to perform to prevent risks to yourself, others, or the vehicle. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

Modifying your vehicle can make it unsafe. Some modifications can affect

your vehicle's electrical system, stability control system, or other important functions. Before modifying your vehicle, check with your dealer to make sure it can be done safely. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

CAUTION

The installation of electronic devices to the On-board Diagnostics (OBD) connector, the vehicle Controller Area Network (CAN), or their associated wiring is not permitted. Doing so can adversely affect vehicle performance and/or cause fault codes to be recorded. The OBD connector is provided for temporary connection of service tools and for diagnostic purposes only. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

Your dealer's service center is the best place to have your vehicle repaired. You can find dealers all over the country with the equipment and trained personnel to get you back on the road quickly—and keep you there.

Your vehicle is a complex machine. Anyone attempting repairs on it needs proper mechanical training and the proper tools. However, all warranty repairs must be performed by an authorized service facility. If you are not an experienced technician, or do not have the right equipment, please leave all repairs to an authorized service facility. They are the ones best equipped to do the job safely and correctly.

7.2 Maintenance Manuals

If you do decide to do any complex repair work, you will need the maintenance manuals. Order them from your authorized dealer. Please provide your Chassis Serial Number when you order, to be sure you get the correct manuals for your vehicle. Allow about four weeks for delivery. There will be a charge for these manuals.

7.3 Final Chassis Bill of Material

A complete, non-illustrated computer print-out listing of the parts used to custom-build your vehicle is available through the dealer from whom you purchased your vehicle.

8 ADDITIONAL SOURCES OF INFORMATION

Major component suppliers also supply operation manuals specific to their products. The glove box contains these manuals and other pieces of literature. Look for information on products such as the engine, driver's seat, transmission, axles, wheels, tires, antilock braking system and electronic stability control (ABS/ESC), radio, fifth wheel, lane departure, and adaptive cruise control. If you are missing these pieces of literature, ask your dealer for copies.

Another place to learn more about trucking is from local truck driving schools. Contact one near you to learn about the courses they offer. Federal and state agencies, such as the Department of Licensing, also have information.

9 CAB ACCESS

9.1 Cab Access

WARNING

Always reinstall steps before entering the cab or accessing the deck plate. Without steps you could slip and fall.

Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

Clean any fuel, oil, or grease off of vehicle steps and handles before entering, exiting, or climbing onto the vehicle. Keep vehicle steps and handles clean to avoid a slip or fall. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

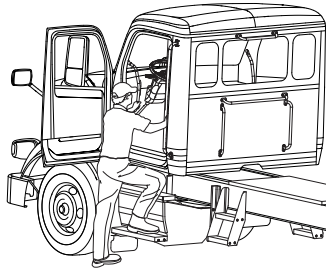
Use care when entering, exiting, or climbing onto the vehicle when the steps, handholds, or footwear are wet, muddy, or coated with ice or snow to avoid a slip or fall. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

Always face toward the vehicle and DO NOT jump when entering or exiting the

cab. Use the steps, handles, and anti-skid surfaces provided instead of components not designed for entry or exit. Always maintain at least three points of contact between your hands, feet, and the vehicle to avoid a slip or fall. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Be careful whenever you get into or out of the vehicle's cab. Always maintain at least three points of contact with the vehicle when entering or exiting. The placement of hands on the grab handles and feet on the steps meet this requirement. The following shows the best way to enter and exit the cab:



9.2 How to Lock and Unlock the Cab Doors

The vehicle has one key for cab doors, the start switch, and the optional sleeper luggage compartment. Frame-mounted tool box locks and locking fuel tank caps each have separate, individual keys.

WARNING

To reduce the possibility of personal injury or death, always lock the doors before driving the vehicle. Along with using the seat belt properly, locking the doors helps prevent doors from inadvertently opening and occupants from being ejected from the vehicle. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

To lock or unlock the doors from outside the cab:

1. To lock, rotate the key toward the rear of the vehicle (clockwise).
2. To unlock, rotate the key toward the front of the vehicle (counter clockwise).

9.3 Remote Keyless Entry (Option)

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) is a system that adds security and convenience to your vehicle. The system will lock or unlock cab doors with the key fob. The system will alert you with parking lights when the selected doors are locked or unlocked. The system includes two key fobs that provide secure rolling code technology that prevents someone from recording the entry signal.

NOTE

FCC ID: L2C0031T IC: 3432A-0031T
 FCC ID: L2C0032R IC: 3432A-0032R
 This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term IC: before the

radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

9.4 Operate Door Locks using Remote Keyless Entry

Open doors will not lock using the key fob. The key fob should be within 30 ft. (9 m) of the vehicle and should not be in proximity of other radio frequency sources such as television, radio, or cell phone transmitters.

To unlock the cab doors:

1. Press the **UNLOCK** button once. The driver's door will unlock and the parking lights will come on for 40 seconds.
2. Quickly press the **UNLOCK** button a second time within 5 seconds to unlock the passenger door.
3. Press the **LOCK** button. The doors will lock and the parking lights will come on for 2 seconds.

10 DECKPLATE ACCESS

WARNING

Always reinstall steps before entering the cab or accessing the deck plate. Without steps you could slip and fall. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

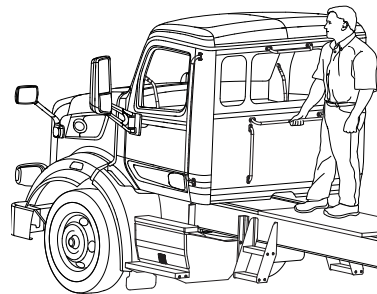
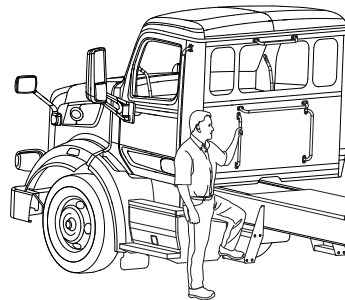
WARNING

Clean any fuel, oil, or grease off of vehicle steps and handles before entering, exiting, or climbing onto the vehicle. Keep vehicle steps and handles clean to avoid a slip or fall. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

When you are climbing onto and off the deckplate, maintain at least three points of contact with your hands on the grab handles and your feet on the steps. Always face toward the vehicle when entering or exiting the cab and look where you are going. Failure to

comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



WARNING

When stepping onto a surface to enter the cab or access the deckplate,

only use the steps and grab handles installed and designed for that purpose. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

i NOTE

Any alteration (adding bulkheads, headache racks, tool boxes, etc.) behind the cab that affects the utilization of installed grab handles, deck-plates, or frame access steps should comply with Federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulation 399.

11 HOW TO OPEN THE HOOD

11.1 How to Open the Hood

! WARNING

Always open the hood with both feet planted firmly on the ground and one or both hands on the hood. If you lose your footing, the hood may open or close uncontrollably. Failure to com-

ply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

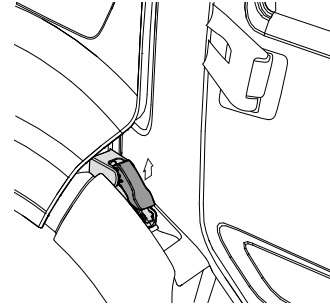
! WARNING

Always ensure the hood lock has engaged whenever the hood is opened. If not properly locked open, the hood may close uncontrollably and without warning. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

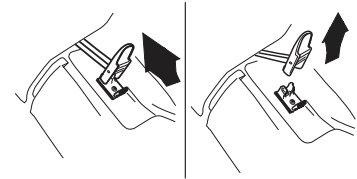
! WARNING

Be sure to latch the hood securely. A hood not latched securely could open during operation and cause vehicle damage. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Access the engine by opening the hood. The hood is held in the closed position by two latches called hold-downs. The hold-downs are mounted on either side of the vehicle hood.



1. Release the hood hold-downs.



2. Place one or both hands at top of hood front, and tilt hood forward by pulling hood. Keep both feet on the ground for stability.

1

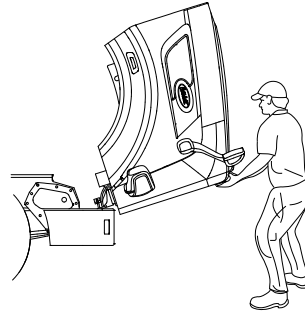
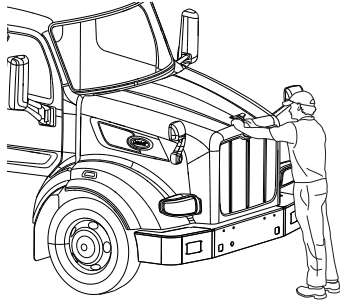


Figure 1: Left Hood Lock

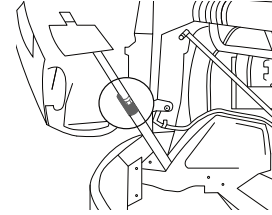
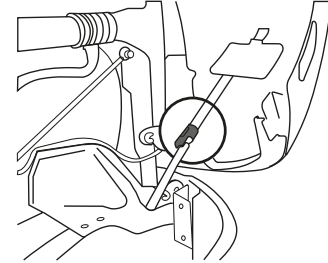
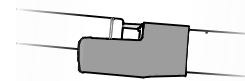


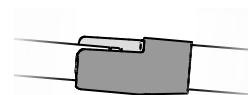
Figure 2: Right Hood Lock



Hood Lock - Engaged



Hood Lock - NOT Engaged



Tilt hood forward until it stops. When fully opened, the hood lock engages automatically.

3. Ensure hood lock is engaged (when the hood lock is engaged, the strut is visible above the lock).

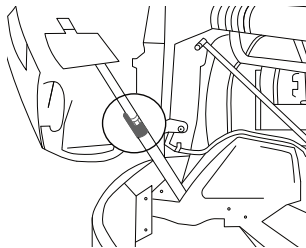
A hood that closes uncontrollably may result in personal injury.

11.2 Close the Hood

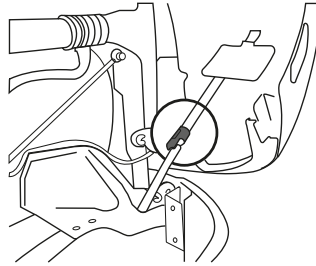
WARNING

Always make sure that there are no objects in the way before closing the hood. Grab the hood firmly and close it in a controlled manner with your feet placed on a stable, non-slip surface. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

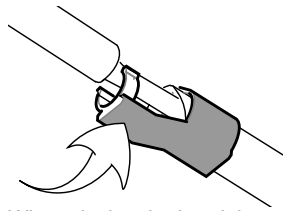
The hood lock will only be engaged if the vehicle hood is fully open. Once it is fully open, the latch will automatically engage and will need to be disengaged by the operator. The release lever for the hood lock is located near the front hinge of the hood.



Y53-6181-1C1 (01/2026)



To disengage the hood lock, press the collar toward the strut until a snap is felt and the collar surrounds the strut bar. When the hood lock is disengaged, the strut will no longer be visible above the hood lock collar.



When closing the hood, be sure that you maintain the same point of contact (top of hood) to control the movement of the hood as it closes. Gently lower the hood into place to avoid damage to the hood or cab.

12 SEAT

12.1 Seat

This seat has up to ten different controls that maximize the driver's comfort. Lumbar (and bolster support if available) are provided for superior support to the back during operation. Lower support is standard and the optional functions include upper lumbar and bolster functions. Pressing on the "+" symbol of the button will add support in the area. Pressing the opposite side of the button releases pressure and will reduce support in the area.



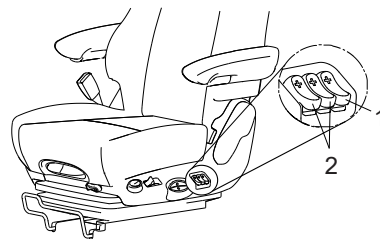
The seats in this vehicle are equipped with a switch that locks out the fore-aft isolator function in the seat. When locked, the seat will not move back and forth. It is rigidly fixed and only allowed to move up and down with the vehicle's movements. This vehicle may be equipped with a swivel function on the passenger seat. This function allows the passenger seat to rotate and face toward the inside of the cab.

⚠ WARNING

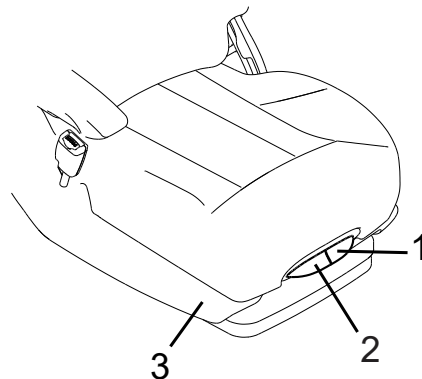
Always make sure that the passenger seat is locked into the forward facing position when the vehicle is in motion. Locking the swivel seat into the forward-facing position maximizes visibility to the surrounding area. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT use the seat swivel function while a passenger is in the seat and the vehicle is in motion. The seat belt will not provide proper protection if the passenger seat is not locked facing forward and the vehicle is in an accident or other scenarios, like heavy braking. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



- 1 Bolster adjustment (option)
- 2 Lower and upper lumbar adjustment



- 1 Seat bottom angle adjustment
- 2 Seat thigh support up/down
- 3 Seat heater/cooler

⚠ WARNING

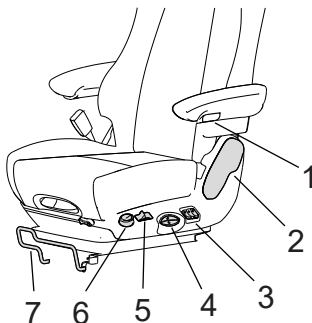
This seat may be equipped with a seat heater or ventilation system. There is a possibility that some people may suffer heat-induced burns or excessive cooling when using the system. **DO NOT** use either of these systems if you have a diminished ability to sense temperature, a reduced ability to feel pain, or have sensitive skin. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

⚠ WARNING

When using the seat heater or ventilation system, **DO NOT** place anything on the seat such as a blanket, cushion, or similar items. Objects placed between the occupant and the seat cushion may cause the seat heater or ventilation system to overheat, which may injure the seat occupant or may damage the seat. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

⚠ CAUTION

DO NOT use the seat heater for more than 10 minutes when the vehicle is off. Overuse of the seat heater may drain the vehicle's batteries. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.



- 1 Armrest angle
- 2 Recline
- 3 Lumbar and bolster (bolster is an optional feature)
- 4 Seat height
- 5 Suspension stiffness
- 6 Express down
- 7 Seat fore-aft

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT drive or ride with your seat back in the reclined position. You could be injured by sliding under the seat belts in a collision. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

12.2 Passenger Seat Swivel (Option)

This vehicle may be equipped with a swivel function on the passenger seat. This function allows the passenger seat to rotate and face towards the inside of the cab.

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure that the passenger seat is locked into the forward facing position when the vehicle is in motion. Locking the swivel seat into the forward-facing position maximizes visibility to the surrounding area. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

**WARNING**

DO NOT use the seat swivel function while a passenger is in the seat and the vehicle is in motion. The seat belt will not provide proper protection if the passenger seat is not locked facing forward and the vehicle is in an accident or other scenarios, like heavy braking. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

12.3 How to adjust a seat

**WARNING**

DO NOT adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is moving. The seat could slide or tilt suddenly during adjustment and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle. Make all adjustments to the seat while the vehicle is stationary and ensure that the seat is firmly latched at the new position. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

**WARNING**

DO NOT adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is moving, as sudden seat movement can cause loss of vehicle control. Before driving, ensure the seat is firmly latched and there is adequate head clearance at maximum upward travel. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

1. Set the seat's fore/aft position via the bar located below the seat cushion. This is a mechanical latch that does not involve any electric or air operated devices to control adjustment.
2. Set the seat height via the large switch on the left side of the seat cushion. This switch is located in the center of the seat pad and uses air to adjust the seat height.
3. Adjust the thigh support by toggling the switch located immediately under the seat bottom cushion and above the fore/aft position adjustment lever.
4. Adjust the seat bottom angle using the switch next to the thigh support.
5. Adjust the seat back recline angle using the large lever situated near the seat belt buckle.

6. Adjust the lumbar support by using the switch bank located on the side the seat cushion between the up/down adjustment switch and the seat recline adjustment lever.
7. Adjust the steering wheel.
8. Adjust the cab side mirrors.

12.4 Seat Belts

Seat belts have a locking mechanism. This mechanism adjusts automatically to a person's size and movements as long as the pull on the belt is slow. Hard braking or a collision locks the belt. The belt locks when driving up or down a steep hill or in a sharp curve. Unbelted occupants may be ejected from the cab, strike other cab occupants, and sustain more severe injuries in an accident. Always observe user warnings pertaining to seat belts. The vehicle has a seat belt indicator lamp located on the dash.

**WARNING**

DO NOT drive without the seat belts properly fastened. Fasten in only one occupant per belt and avoid fastening the belt over breakable objects such as eyeglasses, keys, or pens. Ensure all passengers wear and adjust their

seat belts before placing the vehicle into motion. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

DO NOT use the seat swivel function while a passenger is in the seat and the vehicle is in motion. The seat belt will not provide proper protection if the passenger seat is not locked facing forward and the vehicle is in an accident or other scenarios, like heavy braking. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

Fully retract and properly stow seatbelts when not in use. The metal tongue on a loose safety restraint can become a projectile during a sudden stop or crash. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

DO NOT modify or disassemble the safety restraints in your vehicle. Modified safety restraints may not function as intended. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Correct Seat Belt Use

NOTE

Responsible operators make sure that all vehicle passengers ride safely. The operator is responsible for informing passengers and co-drivers how to properly use all available safety restraints while in the vehicle.

Figure 3: Correct Placement of Lap Belt

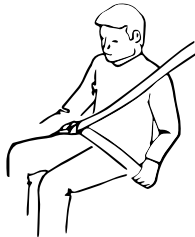


Figure 4: Correct Placement of Shoulder Belt



Incorrect Seat Belt Use

WARNING

DO NOT drive without the seat belts properly fastened. Fasten in only one occupant per belt and avoid fastening the belt over breakable objects such as eyeglasses, keys, or pens. Ensure all passengers wear and adjust their seat belts before placing the vehicle into motion. Failure to comply may result in

death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Figure 5: Lap Belt Too High on Hip

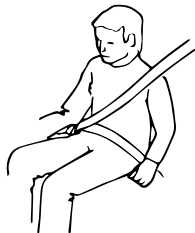


Figure 6: Shoulder Belt Incorrectly Positioned Under the Arm



Figure 7: Seat Belt Twisted



Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy

WARNING

Pregnant women should always wear a seat belt in the proper position. A properly worn seat belt significantly reduces the risk of injury to a woman or baby in the event of a crash. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

The lap belt portion must be worn snugly and as low as possible across the pelvis. To avoid pressure on the abdomen, the belt must never pass over the waist. A properly worn seat belt significantly reduces the risk of injury to a woman or baby in a crash.



Safety Restraint Cleaning

All safety restraints must be kept clean or the retractors may not work properly. Clean the safety restraints by following the care label on the belts. Let them dry completely before allowing them to retract or be stowed away.

WARNING

DO NOT use bleach or dye to clean a safety restraint. Chemicals can make safety restraint components weak and may cause them to not function as intended. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

12.5 How to Use a Seat Belt

Follow these steps to fasten the seat belt. Make sure that all other occupants do the same.

WARNING

DO NOT drive without the seat belts properly fastened. Fasten in only one occupant per belt and avoid fastening the belt over breakable objects such

as eyeglasses, keys, or pens. Ensure all passengers wear and adjust their seat belts before placing the vehicle into motion. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

To fasten the belt:

1. Grasp the belt latch.
2. Pull the belt in a continuous slow motion across the chest and lap.
3. Insert the belt latch plate into the buckle on the inboard side of the seat.

4.

i NOTE

Make sure there are no obstructions in or on the buckle that could prevent secure safety restraint locking.

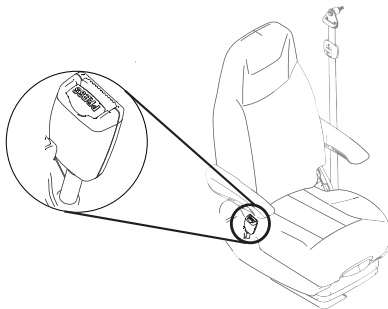
Push down until the latch is securely locked with an audible click.

5. Pull the belt to check for proper fastening and adjustment.
 - a. Pull the shoulder belt to make sure that the belt fits snugly across the chest and pelvis.
 - b. There must be less than one inch (in) (25 mm) gap between

the body and the belt.

- c. Position the shoulder restraint over the shoulder. Never allow a shoulder belt to rest against the neck. Never wear the belt under the arm.
- d. Make sure that any slack is wound up on the retractor. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

If the belt is locked, lean back to remove any tension in the belt. After releasing the belt, allow the belt to retract completely. Guide the belt latch until the belt comes to a stop. To unfasten the belt, push the release button on the buckle. The seat belt indicator lamp switches on when the driver's seat belt is unfastened.



12.6 Tether Belts

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT remove, modify, or replace the tether belt system with a different tether system. A failed or missing tether belt could allow the seat base to fully extend in the event of an accident. Failure to comply may result in death or personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

Ensure tether belts are adjusted so they are tight when the seat is in its highest and most forward position. An improperly adjusted tether belt may allow excessive movement during an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

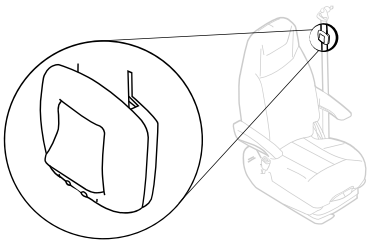
Make sure that the tether belt is attached to the cab floor and seat frame. It should be routed through the buckle on each side. Often the attachments are made using a split-type hook. Make sure both halves of the hook are around the anchor bracket.

Adjust an external tether by either lengthening or shortening the strap. To lengthen it:

1. Turn the buckle to a right angle to

- the webbing.
2. Pull the buckle.
3. To shorten the tether, pull on the strap.

12.7 Komfort Latch Feature



WARNING

DO NOT set the Komfort Latch with too much slack. Too much slack may reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt. Failure to comply may result in death or personal injury.

To eliminate cinching, simply activate the Komfort Latch device located on the seat belt webbing at the appropriate time:

1. Adjust the seat to its proper driving position.
2. Latch the seat belt.
3. If available, adjust the seat belt height adjuster to a comfortable driving position.
4. While seated appropriately, push the "on" button to engage the Komfort Latch.
5. Lean forward in the seat until you hear a "click."
6. Return to normal driving position, and the Komfort Latch maintains the preset amount of tension relief.

More information and video tutorials can be found at: <https://www.imminet.com/resources/click-tug-snug/>

To disengage the mechanism unbuckle the seat belt and then press the **OFF** button of the Komfort Latch or tug on the shoulder strap.



12.8 Safety Restraint Maintenance

WARNING

Safety restraints can be damaged during everyday use at all parts of the assembly (such as webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors). Since a damaged or worn safety restraint may not protect the wearer, if the restraint shows signs of damage or wear, it must be replaced. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage or property damage.

WARNING

Any safety restraint that has stretched must be replaced. Since a damaged or worn safety restraint may not protect the wearer, if the restraint shows signs of damage or wear it must be replaced. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

⚠ WARNING

A safety restraint that gets caught in vehicle hardware (such as the door, bunk, or seat) or rubs against a sharp object must be inspected. If the restraint shows signs of damage or wear, it may not protect the wearer and so must be replaced. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle has been in an accident, all safety restraints and safety restraint systems must be replaced, regardless of accident severity or whether the restraint was in use at the time of the accident. Visible and non-visible damage or wear can reduce the effectiveness of the safety restraint and may lead to restraint failure. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

i NOTE

If any safety restraint is not working properly, see an Authorized Service Center for repair or replacement.

Damaged safety restraints in the cab must be replaced. Safety restraints that have been stretched, cut, or worn out may not protect you in an accident.

For further information on safety restraints and safety restraint maintenance, see [Safety Restraint System - Inspection on page 261](#).

13 WHAT TO DO BEFORE STARTING THE VEHICLE

Safe Vehicle Operation

Make sure to perform pre-trip inspections before starting and operating the vehicle. For your safety, and bystanders, observe the following:

- If you drink alcohol, do not drive.
- Do not drive if you are tired, ill or under emotional stress.

Safe driving is only possible with the proper concentration on the driving task. Keep distractions to a minimum to improve concentration. Examples of distractions include radio controls, GPS navigation controls,

cellular telephone calls, cellular text messages, reading or reaching for something on the floor. Minimizing distractions improves safe driving and helps avoid an accident involving death or personal injury. Be aware of local regulations that surrounding the use of cellular telephones while driving. In addition to being an unsafe practice, some local or federal ordinances forbid you to use cellular devices while operating the vehicle.

The vehicle was manufactured with advanced engineering techniques, rigid quality control, and demanding inspections. These manufacturing processes benefit from a safe driver, who observes the following and:

- knows and understands how to operate the vehicle and all its controls.
- maintains the vehicle properly.
- applies driving skills wisely.

This manual is not a training manual. It cannot tell you everything you must know about driving a vehicle. For that, you need a proper training program or truck driving school. If you have not been trained, get the proper training before you drive. Only qualified drivers should drive this vehicle. For more information, refer to Department of Transportation Regulation 392.7, which states that interstate commercial motor

vehicles are not to be driven unless the driver is sure that certain parts and accessories are in working order.

Do not drive under the influence of alcohol. Your reflexes, perceptions, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You could have a serious or fatal accident if you drive after drinking. DO NOT drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking.

**WARNING**

DO NOT operate the vehicle while impaired. The use of alcohol, drugs, and certain medications can impair perception, reactions, and driving ability. These circumstances can substantially increase the risk of an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

**WARNING**

DO NOT text and drive. Your reaction time, perceptions, and judgment can be affected while texting or using any other form of mobile messaging while driving. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Emergency Equipment

It is good practice to carry an emergency equipment kit in the vehicle. If you have a roadside emergency, you will be equipped with the following items:

- Window scraper
- Snow brush
- Container or bag of sand or salt
- Emergency light
- Warning triangles
- Small shovel
- First aid kit
- Fire extinguisher
- Vehicle recovery hitches

Drivers Checklist

Make a thorough inspection every day before you drive. Daily inspections keep the vehicle in top shape. It also maintains a high level of safety for you, the passengers, and the load. You save maintenance time later, and the safety checks could help prevent a serious accident. Remember that Federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulation 392.7 requires a pre-trip inspection. So do commercial trucking companies. The purpose of the inspections is to find anything that could interfere with the safe transportation of yourself, the passengers,

and the load. If you find something wrong and cannot fix it yourself, have a qualified technician repair the vehicle.

The following operations must be performed by the driver: Performing these checks and following the maintenance procedures in this manual helps to keep the vehicle running properly.

14 VEHICLE LOADING**WARNING**

DO NOT exceed the specified load rating. Overloading can result in loss of vehicle control, either by causing component failures or by affecting vehicle handling. Exceeding load ratings can also shorten the service life of the vehicle. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

**WARNING**

Ensure the vehicle load is distributed evenly and avoids excessive load over any one axle. An unevenly distributed load or an excessive load over one axle can adversely affect the braking and handling of the vehicle. Even if your load is under the legal limits, be sure

it is distributed evenly. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the maximum front and rear Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) are determined by the components installed from the factory. See the label on the inside edge of the driver's side door for vehicle axle weight ratings.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)	This specification is the MAXIMUM WEIGHT that the vehicle is allowed to carry. This weight includes the weight of the empty vehicle, the loading platform, occupants, fuel, and any load. Never exceed the GVWR of the vehicle.
Gross Combination Weight (GCW)	This weight is the actual combined weight of the vehicle and its load: vehicle, plus trailers, plus cargo.
Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)	This weight is the total weight that one axle is designed to transmit to the ground. This number is listed on the inside edge of the driver's side door.
Load Distribution	Make sure the vehicle's load is distributed so that no one axle exceeds its GAWR.

Regardless of a correct GAWR, the vehicle and its total load including trailers must never exceed the GCW.

15 VISUAL INSPECTION WHILE APPROACHING THE VEHICLE

While approaching the vehicle, inspect the general appearance of the vehicle and its surroundings for any signs of needed attention.



WARNING

If equipped with a three-piece roof fairing, DO NOT DRIVE WITH ROOF FAIRING FOLDED DOWN, since the marker lamps will not be effective in that position. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Perform these basic inspection steps before operating the vehicle.

1. Check the overall appearance and condition. Are windows, mirrors, and lights clean and unobstructed?
2. Is the air-intake opening clear of obstructions?
3. Check beneath the vehicle. Are there signs of fuel, oil, or water leaks?
4. Check for damaged, loose, or missing parts. Are there parts showing signs of excessive wear or

lack of lubrication? Have a qualified technician examine any questionable items and repair them without delay.

5. Check your load. Is it secured properly?

16 DAILY CHECKS



NOTE

These checks are in addition to, not in place of, Federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulations. These regulations may be purchased by writing to: Superintendent of Documents U.S. Government Printing Office Bookstore 710 N. Capitol St. N.W. Washington, DC 20402, or [ContactCenter@gpo.gov](mailto>ContactCenter@gpo.gov).

Engine

- Engine oil
- Engine coolant
- Power steering fluid
- Engine belt
- Fuel filter (water separator) Fuel System [on page 250](#).
- Windshield washer fluid
- Battery cables - check the condition of the battery and alternator cables for signs of chafing or rubbing. Make sure that all clamps (straps) holding the

cables are present and in good working order.

- Hood latch
- Brake lines and hoses
- Steering components. Check for loose, broken, or missing parts. Check the pitman arm, drag link, tie rod, steering shaft, and power steering hoses.
- Hydraulic clutch fluid

Chassis and Cab Exterior

- Lamps - are any exterior lamps cracked or damaged? Perform an exterior lamp test. See Exterior Lighting Self-Test (ELST) [on page 97](#) for more information.
- Is the air-intake opening clear of obstructions?
- Window and mirrors - clean and adjusted?
- Tires, wheels, and hubs: Tires [on page 265](#), Wheels [on page 268](#), and Systems Check [on page 27](#).
- Suspension components - check for loose or missing fasteners. Check damage to springs or other suspension parts such as cracks, gouges, distortions, bulges, or chafing.
- Brake lines and hoses - check lines, linkages, chambers, parking and service brake operation.
- Air system - Air System [on page 208](#).

- Steps and grab handles
- Frame-mounted tanks (fuel, diesel exhaust fluid (DEF), and so on) - check underneath the vehicle for signs of fluid leaks. If any are found, correct before operating the vehicle. Is the tank fill cap secure? Are the tank straps tight? Is the strap webbing in place?
- Trailer connections - are they secure and the lines clear? If they are not being used, are they stored properly? Is the trailer spare wheel secure and inflated? Is the landing gear up and the handle secured?
- Fifth wheel - Is the kingpin or the sliding fifth wheel locked?

Cab Interior

- Seat - adjust the seat for easy reach of controls and visibility.
- Safety Restraints - fasten and adjust safety restraints (including sleeper bunk restraints).
- Steering column - adjust for easy reach and visibility.
- Mirrors - check and readjust mirrors if necessary.
- Lamps - Turn the ignition key to the ON position to allow the bulb check and the systems check to test the truck systems. Perform an Exterior Light Self-Test.

- Instruments - Check all instruments (see Systems Check [on page 27](#)).
- Windshield - Check the operation of windshield wipers and washers.
- Horn - check operation of horn.
- Fuel - Check the vehicle's fuel level. Is there enough fuel?
- Diesel exhaust fluid (DEF) - check level. Is there enough fluid?
- Air conditioning (AC) filters in the cab and/or sleeper - check the condition of the sleeper air conditioning (AC) air filter. Keep the sleeper floor area behind the front passenger seat clear of debris and pet hair. The sleeper air conditioner draws air from this area. Excessive dirt or pet hair shortens the service life of the sleeper air conditioning (AC) air filter.

17 WEEKLY CHECKS

i NOTE

These checks are in addition to, not in place of, Federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulations. These regulations may be purchased by writing to: Superintendent of Documents U.S. Government Printing Office Bookstore 710 N. Capitol St. N.W. Washington, DC 20402, or ContactCenter@gpo.gov.

Engine

- Belts
- Hoses
- Clamps
- Radiator
- Air filter and its housing
- Engine Aftertreatment system components
- Exhaust pipes
- Engine air pre-cleaner (option) - For vocational vehicles with optional engine air pre-cleaner, check the purge valve at the bottom of the hood mounted engine air pre-cleaner for any obstructions. Make sure the purge valve will open and close as needed to purge dirt and water from the engine intake air.

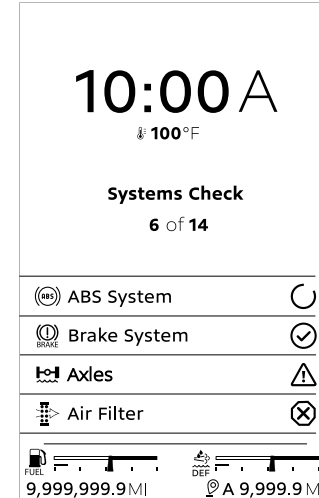
Chassis and Cab Exterior

- Battery - check battery and terminals.
- Wheel cap nuts - are they all in place and torqued properly - tighten if necessary. Wheels [on page 268](#)
- Controls and wiring - check for condition and adjustment
- Steering components - check pitman arm, drag link, intermediate shaft U-joint pinch bolt, tie rod, steering shaft and power steering hoses, etc., for loose, broken, or missing parts.

- Cab air conditioner fresh air filter - check for condition and cleanliness.
- PACCAR FX-20 Front Axle Kingpin Joint Grease/Tie Rod Ends (option) (VOCATIONAL USE) - For vocational vehicles with this axle, grease with Heavy-Duty Multipurpose Lithium Based: #1 or #2 grade, every 50 hours. (Refer to Front Axle and Suspension [on page 217](#) for maintenance instructions.)

18 SYSTEMS CHECK

Systems Check evaluates each monitored system and displays its fault status for the operator. The Systems Check can be viewed in the Notifications sub-menu. The Systems Check will also appear when the Exterior Lighting Self-Test (ELST) is activated.

Figure 8: Systems Check Display

This Systems Check example illustrates the following conditions:

- Engine Oil – Check in process
- Coolant – OK (no issues)
- Air System – Non-critical issue
- Exterior Lights – OK (no issues)

Other systems may also be checked depending on features installed.

Systems Check can be interrupted at any time by:

- Pressing **Select**
- Switching the exterior lights OFF

- Turning the start key switch to OFF or ACC

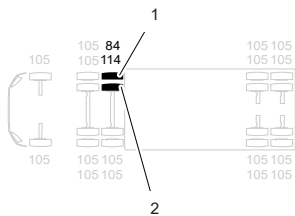
- Releasing the Parking Brake

Once the Systems Check has completed, the results will display in a summary. A detailed explanation of this summary can be viewed by accessing the Menu after a Systems Check has completed.

The System Check may also present the following optional feature:

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) (option)

One of the systems the vehicle monitors is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).



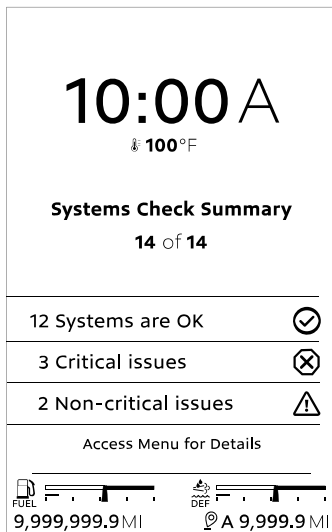
TPMS shows individual tire pressures for each location and will change the color of the tire:

- Outlined – Tire pressure not available
- Gray – Nominal
- Amber – High or low pressure
- Red – Very low or high pressure, or

high temperature

To read about tires and recommended maintenance practices, see [Tires](#) on page 265.

Figure 9: System Check Display with TPMS



CHAPTER 2: EMERGENCY

1	Roadside Assistance.....	31
2	Low Air Actions.....	31
3	Stop Engine.....	31
4	Low Oil Pressure.....	32
5	Engine Is Overheating.....	32
6	How to Inspect and Replace a Fuse.....	33
7	Where Are the Fuses Located?.....	34
8	How to Jump Start a Battery.....	35
9	How to Recover a Vehicle.....	36

1 ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

Call toll-free to talk to someone at the PAC-CAR Customer Center.



Total Customer Support
1-800-4Peterbilt (1-800-473-8372).

The Customer Call Center is open 24/7-365 days a year. It is staffed with trained personnel (English and other languages if necessary), free of charge, to provide total roadside assistance. Their custom-mapping system can locate the nearest authorized dealers and Independent Service Providers (ISPs) based on the vehicle's location. In addition, the customer center can dispatch services for jump and pull starts, tires, trailers, fines and permits, chains, towing, hazardous clean-up, out of fuel (roadside), mechanical repairs, and preventive maintenance services. If they cannot answer a specific question, they can direct you to a representative who can.

2 LOW AIR ACTIONS

WARNING

If an air pressure warning light appears, an air pressure gauge changes color, or the low air pressure alert is heard, immediately bring the vehicle to a safe stop. If vehicle air pressure falls below 60 psi (4.14 bar/414 kPa), the spring brakes may abruptly stop the vehicle. DO NOT drive the vehicle until it is serviced. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

NOTE

The instrument cluster gauges may appear (if hidden from view), change brightness, and change color to bring attention to a particular system.



These warning lights will illuminate during the start-up self-check. Take no action until you have given them time to extinguish. If either of these warning lights appear while

operating the vehicle, perform the following actions:

1. Slow down carefully.
2. Move a safe distance off the road and stop.
3. Place the transmission in neutral (park with an automatic transmission, if equipped). Set the parking brake.
4. Turn OFF the engine.
5. Turn ON the emergency flasher. Also use other warning devices to alert other motorists if you have them (reflective triangles, portable lights).

If the warning lights appear, or audible alarm sounds, (while not in start-up self-check) DO NOT attempt to drive the vehicle. Contact the nearest authorized dealer to have the problem corrected.

3 STOP ENGINE



This warning light appears with an audible alarm tone when a major engine system problem exists.

WARNING

If the stop engine warning light turns on, a serious engine system problem has occurred. Safely stop the vehicle and turn OFF the engine. DO NOT drive the vehicle until the vehicle has been serviced. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

4 LOW OIL PRESSURE**CAUTION**

DO NOT operate your vehicle with insufficient oil pressure as this will cause serious engine damage. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

It is important to maintain oil pressure within acceptable limits. If oil pressure drops below the minimum psi (bar/kPa) the oil pressure gauge illuminates and changes color. Additionally, the Stop Engine Lamp turns red.

1. Slow down carefully.
2. Move a safe distance off the road

and stop.

3. Place the transmission in neutral (park with automatic transmissions, if equipped). Set the parking brake.
4. Turn OFF the engine.
5. Turn ON the emergency flasher. Use other warning devices to alert other motorists.
6. Wait a few minutes to allow the oil to drain into the engine oil pan. Check the oil level.
7. If necessary, add oil. If the problem persists, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

5 ENGINE IS OVERHEATING**CAUTION**

Routinely inspect cooling system hoses and clamps for damage. A cracked, split, worn, or loose hose or clamp could result in a leak, leading to a sudden loss of coolant resulting in an overheat condition. Failure to comply may result in equipment damage or property damage.

NOTE

The system may also temporarily overheat during severe operating conditions such as:

- Climbing a hill on a hot day
- Stopping after high-speed/high-load driving
- Debris blocking air flow through the cooling module (radiator)

If the engine overheats, DO NOT TURN THE ENGINE OFF UNLESS a low water warning device indicates a loss of coolant. The following applies if the engine coolant temperature rises, or is already above normal: (Also, there cannot be any other warning alarms displayed in the instrument cluster.) If so, complete the following steps:

- 1.

WARNING

DO NOT remove the coolant fill cap while the engine is hot. Wait until coolant temperature is below 120°F (50°C). Scalding steam and fluid under pressure may escape and cause serious burns. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

**WARNING**

DO NOT leave the engine idling without an alert driver present. If the engine overheats, as indicated by the coolant temperature light, take immediate action. Continued unattended operation, even briefly, may cause serious engine damage or a fire. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Reduce the engine speed. You can also stop the vehicle. If stopped, place the transmission in neutral (N). Set the parking brake. Keep the engine running.

**NOTE**

Keep the engine running at idle speed. Only shut off the engine if a warning icon indicates to do so.

2. Check to make sure that the oil pressure gauge reads normal.
3. Make sure that the engine fan rotates by switching the **Engine Fan Switch** (if equipped) from AUTO to

MAN (Manual).

4. Idle the engine to reduce the coolant temperature. If the temperature does not begin to drop, shut off the engine. Then contact the nearest authorized dealer.
5. If the temperature begins to return to normal, allow the engine to idle for 3 to 5 minutes. Shut it off only after the temperature returns to normal. Idling the engine allows the engine to cool gradually and uniformly.
6. If overheating came from severe operating conditions, the temperature must drop while parked. If it has not, stop the engine. Let it cool before checking to see if the coolant is low.
7. Park on level ground to receive accurate readings. Check the coolant level at the coolant surge tank.

Check the coolant level after each trip when the engine is cool. The coolant level must be visible within the surge tank. If necessary, add coolant.

6 HOW TO INSPECT AND REPLACE A FUSE

Turn off the engine. Switch off all lights. Locate the fuses in either the cab, sleeper, or main power fuse box.

All the electrical circuits have fuses to protect them from a short circuit or overload. If an electrical component on the chassis stops working, the first thing you must check for is a blown fuse.

**WARNING**

Only replace a fuse with one of the correct size and amperage rating. Installing a fuse of the wrong rating may cause serious electrical damage or result in a thermal event. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

**WARNING**

DO NOT patch or repair fuses. This may cause a fire or otherwise damage the electrical circuit. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

CAUTION

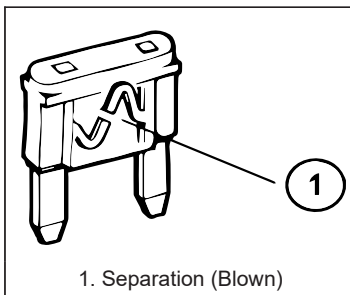
If a circuit keeps blowing fuses, have the electrical system inspected for a short circuit or overload by an authorized dealer. Delaying could cause serious damage to the electrical system or vehicle. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

CAUTION

Before replacing a fuse, turn OFF all lights and accessories and remove the key from the start switch to avoid damaging the electrical system. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

1. Switch off all lights and accessories. Remove the start key to avoid damaging the electrical system.
2. Determine from the chart on the fuse panel which fuse controls that component.
 - If the circuit has a fuse, remove that fuse. See if it is blown.
 - If the circuit has a poly switch, have the electrical system inspected by an authorized dealer.

Table 1: Blown Fuse



3.

WARNING

Always use an approved Type II modified reset polyswitch (circuit breaker) with a current rating equal to or less than the polyswitch being replaced. Never use a Type I (automatic reset) or Type III (manual reset) polyswitch. Use of an improper polyswitch can result in a temperature increase along the electrical path causing severe damage to the electrical system. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

CAUTION

Always close and latch the engine compartment fuse box cover. A latched cover ensures a watertight seal which will protect electrical components. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

If the fuse is blown or faulty due to internal damage, short circuit, or corrosion on the fuse terminals, replace it with a fuse of the same rating (or lower rating if necessary). If an electrical component displays signs of a blown fuse without being visibly blown, it is advisable to temporarily use a fuse from a non-essential system (for example, an accessory's circuit or radio) in a roadside/emergency situation.

7 WHERE ARE THE FUSES LOCATED?

Fuses for the cab are located in the fuse panel behind the driver's side kick panel.

Main power relays are located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC), in the engine compartment, mounted to the front wall of the cab.

Fuses for the optional sleeper are located in a separate fuse box accessible through the luggage compartment door.

8 HOW TO JUMP START A BATTERY

WARNING

DO NOT ignore any safety procedure as the battery can overheat and catch fire or explode. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

Never jump start a battery near fire, flames, or electrical sparks. Batteries generate gases that could explode. Keep sparks, flames, and lighted cigarettes away from batteries. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

When jump starting using a battery charger/booster, verify that the battery charger/booster is set to the same jump start voltage and amperage specifications as the vehicle electrical system and batteries (for example, if the vehicle electrical system is a 12 volt system, the jump start voltage on the battery charger/booster shall be set at no higher than a 12 volt setting). Applying a higher voltage will cause expensive damage to electronic components. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

Heed all warnings and instructions of the jumper cable manufacturer. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

CAUTION

Not following the prescribed jump-start procedure can damage the alternator or cause serious damage to both vehicles.

Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

CAUTION

Vehicles equipped with an Engine Start Module (ESM) should not be jumped using the ESM Starter terminal (S+) to avoid arcing or battery damage. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

1. Remove any conductive jewelry. It cannot come in contact with the battery terminals.
2. Select a jumper cable that is long enough to attach to both vehicles. Make sure that neither vehicle touches each other.
3. Position the two vehicles together, but do not allow them to touch.
4. Turn OFF all lights, heater, radio, and any other accessory on both vehicles.
5. Set the parking brake.
6. Shift the transmission into park position or neutral for manual transmissions.
7. If either vehicle is equipped with battery disconnects, make sure that they are in the **OFF** position before

connecting the two vehicles.

8. Attach one end of a jumper cable to the **positive (+)** terminal of the discharged (dead) battery. The positive terminal has a large red + or P on the battery case, post, or clamp.

NOTE

If your vehicle is equipped with an Engine Start Module (ESM), attach the positive (+) cable to the vehicle battery and not the ESM Starter terminal (S+). See the Maxwell Installation Guide and User Manual for additional information about LED status conditions, maintenance, and troubleshooting.

9. Attach the other end of the same cable to the **positive (+)** terminal of the good (booster) battery.
10. Attach the remaining jumper cable **FIRST** to the negative (-) terminal (black or N) of the charged battery.
- 11.

WARNING

Always connect the cables from positive to positive (+ to

+ and negative to negative (- to -). Improperly attaching the cables could cause the battery to explode. Failure to comply may result death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Attach the other end of the negative cable to the negative (-) terminal of the dead battery.

12. If either vehicle is equipped with battery disconnects, make sure that they are in the **ON** position.
13. Start the vehicle that has the good battery first.
 - Let it run for 5 minutes, or
 - If charging a system containing an Engine Start Module (ESM), let it run for 15 minutes. Briefly pressing the Push-to-Test button on the ESM indicates the ESM's charge state. When the status LED presents a solid green light, the ESM is sufficiently charged.
14. Start the vehicle that has the discharged (dead) battery.

The engine must start. If the engine fails to start, do not continue to crank the starter. Instead, contact the nearest authorized dealer.

WARNING

When disconnecting jumper cables, make sure they do not get caught in any moving parts in the engine compartment. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

Reverse the above procedure exactly when removing the jumper cables. With the engine running, disconnect the jumper cables from both vehicles in the exact reverse order. Make sure to first remove the negative cable from the vehicle with the discharged battery.

9 HOW TO RECOVER A VEHICLE

9.1 How to Recover a Vehicle

CAUTION

Remove the drive axle shafts or lift the driving wheels off the ground before towing the vehicle. Towing the vehicle with the wheels on the ground and the axle shafts in the axles will cause damage to the axle gears. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

CAUTION

When towing vehicles with a driver-controlled main differential lock, install the caging bolt for the differential lock so that internal components maintain their position. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

CAUTION

DO NOT attach recovery rigging to bumpers or brackets. Connect to appropriate hitch points using the proper double chain setup to properly distribute weight. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

WARNING

Before towing a vehicle with a connected air system, test and inspect the recovery vehicle air system and brakes to ensure they are connected correctly and working properly. If the vehicle's air system is improperly connected it could lead to a loss of vehicle control, causing an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

All lubricating and clutch application oil pressure is provided by an engine-driven pump, which will not work when the engine is stopped. You could seriously damage your vehicle by towing it with the driveline connected and the drive wheels on the ground. When vehicles are towed, either by wrecker or piggyback, the lubricant in the top front of the drive axle will drain to the rear and will leave the top components dry. The resulting friction may damage them. Always remove the main drive axle shafts before towing your vehicle.

1. Review and understand all the cautions and warnings of this section.
2. Disconnect the drive axle shafts and cover the open hubs. This is necessary because no lubricant

will reach the gears and bearings if the transmission is driven by the driveshaft (rear wheels on the ground), causing damage to the transmission.

See [Preparing the Axles for Towing on page 41](#).

3. Connect the towing chain or cable using best recovery practices. See [Best Practices for Recovery Rigging on page 43](#).
4. Make sure the recovered vehicle's parking brake is released. See [Parking Brake Manual Release on page 38](#).
5. If you desire to use the recovered vehicle's brake, ensure that the vehicle's air system is connected to that of the recovery vehicle. Ensure that any air line that has been removed from a driver-controlled main differential lock is firmly capped to prevent loss of air pressure from the recovery vehicle if it is supplying air pressure. If you do not desire to use the recovered vehicle's brake, ensure that you cage the spring brakes before attempting to move the vehicle. See [Manually Locking a Differential on page 42](#).
6. Follow state/provincial and local laws

that apply to vehicles in tow.

7. Do not tow vehicles at speeds in excess of 55 mph (90 km/h).

For additional information concerning heavy duty truck recovery, refer to the following Technology & Maintenance Council (TMC) literature.

- Recommended Practice #602–A — “Front Towing Devices For Trucks and Tractors”
- Recommended Practice #602–B — “Recovery Attachment Points For Trucks, Tractors, and Combination Vehicles”
- Recommended Practice #626 — “Heavy Duty Truck Towing Procedures”

Copies of this literature can be obtained from the following address: Technology & Maintenance Council 950 N. Glebe Road Arlington, VA 22203 Phone: (703) 838-1763 Email: tmc@trucking.org Website: <https://tmc.trucking.org/>

9.2 Parking Brake Manual Release

When brake air pressure is too low, you cannot release the parking brake from the cab. In such cases, the parking brake (or spring brake) can be manually released.

WARNING

DO NOT drive a vehicle with malfunctioning brakes. If one of the brake circuits (front or rear) becomes inoperative, braking distances will increase substantially and handling characteristics while braking will be affected. Bring the vehicle to a safe stop and have it towed to the nearest dealer or qualified repair facility. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

DO NOT operate a vehicle when the spring brakes have been manually released. Driving a vehicle after its spring brakes are manually released is extremely dangerous. The brakes may not function. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

WARNING

DO NOT disassemble a spring brake chamber. These chambers contain a powerful, compressed spring that would become dangerous if suddenly

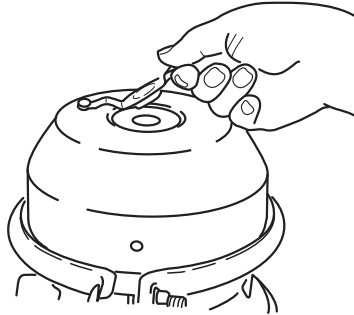
released. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

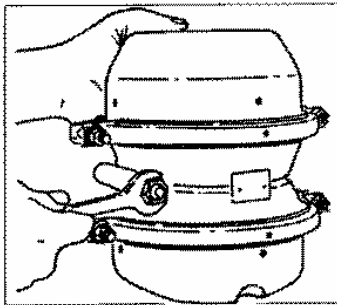
Before manually releasing the spring brakes, always secure the vehicle with wheel chocks, chains, or other safe means to prevent the vehicle from rolling. An unattended, rolling vehicle could lead to an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Manually release the spring brake system by performing the following procedure:

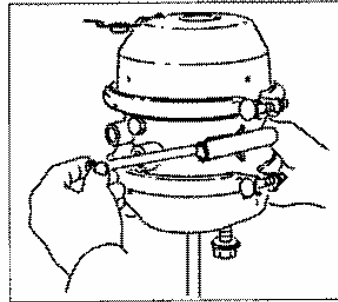
1. Remove the cap from the spring chamber.



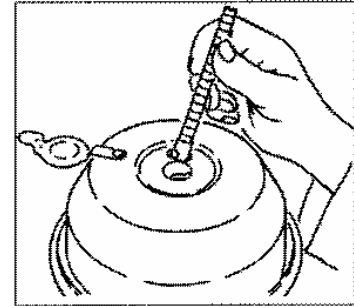
- Remove the release stud assembly from the side pocket. Then remove the release nut and washer from the release stud.



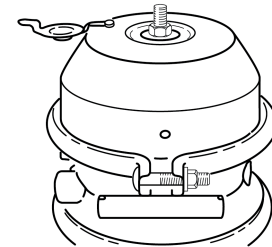
- Slide out the release stud.



- Insert the release stud through the opening in the spring chamber where the cap was removed. Insert it into the pressure plate. Turn the release stud 1/4 turn clockwise in the pressure plate. This action secures the cross pin into the cross pin area of the pressure plate. It also locks it into the manual release position.

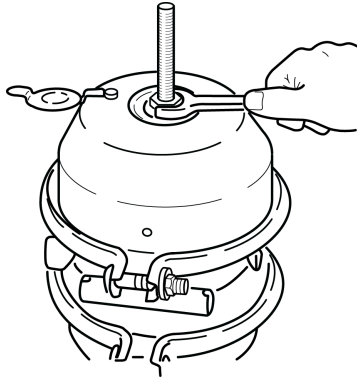


- Assemble the release stud washer and nut on the release stud.



- With a wrench, turn the release stud assembly nut until the compression spring is 90-95 percent caged. While turning, make sure that the pushrod (adapter pushrod, or service

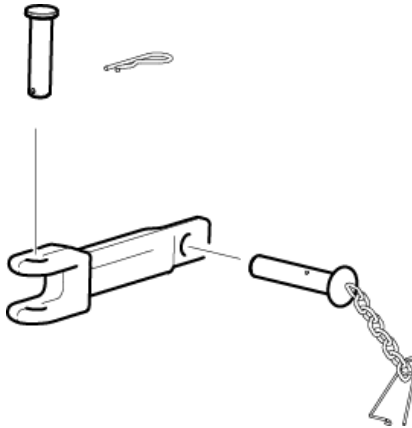
pushrod) retracts. DO NOT over-torque the release stud assembly. (S-cam-type maximum: 50 lb-ft (68 N·m), Wedge-type maximum: 30 lb-ft (41 N·m)). The spring brake is now mechanically released.



9.3 Recovery Hitch

The vehicle is equipped with a removable recovery hitch. This hitch is a device that attaches to the sockets in the front bumper used when the vehicle requires recovery. These hitches are designed for short distance and intermittent duty to help pull a vehicle. These hitches are not designed to be used as towing devices for a long distance.

Specially designed hitches are required to recover the vehicle. The recovery hitches attach to the frame. Two hitch assemblies, made up of the following parts, are recommended for the proper recovery of the vehicle:



If the vehicle is not equipped with the proper recovery hitch assembly, contact an authorized dealer to obtain the proper equipment.

WARNING

DO NOT use parts from other vehicles or substitute materials to repair or replace a recovery hitch. Only use com-

ponents specifically designed and rated for vehicle recovery to ensure structural integrity and safety. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

CAUTION

DO NOT attach recovery rigging to bumpers or brackets. Connect to appropriate hitch points using the proper double chain setup to properly distribute weight. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

9.4 How To Use a Recovery Hitch

CAUTION

Recovery pull maximums assume that the tow rigging evenly distributes the load between both recovery hitches. Connect the rigging according to recovery rigging instructions to avoid serious vehicle damage. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

CAUTION

When recovering ditched or bogged vehicles, stay well below maximum capacities. Even at loads below maximum, the stresses of extraction can damage various parts of the vehicle. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

Use the following procedure to install the Vehicle Recovery Hitches. See the Recovery Hitch Assembly illustration for part identification.

1. Check the square sockets behind the lower front bumper for obstructions. If necessary, clear them.
2. With lock pins removed, insert the hitches through the bumper and into the square hitch socket.
3. Align the hole in the tow hitch with the square hitch socket hole.
4. Insert the lock pin into the square hitch socket hole. Make sure that the lock pin lock tab is within the socket.
5. Rotate the lock pin 90 degrees to secure the pin in place.
6. Make sure to install the tow pin and lock clip before using the hitch.
7. Remove the hitches after recovering the vehicle. Store all parts for future

use.

9.5 Preparing the Axles for Towing

Towing the vehicle with the front end raised can damage the differentials. To avoid this damage, prepare the axles before towing.

It is possible to connect the air lines of both vehicles during towing. If so, make sure that the recovered vehicle does not have an open air line. An open air line on the recovered vehicle causes a leak in the air system of the recovery vehicle. This leak could cause a loss of system air, which can cause the service brakes not to function. This failure results in the sudden application of the spring brakes causing wheel lock-up and loss of control. This condition can lead to a rear-end collision with a following vehicle.

WARNING

If a recovery vehicle is supplying air pressure, ensure any disconnected air lines from a driver-controlled main differential lock are firmly capped. An open air line on the recovered vehicle will cause a leak in the recovery vehicle air system when both vehicles' brake

systems are connected. This could lead to a loss of system air and may result in the sudden application of the parking (spring) brakes, resulting in wheel lock-up, possible loss of control, or overtake by a following vehicle. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

1.

CAUTION

Lift the driving wheels off the ground or remove the driveline and axle shafts before towing the vehicle. All lubricating and clutch application oil pressure is provided by an engine-driven pump, which does not work when the engine is stopped. When vehicles are towed either by wrecker or piggyback, lubricant in the top front of the drive axle will drain to the rear, leaving the top components dry. This results in friction that will seriously damage top axle components. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

Lift the driving wheels off the ground. Alternatively, you can remove the dri-

veline and axle shafts before towing the vehicle.

2. If the vehicle has a driver-controlled differential lock, then manually lock the differential.
3. Remove drive axle shafts.
- 4.



CAUTION

Cover hubs with plastic whenever a drive axle shaft is removed. Water, dirt, and other materials can enter an open hub or axle and contaminate the axle fluid, possibly damaging axle components. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

Cover the open ends of the hubs to prevent dirt and debris from entering the axle.

9.6 Manually Locking a Differential

Follow these procedures if the vehicle has a driver controlled differential lock.

Always lock the differential when the axles are being removed to aid in re-installation.

This procedure should be done before the axle shafts are removed.



CAUTION

When towing vehicles with a driver-controlled main differential lock, install the caging bolt for the differential lock so that internal components maintain their position. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.



WARNING

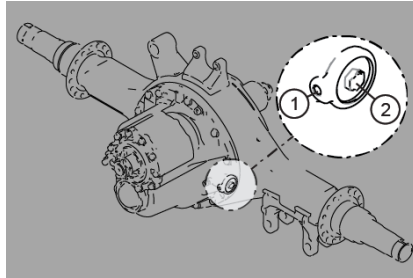
If a recovery vehicle is supplying air pressure, ensure any disconnected air lines from a driver-controlled main differential lock are firmly capped. An open air line on the recovered vehicle will cause a leak in the recovery vehicle air system when both vehicles' brake systems are connected. This could lead to a loss of system air and may result in the sudden application of the parking (spring) brakes, resulting in wheel lock-up, possible loss of control, or overtake by a following vehicle. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



WARNING

If a recovery vehicle is not supplying air to the recovered vehicle, cage the recovered vehicle's brakes. A non-operating vehicle has the spring brakes applied. Those brakes need to be caged so the wheels can roll during a tow. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

- To use the recovered vehicle's brakes, connect the vehicle's air system to that of the recovery vehicle. Firmly cap any air line that has been removed from a driver-controlled main differential lock. The cap prevents loss of air pressure from the recovery vehicle.
- If you are not using the recovered vehicle's brakes, cage the spring brakes before attempting to move the vehicle.



1. Remove the air line and firmly cap the air line from the vehicle. (2)
2. Remove the caging bolt from its storage hole. (1)
3. Screw the caging bolt into the air line hole. (2)
4. When fully engaged, a 0.25-0.5 in. (6.35-12.7 mm) space will remain between the air cylinder and the bolt head. This action will lock the differential by pushing a piston into a "lock" position.

9.7 Recovery Hitch Capacities

The maximum rated loads for vehicle recovery varies depending on the direction or angle of pull. These capacities are listed in the table below and are for the two hitches working together, simultaneously.

Direction of Pull	Maximum Capacity lbs. (kg)
Directly forward	80,000 (36,000)
Directly vertical or horizontally to the side	14,600 (6,600)
45 degrees in any direction	20,000 (9,000)

9.8 Best Practices for Recovery Rigging

CAUTION

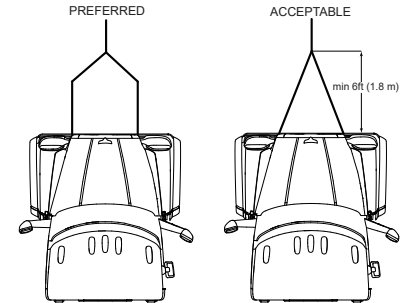
Recovery pull maximums assume that the tow rigging evenly distributes the load between both recovery hitches. Connect the rigging according to recovery rigging instructions to avoid serious vehicle damage. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

CAUTION

When recovering ditched or bogged vehicles, stay well below maximum capacities. Even at loads below maximum, the stresses of extraction can damage various parts of the vehicle.

Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

Table 2: Recovery Rigging Options



Use a double chain or cable setup that distributes the load equally to both hitches (see either example in the Recovery Rigging Options illustration):

- Never loop a single chain or cable through both hitches, also known as reeving (not shown).
- Use a spreader or equalizer bar to distribute the load on both hitches (preferred), or
- If a spreader bar is unavailable: connect the main tow chain or cable no closer than 6 ft. (1.8 m) from the vehicle (acceptable).

- Secure the towed vehicle using two additional chains or cables.

9.9 Returning to Service After Recovering

Once the vehicle is recovered, the axles must have oil added to prevent gear damage during operation.

1. Into the pinion cage, add 1 pt (.47 L) of lubricant or into the interaxle differential, add 2 pt (.94 L) of approved lubricant.
2. After adding the specified type and amount of lubricant, drive the vehicle. It must be unloaded. Drive 1 mi to 2 mi (1.5 km to 3 km) at a speed lower than 25 mph (40 km/h). This action circulates the lubricant through the assembly.
3. If the parking brake is manually released, they must be modified back to their normal operating condition.
4. If the differential lock was manually locked, it must be re-locked. The caging bolt must be put back in its storage location. The differential lock air line must also be re-installed in its normal position.

Add the correct lubricant back to the axles after recovering the vehicle and before putting it back into service.

9.10 What to do if the Vehicle is Stuck in Sand, Mud, Snow, or Ice



WARNING

DO NOT spin the wheels faster than 35 mph (55 km/h). Under some conditions, a tire may spin twice as fast as that shown on the speedometer. Spinning a tire faster than 35 mph (55 km/h) could cause tread separation or the tire to explode. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

These suggestions are provided to improve the ability to free a vehicle if the vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, snow, or ice:

- Move the gearshift lever or selector from first gear to reverse.
- Apply light pressure on the accelerator pedal while the transmission is in gear.
- Remove the foot from the accelerator while shifting.
- Do not race the engine.

- For the best traction and safety, avoid spinning the wheels.

Follow these practices to avoid transmission damage:

- Always start the vehicle in motion with the shift lever in first gear.
- Make sure that the transmission is fully engaged in gear before releasing the clutch pedal (manual only).
- Do not shift into reverse while the vehicle moves forward.
- Another vehicle can be used to pull the vehicle free. If so, do not permit the vehicle to be towed for long distances before removing the driveshaft.

If tire chains are needed, make sure that they are installed on both sides of the driving axle. Installing chains on only one side of the axle can cause equipment damage.



CAUTION

DO NOT install tire chains on only one tandem axle. Installing chains on the tires of only one tandem axle can damage the driveline U-joints and the interaxle differential. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

9.11 Towing the Vehicle

Dealer or commercial towing services have the necessary equipment to tow the vehicle safely. The towing service is aware of towing regulations and safety precautions.

Using a towing service makes sure that the following precautions are taken:

- Use of a safety chain system
- Follow all local towing regulations
- Make sure that the towing device does not contact any surfaces that could be damaged while in transit
- If towing from the front, make sure that the rear axles are prepared for towing
- If towing from the rear, make sure that all body components are secured. These items can include roof, side, and chassis fairings. Damage occurs if you do not secure these items.



WARNING

Secure the roof, side, and chassis fairings while towing from the rear. An unsecured fairing may come off of the vehicle during transit while towing from the rear. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

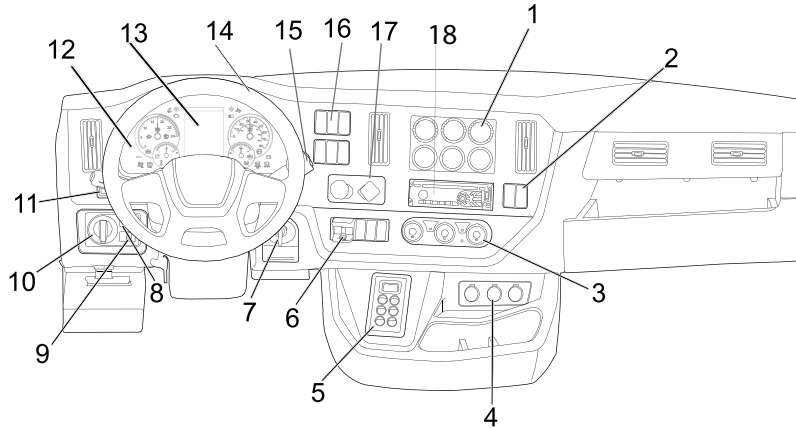
- If towing from the rear in a tractor

configuration vehicle, make sure that the roof fairings are removed. Damage occurs if you do not remove them.

CHAPTER 3: CONTROLS

1	Instrument Panel.....	47
2	Instrument Cluster.....	48
3	Digital Display.....	51
4	Display Notifications.....	54
5	Views.....	55
6	Menu.....	59
7	Post Trip.....	61
8	Warning Lights Indicators.....	61
9	Steering Wheel Controls (Option).....	75
10	Dash Switches.....	78
11	Steering Column Controls.....	102
12	Door Mounted Mirror Controls.....	110
13	Heating and Air Conditioning (AC).....	112
14	Cab Accessories.....	119

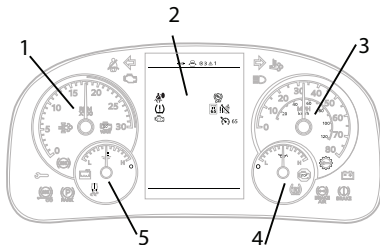
1 INSTRUMENT PANEL



1. Optional Gauges
2. Dash Switches
3. A/C Controls
4. 12 V Outlets
5. Shifter (push button shifter shown)
6. Compact Trailer Valve
7. Start Key Switch
8. Hazard Switch
9. Dimmer Switch
10. Exterior Lights Switch (ELS)
11. Signal Stalk
12. Instrument Cluster
13. Peterbilt Digital Display
14. Steering Wheel
15. Column Shifter (option)
16. Dash Switches
17. Parking Brake (air operated)
18. Radio Stereo System

2 INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

2.1 Instrument Cluster



- 1 Tachometer
- 2 Digital display
- 3 Speedometer
- 4 Engine Oil Pressure
- 5 Engine Coolant Temperature

2.2 Speedometer

The speedometer (1) is located on the right side of the main instrument cluster. A digital speedometer is shown on the digital display (5) while driving. The speedometer indicates the vehicle speed in miles per hour (mph) or in kilometers per hour (KM/h). The scale of mph or KM/h on the speedometer (1) depends on where the

vehicle was sold. You can change digital speedometer units on the digital display (5) by updating the "units".

2.3 Engine Oil Pressure

CAUTION

DO NOT operate your vehicle with insufficient oil pressure as this will cause serious engine damage. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

The Engine Oil Pressure gauge monitors the oil pressure to the Engine. It is important to maintain oil pressure within acceptable limits. If oil pressure drops below the minimum psi /bar, the Stop Engine warning light will illuminate, a notification will appear (see Notifications [on page 54](#)), and an audible alarm will sound.

If the oil pressure fails to rise within 10 seconds of starting the engine, stop the engine and determine the cause. Check the engine manufacturer's manual for the correct oil pressure ranges for your vehicle's engine. If the oil pressure suddenly drops, or the audible alarm and engine oil pressure telltale (see Low Oil Pressure [on page 32](#)) come on while driving, safely stop the engine and address the issue. For fur-

ther information on engine gauges and operating your engine properly, see Engine Maintenance [on page 242](#).

2.4 Engine Coolant Temperature

The Engine Coolant Temperature gauge indicates the temperature of the engine coolant.

If the coolant temperature exceeds the maximum limits, a red warning lamp in the gauge will turn on and an audible warning will sound. If the coolant temperature continues to rise, the Check Engine and/or Stop Engine lights will also come on.


CAUTION

DO NOT continue to operate an engine when the temperature gauge indicates that the engine is in an overheated state. Continuing to operate an overheating engine can severely damage the engine and other vehicle components (the transmission, for example). The vehicle must be serviced and the problem corrected as soon as possible to avoid causing severe, non-warrantable equipment damage. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

Under normal operating conditions, the water temperature gauge should register between 165° and 205° F (74° and 90° C). Under certain conditions, somewhat higher temperatures may be acceptable. The maximum allowable temperature is 220° F (104° C) with the cooling system pressurized, except for certain engines. Check the engine manual to be sure.

2.5 Tachometer

The tachometer is useful for efficient driving. It matches driving speed and gear selection to the operating range of the engine. If the engine speed gets too high, select a higher gear to lower the rpm. If the engine speed gets too low, select a lower gear to raise the rpm. To avoid engine damage, do not let the pointer exceed maximum governed engine speed. (See your Engine Operation and Maintenance Manual for rpm recommendations.) During optional PTO operations, an additional tachometer view appears on the Digital Display.

 CAUTION
DO NOT let the engine rpm operate beyond the maximum governing rpm. Operating the engine above the maximum governing rpm can result in

engine damage. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

2.6 Digital Gauges

DIGITAL GAUGES

In addition to traditional analog gauges, the vehicle's digital display shows digital gauges. These gauges appear in screens customized by the operator. If a gauge has a red zone (representing a gauge region outside of a component's normal operating range), it is indicated by a horizontal red line.



"Critical gauges," or gauges that enter a red zone, will enlarge and turn red. If the gauge value rises into this zone, the boundary will be indicated with a white line. If it lowers, it will be indicated with a red line.




If a gauge that goes into a warning state is not present on the currently shown view, then the gauge shows up in the lower part of the display. Gauges that stop receiving input from the systems they monitor will

display the text "Data Error" and turn gray and stop presenting values reflecting the systems they monitor.

VEHICLE AIR PRESSURE

The Primary Air Pressure gauge indicates pressure in the rear braking system. The Secondary gauge indicates pressure in the front braking system. Each gauge indicates the amount of air pressure in each system in pounds per square inch (psi). On vehicles equipped with metric air pressure gauges, the gauge face plate includes a bar (major) scale and psi (minor) scale.

 WARNING
If an air pressure warning light appears, an air pressure gauge changes color, or the low air pressure alert is heard, immediately bring the vehicle to a safe stop. If vehicle air pressure falls below 60 psi (4.14 bar/414 kPa), the spring brakes may abruptly stop the vehicle. DO NOT drive the vehicle until it is serviced. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

CAUTION

DO NOT attempt to move the vehicle before air system pressure reaches 100 psi (6.89 bar/689 kPa). The wheels may still be locked by the spring brakes, resulting in unnecessary brake wear or damage. Failure to comply may result in equipment damage or property damage.

PRESSURE UNITS

The Digital Display offers the following units of measurement for pressure:

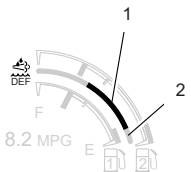
- Pounds per Square Inch (psi)
- Bar (bar)

The default unit is psi for both imperial and metric systems. Metric users may switch from psi to bar in the settings.

DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) - DIESEL ENGINES ONLY

The diesel exhaust fluid gauge shows the approximate amount of DEF fluid in the DEF tank.

Figure 10: DEF Level Gauge (dual tank version)



1. Level indicator
2. Low warning threshold

CAUTION

Only use diesel exhaust fluid (DEF). Using a fluid other than DEF can damage diesel particulate filter (DPF) components. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

Besides empty and full, the gauge also indicates 1/4, 1/2, and 3/4 of total capacity. DEF fluid is required to meet certain emission requirements. A warning icon and notification message will appear when the DEF level is low. Warnings can also occur if something other than DEF is put in the tank or if the system is tampered with. In this case the needle will still read high in the scale, but the gauge will show red warning colors and icons. Ignoring these warnings can result in an engine derate that progresses until the warnings are corrected. Do not allow your DEF tank to

remain empty. Please refer to your emission supplemental manual for more details about DEF fluid.

NOTE

The instrument cluster gauges may appear (if hidden from view), change brightness, and change color to bring attention to a particular system.

FUEL LEVEL



In addition to indicating empty and full, the gauge(s) also indicate the fuel level in graduated increments. When the fuel level for the tank is below 1/4 full, a red warning lamp in the gauge will come on.

WARNING

DO NOT carry additional fuel containers in your vehicle. Fuel containers, either empty or full, might leak, cause or feed a fire, or could possibly explode. Failure to comply may result in death, personal


injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**


DO NOT remove a fuel tank cap near sparks, flames, or smoking materials. Fuel in the presence of an ignition source could cause an explosion. A mixture of gasoline or alcohol with diesel fuel increases this risk of explosion. Use only the fuel or additives recommended for your engine. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

DO NOT use mixed fuels in the engine. Only use the fuel type specified in your engine operator's manual. Mixing gasoline, diesel, alcohol, or gasohol can cause an explosion. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **CAUTION**

For diesel vehicles, use only Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD) fuel as recommended by engine manufacturers. High-sulfur diesel fuel can damage the aftertreatment system and affect engine emissions, leading to non-compliance with emission regulations. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

 **CAUTION**

DO NOT use leaded gasoline or any fuel with metallic additives, such as manganese, iron, or lead. Metallic additives may damage the engine or the emission control system. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

 **NOTE**

For more information on fuel specifications, consult the engine operator's manual.

 **NOTE**

PACCAR recommends that you do not operate your vehicle with less than one-quarter of your vehicle's fuel capacity. Vehicles are manufactured with different fuel systems, drawing fuel from different heights within the tank. Road crown can also affect fuel position and availability. Because of these factors, allowing the fuel level to go below one-quarter capacity could result in insufficient fuel to keep the engine running.

2.7 Optional Gauges

Optional physical gauges can be located in a separate panel to the right of the main instrument cluster.

3 DIGITAL DISPLAY

3.1 Digital Display

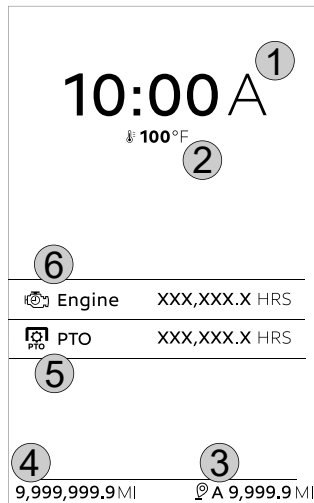
The Digital Display is located on the main instrument cluster and shows multiple cards via the menu control switch. The Digital Display is visible during all driving situations and in some parked situations. When

the parking brake is set and the truck key is in, the following actions will wake the display, making it visible:

- Tapping the brake
- Opening (or keeping open) the cab doors
- Turning the start switch to **ON, ACC,** or **START**
- Starting the engine
- Activating exterior lamps (see Lights, Exterior Lights Switch (ELS) [on page 95](#))
- Using steering wheel switches (This requires the steering wheel controls option.)
- Using the Menu Control Switch

If after 20 seconds, none of these actions are taken, the display will darken to conserve power, but will awaken when any wake action is performed. If the Anti-Theft option is active and you attempt to start the engine, a passcode prompt will appear. The engine cannot be started until the correct passcode is entered (see Anti-Theft (option) [on page 53](#)).

3.2 Digital Display Features



1. Time
2. Outside Air Temperature (OAT)
3. Trip (Sub-trip)
4. Odometer
5. Power Take-Off (PTO) (option)
6. Engine Hours

3.3 Adaptive Cruise Control Notification (option)



Adaptive Cruise Control Installed

Review Manual

This indication at vehicle start means it is equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Collision Mitigation. These features work together to improve driver safety and enhance the driving experience. When Cruise Control is active, ACC accelerates and slows the vehicle to maintain a chosen distance from a detected forward vehicle. Collision Mitigation attempts to prevent a forward collision when the vehicle is advancing at speeds greater than 15 mph (24 kph). Please review the ACC section of this manual, and the manufacturer's manual, prior to driving this vehicle.

3.4 Bulb Check

When the start key switch is in the ON position, multiple warning icons will be displayed in a sequence to test each warning light indicator. The total sequence should take no more than 10 seconds to complete.

Have your instrumentation system checked by a qualified service technician if it does not successfully complete.

Audible Alarm

The audible alarm will sound in conjunction with most warning lights. These events include but are not limited to headlight on, fifth wheel, stop engine, primary/secondary air, and driver door open warnings.

Optional Icons

Additional icons may be operational depending on individual vehicle specifications.

i NOTE

Some optional lights may illuminate even though your vehicle is not equipped with that particular feature.

3.5 Anti-Theft (option)

ANTI-THEFT (OPTION)

Anti-Theft prevents a driver from starting the engine unless the Anti-Theft passcode is entered.

i NOTE

Anti-Theft also prevents accessing the settings sub-menu.

If Anti-Theft is enabled, turning the start switch to **START** prompts the operator to enter the passcode. Once the correct passcode is entered, the driver will have five minutes to start the engine. If the engine is not started within that time, the passcode must be entered again.

i NOTE

Timer can be postponed in one-minute intervals using any steering wheel switch.

To enable or disable Anti-Theft, toggle the Anti-Theft (ON/OFF) state in the settings sub-menu, and then enter the current passcode.

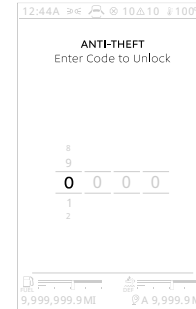
HOW TO ENTER THE PASSCODE

The start key and the current passcode are required.

The default passcode is set to 0000 at the factory. Please see an authorized dealer if a custom passcode is needed. The opera-

tor does not need a passcode to start the engine when the anti-theft feature is turned off.

1. Using the **Scroll**, scroll to the first number in the code then press **Select**.



The next digit will be selected.

2. **Scroll** to the number you want for this digit and press **Select**. The next digit will be selected.
3. Continue this process until all four digits have been chosen.

The display will read "Turn Key to Start Engine."

4 DISPLAY NOTIFICATIONS

4.1 Display Notifications

The digital display communicates vehicle information using digital warning lights (also called Telltales), gauge states, notifications, indicators, and audible alarms. Some conditions are communicated for informational purposes only while others may require an operator response.

4.2 Notifications

A notification communicates vehicle information. Notifications can be red, amber or white. Red and amber notifications are totaled in the Active Warnings Indicator at the top of the display. Notifications' characteristics (color, brilliance, and whether it flashes or has an audible alarm) depend on the condition that generated the notification.



1. Stack Size – The lower number indicates how many notifications are

in the stack (suppressible and non-suppressible), and the upper, which notification is being viewed.

2. Title – Notification.
3. Suppressibility – Indicates if the current notification is suppressible. The **Select** icon shown is for vehicles equipped with a Menu Control Switch (MCS); steering wheel switches indicate differently.
4. Instructions – Contains instructions or elaborating information.

When multiple notifications are present, each is assigned a priority and placed in a stack. Higher priority notifications are placed towards the front of the stack. The **Select** button cycles through the active notifications, allowing each notification in the stack to be viewed.

Some notifications, once viewed, are removed from the stack; these notifications are called suppressible. Suppressible notifications show an “X” below the **Select** icon and typically don't require an immediate response. Suppress these notifications using the **Back/Cancel** button (or the **Select** button when the parking brake is set). Non-suppressible notifications cannot be removed from the stack until the parking brake is set.

NOTE

The menu is not accessible until all notifications have been suppressed. All notifications become suppressible when the parking brake is set.

4.3 Active Warnings

Red and amber notifications will generate an active warning. Active warnings provide an additional reminder of the new and ongoing conditions which have generated a notification (both suppressed and unsuppressed). Active warning counts are presented in the following areas:

- Systems Check
- Notifications sub-menu
- Post-trip
- Active Warnings indicator

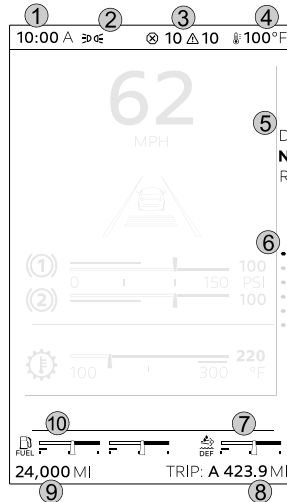
The active warnings count may change without user interaction if individual warnings are intermittent, time based, self correcting, or the situation is rectified.

5 VIEWS

5.1 Views

A view presents a specific set of gauges and/or indications on the display. The operator can cycle through the available views using the **Scroll**. When a view is shown, its position in the view sequence is indicated on the right. Some views monitor optional systems, appearing only if those systems are installed and/or active. The menu is also positioned in the view sequence. When the parking brake is set, some views provide additional options and information. Use the **Select** to access these options. All views present the following indications:

Figure 11: Standard Indications

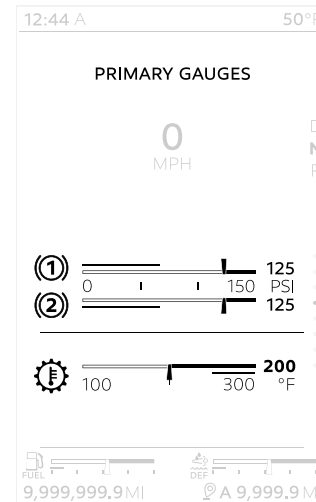


1. Time
2. Aux Lights
3. Active Warnings
(see Active Warnings [on page 54](#)).
4. Outside Air Temperature (OAT)
5. Transmission Gear Display
6. View Indicator
7. Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) level.
8. Trip Information
(see Trip Info [on page 58](#)).
9. Odometer

10. Fuel Gauge

When the parking brake is released, the display will show useful driving information, minimizing the currently selected view.

5.2 Gauge Views



A gauge view presents the standard and optional virtual gauges monitoring your truck systems. Two single or two compound gauges can be shown per view.

Gauges not shown in the first gauge view are shown in additional gauge views until all monitored systems are represented:

- Primary Gauges – The highest priority gauges. For vehicles with air brakes this will include the primary and secondary air tank pressures.
- Secondary Gauges – The second most important gauges.
- Additional Gauges – Any additional gauges not represented by the primary and secondary gauge views.



WARNING

DO NOT look at a screen on the instrument cluster for long periods while driving. Vehicle screens should be referenced only briefly and should not be used as a substitute for observing actual road and traffic conditions. Failure to pay attention to the vehicle's road position or situation can lead to an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

5.3 Custom Gauge View (Option)

Vehicles with this option provide a view which can contain up to four operator-selected gauges. If the custom view has not been configured, scrolling to the custom view allows the operator to enter the

custom view setup (See Custom Setup). The custom view can also be changed in the menu.



NOTE

To change the custom view configuration, the parking brake must be set.

5.4 Custom Setup

Creates a customized view containing up to four gauges, and places that view in the view cycle. Once two single gauges or compound gauges have been selected, the remaining gauge selections fade, indicating that no further selections can be made.

1. If the custom view already contains gauges
 - Select **Clear All** to remove those gauges, or
 - Keep the current gauge or compound gauge.
2. **Scroll** to the desired gauge or compound gauge.
3. **Select** to choose that gauge. The gauge name turns white and a check mark appears beside the name.

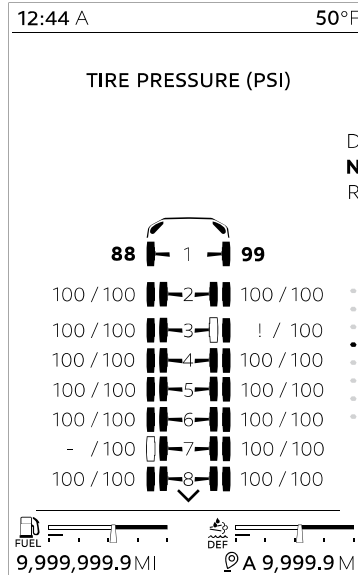
i NOTE

A gauge, once selected, can be removed by selecting that gauge again, clearing the check mark.

- If another gauge or compound gauge is desired, repeat steps 2 and 3.
- Scroll to Save Configuration** and press **Select**.

The custom view will now show the selected gauges.

5.5 Tire Pressure Monitoring System (option)



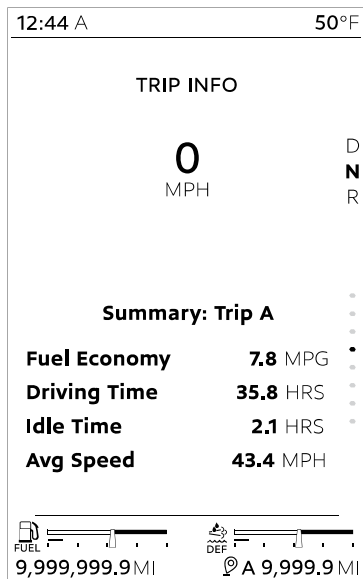
The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) is an optional feature combining tire data with the chassis axle layout, displayed graphically. The TPMS can be viewed only while the parking brake is set.

TPMS displays individual tire pressures and tire locations, using color to indicate the tire pressure condition:

- Gray – Normal
- Amber – Low (generates a notification)
- Red – Very Low (generates a notification)
- White – High (generates a notification)

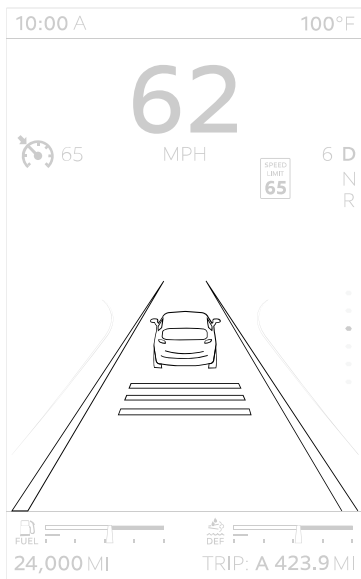
A Tire High Temperature condition also generates a notification.

5.6 Trip Info



Presents information concerning truck use during the current trip. These details are collected until the trip is reset, or the max trip distance (99,999.9 miles for main, 9,999.9 for sub-trips) is reached. For detailed trip information see Trip Summary located in the menu.

5.7 Adaptive Cruise (option)



The Adaptive Cruise view contains optional features designed to improve the driving experience:

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) – see [Adaptive Cruise Control \(Option\) on page 144](#)

A minimized version of the driver assistant is presented during all views when the engine is on and the parking brake is released.

5.8 PTO (option)

Figure 12: MX Electronic Power Take-Off (PTO) in Parked Mode

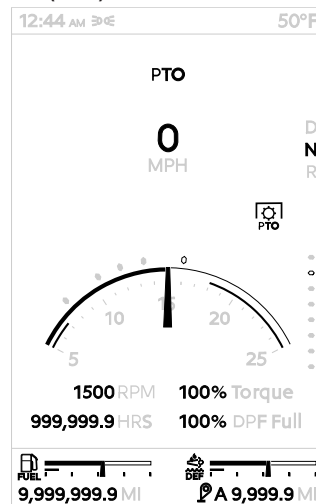
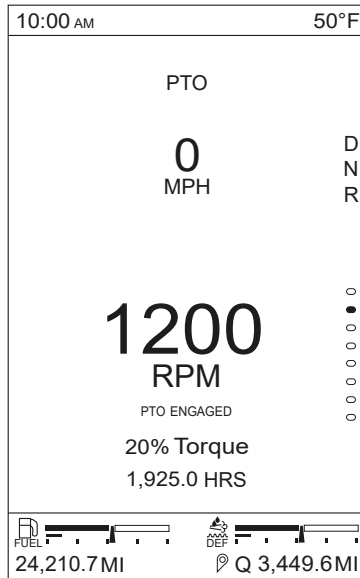


Figure 13: Electronic Power Take-Off (PTO) Engaged

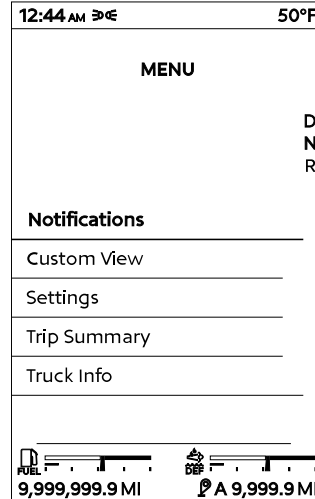


This truck may be equipped with Power Take-Off (PTO). PTO operation is enabled by using the dash mounted PTO switch in conjunction with the Cruise Control controls.

For information on PTO operation, see PTO Operations (option) on page 138.

6 MENU

6.1 Menu



The menu allows the operator to view active warnings, truck performance, activate and customize vehicle features, and access trip information. The menu can only be accessed when the parking brake is set. All notifications become suppressible when the parking brake is set. Use the **Scroll**

to choose the menu view and then press **Select** to access the menu. The menu contains sub-menus:

- Notifications – Shows active warnings and components monitored by a systems check.
- Custom View – Configures the custom gauge view:
 - Custom View ON/OFF – Enables the custom view.
 - Edit – Changes the gauges shown in the custom view (see Custom Setup on page 56).
 - Reset – Returns custom view to its default configuration.
- Settings – Customizes the display and enables functionality (see Settings on page 60).
- Trip Info – Shows information concerning truck use between trips (see Trip Summary on page 59).
- Truck Info – Truck information stores data about the vehicle (see Truck Information).

6.2 Trip Summary

Trip Summary is used to view accumulated truck usage data. This information is collected into the total trip (called the Full Trip). Also, data from several sub-trips

(each identified with a letter) can be collected. Trip Summary collects and totals data until the **Trip** has been reset or the max total distance is reached, at which point no further trip information will be added. The max total distance for the main trip is 99,999.9 and 9,999.9 for a sub-trip. Each trip can be scrolled to and selected by turning the **Scroll** and then pressing **Select**.

Each trip contains the following categories:

- Distance – Shows the distance traveled during the sub-trip or the total distance traveled during all trips.
- Trip Info – Shows information about fuel use, trip time, cruise control usage, and engine load.
- Time Stamp – Shows the start and stop times, and the dates for the selected trip.
- Idle – Shows the fuel usage and time spent when idling.
- PTO (option) – Shows information about PTO specific usage during the trip.

The information contained in these categories can be viewed by scrolling within that specific trip sub-menu.

6.3 Settings

Settings allows the operator to customize the display: Selections are made by navigating to the desired setting with the **Scroll** and pressing **Select** to change the setting. Press **Back/Cancel** to return to the previous menu.

NOTE

If Anti-Theft is enabled, settings will not be accessible until the correct passcode is entered.

Date & Time

- Format – Changes the clock to a 12-hour or 24-hour format.
- Automatic Time (option) – When active, automatically sets time and date based on location.
- Set Time – Sets the clock (not available if automatic time is active).
- Set Date – Sets the date (not available if automatic time is active).

Units & Language

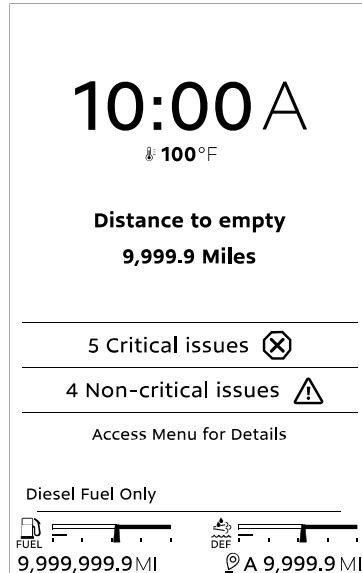
- Unit Standard/Metric – Changes the numerical readout to Standard, Metric or Metric with PSI units.
- Language – Changes the language to English, Spanish, or French.

Features

- Anti-Theft – Turns Anti-Theft On/Off (see Anti-Theft (option) [on page 53](#)).
- Dark Cabin – Turns Dark Cabin On/Off; this prevents cab interior lights from turning on when a cab door is opened.
- Trailer Detect – Turns Trailer Detect On/Off
- LVD Setup – Sets the Low Voltage Disconnect setting (see Low Voltage Disconnect (LVD) (Option) [on page 235](#)).

6.4 Truck Information

7 POST TRIP

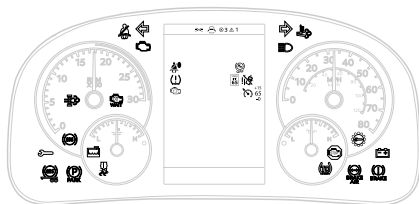


Post Trip presents information the driver might require for the next time the vehicle is operated, such as active warnings and the distance to empty. Post trip is shown

when the start switch is turned to OFF. During Post Trip, the menu can be accessed by pressing **Select**.

8 WARNING LIGHTS INDICATORS

8.1 Warning Lights and Indicators



The instrument panel communicates many vehicle conditions using warning lights (also called telltales), indicators, and audible alarms and tones. Alarms and tones are sometimes accompanied by an indicator or warning light. Some indications are communicated for informational purposes only – indicators – while warning lights often require an operator response and are frequently accompanied with a notification (see Notifications on page 54).

Warning lights, indicators, and audible alarms and tones may indicate a system malfunction or attempt to draw attention to the component it monitors, so they should be checked frequently and responded to promptly. These indications could save you from a serious accident.

Some of these indications also present an associated notification, providing additional information (see Notifications on page 54). Red and amber notifications are tallied at the top of the display and can be viewed in the notifications sub-menu when the parking brake is set. Additionally, gauges may become visible on the Digital Display and may change color or brightness to bring the gauge to the operator's attention.

WARNING

DO NOT ignore any type of tone or lights. These signals tell you that something is malfunctioning on your vehicle and provide you an indication of what system is affected. It could be a failure of an important system, such as the brakes, which could lead to an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Some warnings can be managed by the operator while others may require an authorized dealer repair. The following table lists the warning lights and indicators that appear on the instrument cluster. Each indication in this table has a unique name, symbol, and lists the illuminated color or colors. The table also lists whether the indication is standard (Std) or optional (Opt). Optional indications require the vehicle to have a specific component installed.

Table 3: Indications









Title	Symbol	Color	Std	Opt
Antilock Brake System (ABS) <u>on page 67</u>		Amber	•	
Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), Trailer <u>on page 67</u>		Amber	•	
Stability Control (Option) <u>on page 68</u>		Amber	•	
Traction Control <u>on page 69</u>		Amber	•	
Brake System Malfunction <u>on page 69</u>		Red	•	
Transmission, Failure <u>on page 74</u>		Red		•
Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) <u>on page 69</u>		Amber	•	
Differential, Inter-Axle Lock <u>on page 70</u>		Green		•

Table 3: Indications










Title	Symbol	Color	Std	Opt
Dump Truck, Body Up <u>on page 70</u>		Red		•
Dump Truck, Trailer Body Up <u>on page 70</u>		Red		•
Engine BrakeSaver or Transmission Retarder <u>on page 70</u>		Amber		•
Engine, Check Engine <u>on page 71</u>		Amber	•	
Engine Brake Indicator <u>on page 71</u>		Green		•
Engine, Low Coolant Level <u>on page 71</u>		Amber	•	
Engine, Overspeed <u>on page 71</u>		Red		•
Stop Engine <u>on page 31</u>		Red	•	
Engine Wait-to-Start Light <u>on page 72</u>		Amber		•

Table 3: Indications











Title	Symbol	Color	Std	Opt
Emissions, High Exhaust System Temperature <u>on page 72</u>		Amber	•	
Emissions, Engine Derate <u>on page 72</u>		Amber	•	
Hill Hold <u>on page 73</u>		Amber		•
Lights, High Beam <u>on page 73</u>		Blue		•
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) <u>on page 73</u>		Amber		•
Park Brake <u>on page 74</u>		Red	•	
Seat Belt, Fasten <u>on page 74</u>		Red	•	
Transmission, Oil Temperature High <u>on page 74</u>		Amber		•

Table 3: Indications

Title	Symbol	Color	Std	Opt
Turn Signal, Left <u>on page 74</u>		Green	•	
Turn Signal, Right <u>on page 75</u>		Green	•	

8.2 Antilock Brake System (ABS)



Illuminates during the Bulb Check (see Bulb Check on page 52). Have the ABS checked by an authorized dealer if the ABS warning lamp stays on for more than 3 s.

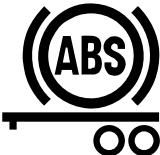
- Illuminates during normal operating conditions to indicate a problem with the ABS.
- Illuminates when a problem exists with Automatic Traction Control (ATC).

See also Automatic Traction Control on page 4-33.

i NOTE

After servicing the ABS, the lamp stays on after the power-on self-test. This indicates that the ABS wheel sensors have not been checked by the ABS. As soon as the vehicle is driven at speeds above 4 mph (6 km/h) the lamp turns off, indicating that the wheel sensors have been checked by the ABS.

8.3 Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), Trailer



1. The ABS, Trailer indicator illuminates during the power-on self-test. It turns off after a few seconds if no system problems are detected. The bulb self-test is performed whenever the start switch is turned to ON, regardless of whether you have Trailer ABS. When the bulb self-test detects functioning Trailer ABS, the lamp turns off.
2. If the ABS warning light turns on at any other time, it is indicating that a problem exists with the Power Line Communication (PLC) trailer ABS. This should be checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible. (Refer to "Trailer ABS" in the Operator's Manual for more information.)

! WARNING

If the ABS warning light does not briefly illuminate when the start switch is first turned to ON, have the vehicle inspected as soon as possible. If the ABS warning light does not illuminate, it will not alert the operator in the event of an ABS malfunction. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

3. If your tractor and trailer have the, "Special Trailer ABS (Without PLC) Option," refer to "Special Trailer ABS (Without PLC) Option" in the Operator's Manual. This lamp will switch on when the trailer ABS has a system problem. This should be **checked by an authorized dealer** as soon as possible. Power on self-test for the trailer ABS is controlled by the cluster and occurs under all conditions.

i NOTE

If the Trailer ABS Warning Lamp does switch on during the power-on self-test, there may be a problem with the light or wiring. You should

have this checked as soon as possible.

i NOTE

Tractors/trucks and trailers built after 03/01/2001 must be able to turn on an In-Cab Trailer ABS Warning Light (per U.S. FMVSS121). The industry chose Power Line Communication (PLC) as the standard method to turn it on. On trailers built prior to 03/01/2001, verify trailer ABS system status via the required external warning light mounted on the trailer. The indicator light on the trailer should be amber and identified with the letters ABS.

i NOTE

The Trailer ABS Warning Lamp will not turn on when connected to trailers with ABS (but without PLC) powered through the primary 7-way trailer light line. Use the lamp on the driver's side of the trailer to identify trailer ABS problems.

i NOTE

For doubles or triples, the lamp does not distinguish between trailers. An ABS problem in any of the trailers will activate the Trailer ABS Warning Lamp.

8.4 Stability Control (Option)



Calculates the driver's intended path of travel from wheel speed and steering angle sensors, then compares calculations to the actual direction of travel. The system uses individual wheel brakes to re-adjust the path of the vehicle.

- The Stability Control Icon (ESC or Electronic Stability Control) illuminates during the Bulb Check when the engine is ON. The lamp switches off after a few seconds if no system problems are detected. If a problem is detected, the ESC Warning Lamp will switch on and stay on.
- Illuminates when the ESC system is regulating individual wheel brakes to correct the vehicle's direction of travel.

(Refer to Advanced ABS with Stability Control for more information.)

! WARNING

Any modification to a vehicle with Electronic Stability Control (ESC) may result in a loss of vehicle control or non-compliance with Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards. Modifications include but are not limited to changes to the vehicle's axle weight ratings, number of axles, front and rear suspension, wheel-base length or frame, steering controls, or intended body type and size. A modified vehicle with ESC must be evaluated by a qualified technician before it can be operated. Contact your authorized dealer for evaluations. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

i NOTE

For more information about the stability control system installed on your vehicle, please refer to additional material supplied with this operator manual, included in your glove box informational packet.

8.5 Traction Control



Monitors wheel speed for poor traction. If a wheel begins to slip due to poor traction, Traction Control will reduce engine power, and or apply brakes in an effort to regain traction.

- Illuminates during the Bulb Check when the engine is ON. The lamp switches off after a few seconds if no system problems are detected. If an ATC problem continues, the ATC warning light will switch on, and stay on.
- Illuminates when the ATC is regulating wheel spin and switches off after the traction control event has ended.
- Flashes continuously when the ATC/ Deep Snow & Mud switch is placed in the on position, indicating that this feature is active.



WARNING

Any modification to a vehicle with Electronic Stability Control (ESC) may result

in a loss of vehicle control or non-compliance with Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards. Modifications include but are not limited to changes to the vehicle's axle weight ratings, number of axles, front and rear suspension, wheel-base length or frame, steering controls, or intended body type and size. A modified vehicle with ESC must be evaluated by a qualified technician before it can be operated. Contact your authorized dealer for evaluations. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



NOTE

For more information about the stability control system installed on your vehicle, please refer to additional material supplied with this operator manual, included in your glove box informational packet.

8.6 Brake System Malfunction

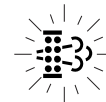


This indication appears when a failure has occurred with the brake system. This can result from the following:

- Loss of primary or secondary air
- Loss of air in the trailer brake system
- Fault signal generated in the trailer brake system

This situation should be considered an emergency. Perform actions for Low Air Actions [on page 31](#).

8.7 Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)



This warning means that the DPF needs to be regenerated and appears when soot in the DPF exceeds an acceptable amount or a significant amount of hydrocarbons (HC) are detected.

This warning may also appear if the system is attempting to regenerate automatically while the vehicle is in Power Take-off (PTO) mode.

For more information about this warning, consult the Engine Aftertreatment System operator's manual.

i NOTE

This manual describes only the most basic aftertreatment information essential for a driver to operate the vehicle safely. For a more thorough explanation of the emissions system is available in the video linked to the QR code below or in the Engine Aftertreatment Systems Operator's Manual.



8.8 Differential, Inter-Axle Lock



Illuminates when the inter-axle differential switch is ON thus locking the inter-axle differential. This powers the forward rear and the rear rear differentials equally. When the switch is turned off (inter-axle differential unlocked) the engine power is allowed to flow to any of the four drive tires based on the differential effect (mostly to the forward rear differential). This feature is standard on all tandem axles.

i NOTE

Tractors/trucks and trailers built after 03/01/2001 must be able to turn on an In-Cab Trailer ABS Warning Light (per U.S. FMVSS121). The industry chose Power Line Communication (PLC) as the standard method to turn it on. On trailers built prior to 03/01/2001, verify trailer ABS system status via the required external warning light mounted on the trailer. The indicator light on the trailer should be amber and identified with the letters ABS.

8.9 Dump Truck, Body Up



Illuminates when Truck Dump Body is up.

Related Links

8.10 Dump Truck, Trailer Body Up



Illuminates when Trailer Dump body is up.

8.11 Engine BrakeSaver or Transmission Retarder



Illuminates when BrakeSaver (export only) or Transmission Retarder is active.

i NOTE

Allison transmissions does not incorporate retarders for use in New Medium Duty vehicles yet.

8.12 Engine Brake Indicator



This indicator appears when the engine braking (compression brake or exhaust brake) is active. It shows available engine braking levels near the indicator, with the selected braking level highlighted:

When using engine braking, the engine brake indicator turns green. An override of active engine braking can occur when the operator (or a vehicle feature, such as Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)) provides acceleration. In these cases, the engine brake indicator turns white (enabled but not active) while the vehicle accelerates.

8.13 Engine, Check Engine



Illuminates when a problem exists, but the vehicle can still be safely driven. Vehicle should be serviced to correct the problem, but the situation should not be considered an emergency.

The Check Engine Lamp activates for several reasons including, but not limited to, Water in Fuel, No-Idle Shutdown alert screens, High Exhaust Temperature, Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF), and Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) warning lights. Refer to your Engine Operator's Manual for additional information.

NOTE

Only for engines equipped with emissions aftertreatment.

8.14 Engine, Low Coolant Level



Illuminates with an audible alarm indicating critically low coolant level. The vehicle must be serviced to correct the problem but the situation should not be considered an emergency.

8.15 Engine, Overspeed



Illuminates when engine RPM is exceeded (Allison Transmissions).

8.16 Stop Engine



This warning light appears with an audible alarm tone when a major engine system problem exists.

WARNING

If the stop engine warning light turns on, a serious engine system problem has occurred. Safely stop the vehicle and turn OFF the engine. DO NOT drive the vehicle until the vehicle has been serviced. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

8.17 Engine Wait-to-Start Light

This warning Icon appears when the system needs some time before attempting to start the engine. The light illuminates at key ON, and stays on for as long as 30 seconds.



i NOTE

The length of time the 'Wait-To-Start' lamp remains illuminated depends on the ambient temperature. The lower the ambient temperature, the longer the lamp will be illuminated.

Once the Wait-to-Start light switches off, turn the key to the starting position to start the engine.

You see this light appear when the starter overheats. Alternatively, you can see it when the engine grid heater needs time to warm up.

i NOTE

Some engines are equipped with an engine starting motor protection feature. If the starting motor is engaged for 30 or more seconds without the engine starting, the starter is locked out from operating, allowing for proper cooling of the starting motor. During this time, the 'Wait-To-Start' lamp flashes for 2 minutes. Once the lamp stops flashing, the starting motor is allowed to function.

8.18 Emissions, Engine Derate



This indicator illuminates when a derate is active. This indicator not only appears when an emission derate is active, there are several reasons for all derate and shutdown strategies to stop the engine to prevent severe damage to the aftertreatment system. The following are some reasons related to high temperature derate and shutdown.

- Durability - Prevents failure: Used to prevent engine or aftertreatment

system damage due to high inlet air temperature.

- Durability - Post failure/prevents further damage: Used after a subsystem failure to prevent further damage to the engine or aftertreatment system due to Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) over temperature.
- Regulatory: Used to perform the intent of a regulation (e.g.: derate due to low Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) levels).
- Safety: Used to address a concern over safe operation of the vehicle (e.g.: derate and shutdown of the engine associated with DPF exotherm event).

8.19 Emissions, High Exhaust System Temperature



Illuminates when the exhaust gas temperature and exhaust components become extremely hot.

⚠ WARNING

If the High Exhaust System Temperature (HEST) warning light is on, DO NOT park near people, combustible materials, or combustible vapors. A person coming within 5 ft. (1.5 m) of the exhaust (outlet) stream or into contact with an engine aftertreatment system (EAS) component may incur serious burns. Combustibles need to be at least 5 ft. (1.5 m) away from the exhaust stream as it exits the tail pipe. Failure to maintain this margin could ignite the material or cause an explosion. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

⚠ WARNING

When the High Exhaust System Temperature (HEST) warning light is on, allow adequate cooling time before attempting to approach or work on any part of the exhaust system or surrounding components. When the HEST warning light is on, the temperature of the exhaust system is elevated and can cause serious burns. This system includes the tailpipe, exhaust pipes,

diesel particulate filter (DPF)/selective catalytic reduction (SCR) device, and surrounding components, including enclosures and steps. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

8.20 Hill Hold



If equipped with a PACCAR TX-12/TX-18 series or Eaton Endurant automated transmission, indicator blinks when disabled by switch (once per second), or continuous with fault.

The hill stop aid helps control unwanted vehicle movement on steep grades when transitioning from the brake to throttle pedal.

8.21 Lights, High Beam



Illuminates when the high beams are on. This icon flashes with an audible alarm if the headlights are left ON when the door is opened and the key switch is OFF. In addition, this icon flashes, but without an audible alarm, if there is a problem with the low beam headlights or the low beam headlight wiring. In such event, the high beam headlights turn on at 50% normal brightness.

8.22 Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)



Illuminates when an engine emissions failure has occurred. The vehicle can be safely driven but should be serviced to correct the problem. The situation should not be considered an emergency. In some cases, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp activates in conjunction with the High Exhaust Temperature, Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) and Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Warning Lights.

i NOTE

Only for engines equipped with emissions aftertreatment.

8.23 Message Waiting (Option)



Illuminates with telematic-equipped messaging.

8.24 Park Brake



Illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

The Park Brake lamp flashes and warning tone sounds anytime the parking brake is not set and driver's door is open. Audible alarm sounds if the parking brake is set and speed is greater than 5 miles per hour.

NOTE

If equipped with Electronic Park Brake (EPB) system, the Parking Brake may automatically activate. For more infor-

mation refer to the Bendix manual provided with your vehicle.

8.25 Seat Belt, Fasten



Illuminates for 5 seconds whenever the start key switch is turned on, then it turns off. The warning lamp may also come on if the driver's seat belt is not fastened (if the vehicle was ordered with a seat belt warning light option).

8.26 Transmission, Failure



Indicates a fault with the transmission. Refer to transmission manual.

8.27 Transmission, Oil Temperature High



Illuminates when transmission lubricant temperature is too high.

CAUTION

DO NOT continue to operate the vehicle when the transmission temperature gauge indicates that it is in an overheated state. The vehicle must be serviced and the problem corrected. Continuing to operate an overheating transmission can severely damage the transmission and other vehicle components. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

8.28 Turn Signal, Left



Blinks when the left turn signal or the hazard light function is operating.

8.29 Turn Signal, Right



Blinks when the right turn signal or the hazard light function is operating.

9 STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS (OPTION)

9.1 Steering Wheel Controls (Option)

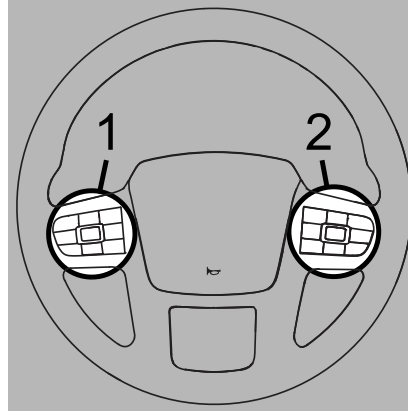


WARNING

DO NOT attempt to service the steering wheel, clockspring, steering components (steering column, steering drive-line, or steering gear), or any electrical wiring in the multiplex system. Tampering with these components may affect steering and lead to an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

The steering wheel may provide controls for commonly used functions, so that their use does not require the operator to take

their hands off of the steering wheel. These controls are also used to interface with the display.



1. Left switch pod
2. Right switch pod

The switches on the left side of the horn pad, including the toggle switch, manage vehicle speed functions including cruise control and optional features such as variable road speed limiter and adaptive cruise control (see Left Switch Pod [on page 75](#)).

Switches on the right side control PACCAR display (Radio Stereo System (option) [on page 119](#)) and navigate and configure the digital display (see Right Switch Pod [on page 76](#)).

9.2 City Horn

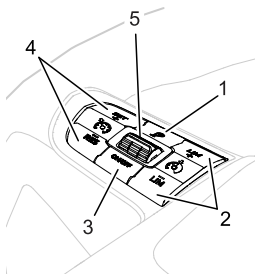
Depressing the horn pad in the center of the steering wheel activates the city horn.

9.3 Air Horn (Option)

Your vehicle may be equipped with optional air horns. To operate, pull on the lanyard extending from the overhead panel on the driver's side.

9.4 Left Switch Pod

The left switch pod on the steering wheel contains buttons for the trip and cruise control features. See Cruise Control [on page 141](#).



- 1 **Trip**
- 2 Variable Road Speed Limiter (VRSL) LIM+ and LIM- (option)
- 3 Cruise Control ON/OFF
- 4 Cruise Control (CC) SET+ and RES-
- 5 **Toggle**

Trip

Starts a trip or sub-trip. A long press will clear all trip data.

Variable Road Speed Limiter (VRSL) LIM+ and LIM- (Option)

This feature allows the operator to set an upper-limit speed for the vehicle and do not exceed this chosen speed limit. The speed can be changed while driving by using the LIM+ and LIM- buttons. VRSL cancels the Cruise Control (CC) when active.

Cruise Control ON/OFF

By pressing the ON/OFF buttons the Cruise Control is activated or deactivated.

Cruise Control (CC) SET+ and RES-

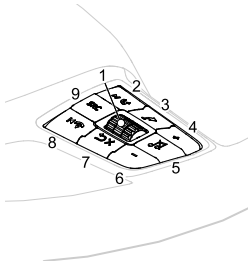
The SET+ button sets the Cruise Control speed. The RES- button resumes the previously set speed. Also, these buttons increase or decrease the Cruise Control (CC) set speed by holding down the SET+ or RES- while accelerating or decelerating the vehicle.

Toggle

This switch is optional for vehicles equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC). The toggle has toggle up, toggle down, and toggle press functionality to adjust the ACC features in the Digital Display (DD).

9.5 Right Switch Pod

The controls located on the right pod of the steering wheel are used to select the View, navigate, and select items in the Menu, and view notifications.

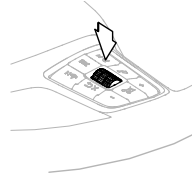


- 1 **Scroll Wheel**
- 2 **Next/Accept**
- 3 Not used
- 4 **Volume Increase**
- 5 **Mute**
- 6 **Volume Decrease**
- 7 **Back/Cancel**
- 8 **Previous/Cancel**
- 9 **Media Source**

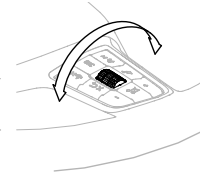
9.6 Scroll Wheel

Use the scroll wheel to adjust the level of gauge view detail within the display or navigate through menus and make selections. The scroll wheel is bi-directional and is also a button. Press down on the scroll wheel to open and select menu options, to change settings when in the menu, and suppress notification messages when allowed.

Select



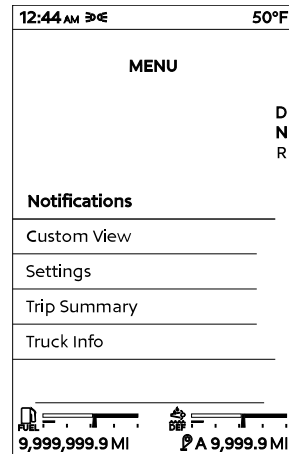
Scroll



For example, vehicle time can be set using the Scroll Wheel.

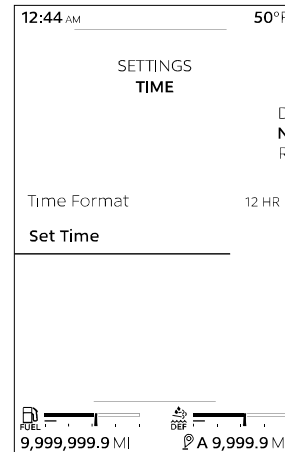
Press down (**Select**) to open the menu:

Figure 14: Menu Example: Main



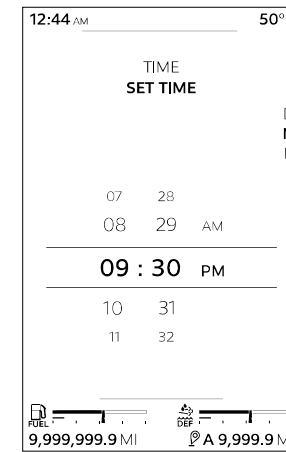
Scroll to Settings and then (**Select**) again to choose the Settings sub-menu: Then **Scroll** to Set Time and press **Select**.

Figure 15: Menu Example: Time



Finally, **Scroll** through the values and press **Select** to set the time.

Figure 16: Menu Example Set Function



In the context of viewing notification messages in the display, the icon will show an arrow when the **Select** function is available:

Figure 17: Select



9.7 Back/Cancel






Use the **Back/Cancel** button to return to the previous menu, suppress a notification, or cancel a selection. See Notifications on [page 54](#).








10 DASH SWITCHES








3








10.1 Dash Switches







This custom vehicle has a wide variety of switch-controlled equipment. It is not possible to identify every switch in this section of the operator's manual. Some air device switches can be dependent upon the state of another device to work when switched. Some variables include: a specific vehicle speed, parking brake status, or that another device is on for the air device to operate as expected. The instrument display shows information regarding what must change for the air device to operate as expected. The following table provides a complete list of possible switch icons:








Title	Symbol	Color	Stnd	Opt
Axle, Automatic Traction Control on page 89		None	•	
Axle, Diff. Lock - Dual on page 89		Amber		•
Axle, Diff-Lock - Forward Rear on page 89		Amber		•
Axle, Diff-Lock - Steer on page 89		Amber		•
Axle, Diff-Lock - Rear Rear on page 89		Amber		•


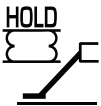
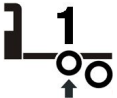
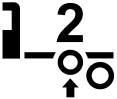
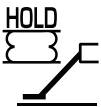

Title	Symbol	Color	Std	Opt
Axle, Diff-Lock - Single Rear <u>on page 89</u>		Amber		•
Axle, Inter-Axle Differential Locked (Tandem) <u>on page 89</u>		Amber		•
Axle, Two Speed <u>on page 89</u>		Green		•
Back Up Alarm Mute <u>on page 89</u>		Amber		•
Batteries, Low-Voltage Disconnect (LVD) <u>on page 90</u>		None	•	
Brakes, ABS Off-Road <u>on page 90</u>		Amber		•
Brake, Parking Brake Valve <u>on page 91</u>		Yellow	•	






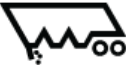
Title	Symbol	Color	Std	Opt
Brake, Trailer Hand <u>on page 91</u>		None		•
Lights, Cab and Panel Dimmer Switch <u>on page 91</u>		None	•	
Dump Truck Gate <u>on page 91</u>		Red		•
Engine, Brake Level <u>on page 91</u>		None		•
Engine, Brake On/Off <u>on page 91</u>		Green		•
Engine, Cruise Control On/Off <u>on page 91</u>		Green	•	
Engine, Cruise Control Set/Resume <u>on page 92</u>		None	•	

Title	Symbol	Color	Std	Opt
Engine Fan Override on page 92		Green		•
Engine, Heater on page 92		Green		•
Engine, Remote Throttle on page 92	PUMP MODE	Amber		•
Engine, Shutdown on page 93		None		•
Exhaust, Brake On/Off on page 93		Green		•
Exhaust, Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) Regeneration on page 93		None	•	
Fifth Wheel Slide on page 93		Red		•
Fuel Heater on page 93		Amber		•
Generic Air, Accessory on page 93		Green		•


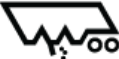


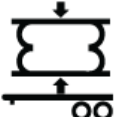
Title	Symbol	Color	Std	Opt
Generic, Spare SPARE <u>on page 94</u>	SPARE	Green		•
Start Key Switch <u>on page 94</u>		None	•	
Kingpin Release <u>on page 94</u>		None		•
Lights, Beacon <u>on page 94</u>		Green		•
Lights, Daytime Running (Override) <u>on page 95</u>		Green		•
Lights, Work <u>on page 98</u>		Green		•
Lights, Flood ISO 3732 Spare <u>on page 98</u>		Green		•



Title	Symbol	Color	Std	Opt
Lights, Fog <u>on page 98</u>		Green		•
Lights, Footwell (option) <u>on page 98</u>		Green		•
Lights, Hazard <u>on page 98</u>		Red	•	
Headlights see Lights, Exterior Lights Switch (ELS) <u>on page 95</u>		Green	•	
Lights, Exterior Lights Switch (ELS) <u>on page 95</u>		Green	•	
Lights, Spot <u>on page 99</u>		Green		•
Menu Control Switch <u>on page 99</u>		None		•

Title	Symbol	Color	Stnd	Opt
Power Take-off (PTO) <u>on page 99</u>		Amber		•
Suspension, Air Retention <u>on page 100</u>		Amber		•
Suspension, Axle, Pusher <u>on page 100</u>		Green		•
Suspension, Axle, Tag <u>on page 100</u>		Green		•
Suspension, Lift <u>on page 100</u>		Amber		•
Trailer, Axle (3rd Axle) Lift <u>on page 101</u>		Green		•

Title	Symbol	Color	Std	Opt
Pintle Hook <u>on page 99</u>		Green		•
Trailer Air Supply <u>on page 100</u>		Red	•	
Trailer, Axle (3rd Axle) Lift <u>on page 101</u>		Green		•
Trailer, Axle Lift Forward <u>on page 101</u>		Green		•
Trailer, Axle Lift Rear <u>on page 101</u>		Green		•
Trailer, Belly Dump <u>on page 101</u>		Red		•

3

Title	Symbol	Color	Std	Opt
Trailer, Dump Gate <u>on page 101</u>		Red		•
Trailer, Belly Dump Gate Center <u>on page 101</u>		Red		•
Trailer, Belly Dump Gate Rear <u>on page 101</u>		Red		•
Trailer, Hotline <u>on page 101</u>		Green		•
Trailer, Suspension Air Dump <u>on page 102</u>		Amber		

Title	Symbol	Color	Std	Opt
Trip Button see Menu Control Switch <u>on page 99</u>		None		•
Winch Clutch		Green		

3

10.2 Axle, Automatic Traction Control



Briefly push switch in to engage Deep Mud and Snow Traction Control. See Deep Snow and Mud Switch on page 4-34.

10.3 Axle, Diff. Lock - Dual



Turn switch on to engage Front and Rear Axle Diff Lock.

10.4 Axle, Diff-Lock - Forward Rear



Turn switch on to engage Forward Rear Axle Diff Lock.

10.5 Axle, Diff-Lock - Steer



Turn switch on to engage Front Axle Diff Lock.

10.6 Axle, Diff-Lock - Rear Rear



Turn switch on to engage Rear Rear Axle Diff Lock.

10.7 Axle, Diff-Lock - Single Rear



Turn switch on to engage Single Rear Axle Diff Lock.

10.8 Axle, Inter-Axle Differential Locked (Tandem)



Turn switch on to engage Inter-Axle Differential Lock.

10.9 Axle, Two Speed



If equipped, the two speed axle switch allows you to select axle high and low ranges. The low range (Off) provides maximum torque for operating off-highway. The high range (On) is a faster ratio for highway speeds.

10.10 Back Up Alarm Mute



Turn switch on to mute Back Up Alarm.

i NOTE

The mute function use is discouraged. Only use mute when legally required.

10.11 Batteries, Low-Voltage Disconnect (LVD)

BATTERIES, LOW-VOLTAGE DISCONNECT (LVD)



If your vehicle is equipped with a Low-Voltage Disconnect (LVD) feature, the LVD module is located inside the driver's side kick panel.

PURPOSE

The LVD may increase battery life and prevent unnecessary jump start conditions by ensuring that an unattended load does not deplete the battery charge to a level that will prevent you from starting your vehicle.

OPERATION

The LVD will disconnect non-vital battery loads when battery voltage drops below 12.3V for 3 minutes and the key switch is in the ACC or OFF position. During the last 2 minutes the LVD will emit a slow audible beep. 30 seconds before disconnecting loads the alarm will change to a fast beep. The battery voltage must come back up above a certain voltage before the LVD will reset.

See an authorized dealer if the LVD fails to reconnect loads during normal operation.

CIRCUITS DISCONNECTED BY LVD

- Cab Dome Lamps
- Cab Accessories
- Spare Battery A & B

i NOTE

All LVD circuits are color-coded blue on the central electrical panel cover label.

! WARNING

DO NOT use the Spare Battery A and B circuits or other circuits that are controlled by the low voltage discon-

nect (LVD) to power electronic engine controls, ABS circuits, or safety/work related lighting. Before adding any device to the vehicle's electrical system, consult your nearest authorized dealer or read the contents of TMC RP136. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

i NOTE

The determination of what circuits/loads that were connected to the LVD was based upon the recommendation from Technology and Maintenance Council (TMC) of the American Trucking Association. To review the recommended practice, see TMC RP-136.

10.12 Brakes, ABS Off-Road

**OFF ROAD**

Turn switch on to engage ABS Off-Road mode. See Antilock Brake Systems (ABS) on page 155.

10.13 Brake, Parking Brake Valve



Pull yellow knob to activate parking brake.

10.14 Brake, Trailer Hand




This dash mounted switch provides air pressure to apply the trailer brake only. It operates independently of the foot treadle valve.

10.15 Lights, Cab and Panel Dimmer Switch



This switch alters the brightness of the instrument panel lights and ambient lighting. It also controls the cab overhead.

 NOTE
The Headlight Switch is an ON or OFF switch. The panel lights are on full intensity during the day and dim when headlights are on.

10.16 Dump Truck Gate



Turn switch on to open Dump Truck Gate.

10.17 Engine, Brake Level



If the engine brake is on, the up position will provide 100% engine braking, the middle position 60%, and the down position 33% engine braking when engine braking is active.

For more information on when and how to use the engine brake in your vehicle, see the engine brake owner's manual for additional engine brake information.

10.18 Engine, Brake On/Off



Turn switch **ON** to activate Engine Brake system. This symbol is also used for an exhaust brake. Vehicles equipped with an engine brake will not also have an exhaust brake. For more information on when and how to use the engine brake in your vehicle, see the engine brake owner's manual for additional engine brake information.

10.19 Engine, Cruise Control On/Off



Turn switch on to activate Cruise Control System.

10.20 Engine, Cruise Control Set/Resume



The Cruise Control Set/Resume switch allows you to **SET** the desired speed or **RESUME** the desired speed after the cruise control function has been interrupted.

10.21 Engine Fan Override



The engine fan switch allows you to control the engine fan manually or automatically. With the start key switch ON and the fan switch in the MANUAL position, the engine fan will be on regardless of engine temperature. With the engine fan switch in the AUTOMATIC position, the engine fan will automatically turn on when the engine coolant reaches a temperature of about 200°F (93°C) or when the air conditioning system has reached set point pressure. With an electronic engine, the fan may also be activated by air intake temperature, oil temperature and compression brake usage.

WARNING

DO NOT work on or near the engine fan while the engine is running. The fan can start at any time without warning, and anyone near the fan when it turns on could be injured. If the manual fan switch is set to MANUAL, the fan will turn on when the start key switch is turned to the ON position. If the switch is set to AUTO, it could engage suddenly at any time without warning. Before starting the engine or switching the manual fan switch from AUTO to MANUAL, make sure no one is near the fan. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage or property damage.

CAUTION

The fan or equipment near it could be damaged if the fan turns on suddenly when you do not expect it. Keep all tools and equipment away from the fan. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

CAUTION

DO NOT operate the engine fan in the MANUAL position for extended periods of time. The fan hub was designed for intermittent operation. Sustained operation will shorten the fan hub's service life as well as reduce fuel economy. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

10.22 Engine, Heater



Turn switch on to activate the Engine Heater.

10.23 Engine, Remote Throttle

PUMP MODE

Turn switch on to activate Remote Throttle Control.

10.24 Engine, Shutdown



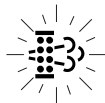
Momentarily push switch in to activate the shutdown system.

10.25 Exhaust, Brake On/Off



Turn switch **ON** to activate Exhaust Brake system. This symbol is also used for an engine brake. Vehicles equipped with an exhaust brake will not also have an engine brake. For more information on when and how to use the exhaust brake in your vehicle, see the exhaust brake owner's manual for additional exhaust brake information.

10.26 Exhaust, Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) Regeneration



Manually controls the diesel particulate filter (DPF) regeneration process. Refer to Engine Aftertreatment Controls Operator's Manual for additional information.

10.27 Fifth Wheel Slide



Turn switch on to unlock Fifth Wheel Slide mechanism. The switch is guarded to protect you from accidentally activating or releasing the lock.

WARNING

DO NOT move the fifth wheel while the tractor-trailer is in motion. Your load could shift suddenly, causing you to lose control of the vehicle. Never operate the vehicle with the switch in the **UNLOCK** position. Always inspect the

fifth wheel after you lock the switch to be sure the fifth wheel slide lock is engaged. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

NOTE

Vehicles having an air slide fifth wheel have a fifth wheel slider lock controlled by a switch on the instrument panel. By placing the switch in the unlock position you can slide the fifth wheel to various positions to adjust weight distribution.

10.28 Fuel Heater



Turn switch on to activate Fuel Heater.

10.29 Generic Air, Accessory



Provides accessory air at the frame mounted solenoid bank. Air hose plumbing will need to be added to the solenoid bank to connect to the accessory that is intended to control with air accessory switch.

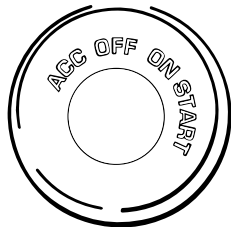
10.30 Generic, Spare SPARE

SPARE

Turn switch on to power customer installed accessory.

10.31 Start Key Switch

The start key switch located to the right of the steering column has four positions: ACC (Accessories), OFF, ON, and START.



OFF: In this position all accessories are OFF (except those listed below) and you can remove the key.

The following lights and accessories have power when the key is in the OFF position:

- Brake Lights
- Emergency Hazard Flasher
- Dome and Courtesy Lamps (on doors)
- City Horn
- Cigarette Lighter
- Tail Lights
- Marker Lamps
- Headlights
- Radio Station Memory
- Instrument Lights
- Auxiliary Power
- Instrument Panel Memory Settings

ACC (Accessory): With the key in this position you can play the radio, defrost mirrors (if equipped with mirror heat) or use other accessories.

ON: In the ON position all circuits are energized. Panel warning lights will light and the buzzer will sound until (1) the engine is started, (2) normal oil operating pressure is reached, and (3) air brake system pressure is above 65 psi (4.48 bar/448 kPa). In this position, the start key cannot be removed.

START: Turn the key to this position to start your engine. Release the key after the engine has started.

10.32 Kingpin Release



Push and hold switch to unlock the fifth wheel, releasing the kingpin. The switch is guarded to protect you from accidentally releasing the lock. See Releasing the Kingpin Remotely (option) on page 172.

10.33 Lights, Beacon



Turn switch on for Beacon Light(s). In Medium Duty two types of switches are optioned: a traditional rocker switch and a push button over on the left panel.

10.34 Lights, Cab and Panel Dimmer Switch



This switch alters the brightness of the instrument panel lights and ambient lighting. It also controls the cab overhead.

i NOTE

The Headlight Switch is an ON or OFF switch. The panel lights are on full intensity during the day and dim when headlights are on.

10.35 Lights, Daytime Running (Override)



This switch overrides the normal operation of the Daytime Running Light (DRL) system. During normal operation, the DRL turns on lights when the headlights are turned off, engine is on, and the park brakes are disengaged. The override switch turns the DRL off in these instances. The DRL is also turned off when the headlights are turned ON.

! WARNING

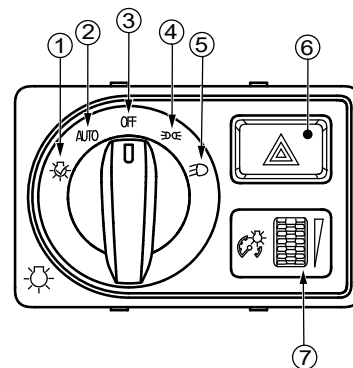
DO NOT use daytime running lights (DRL) during periods of darkness or

reduced visibility. DO NOT use DRL as a substitute for headlights or other lights during operations that require lighting of your vehicle. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

If the headlight switch is turned OFF, the DRL system engages automatically after the engine starts and you release the parking brake. If the headlight switch is ON, the DRL system is overridden, and headlights operate normally. Also, the DRL is temporarily turned off during engine cranking.

10.36 Lights, Exterior Lights Switch (ELS)

LIGHTS, EXTERIOR LIGHTS SWITCH (ELS)



1. ELST
2. AUTO
3. OFF
4. AUX
5. Headlights
6. Hazard Lights
7. Cab and Panel Dimmer Switch

ELST

Starts an Exterior Lights Self Test (ELST). See Exterior Lighting Self-Test (ELST) [on page 97](#).

AUTO (Automatic Headlights)

Automatic Headlights turns on the vehicle exterior lights when a low-light condition is detected and turns off those lights when lighting conditions brighten.

When enabled, Automatic Headlights turns on the following lights during a low-light condition:

- Low beam headlights
- Parking
- Clearance and Identification (tractor and trailer)
- Marker lights (tractor and trailer)
- Tail (tractor and trailer)
- License plate (tractor and trailer)

OFF

Turns off all exterior lights. DRL may still be active (see [Lights, Daytime Running \(Override\) on page 95](#)).

AUX (Auxiliary Lights)

Turns on marker lights or parking and marker lights based on parking brake position. Marker lights consist of side markers, clearance, ID roof markers, and mud flap (optional) lights.

- Parking brake set - parking, marker, tail, and license lights.
- Parking brake released - marker, tail, and license lights.

Headlights

Turns on low beam headlights, tail, license, and marker lights. Marker lights consist of side markers, clearance, ID roof markers, and mud flap (optional) lights. High beam headlights are activated using the turn signal lever (see [High Beam Operation on page 107](#)).

 NOTE

The high beams and flash-to-warn activation methods use the same action. To activate the high beams, turn the low beams ON. To activate flash-to-warn, turn the low beams OFF.

 WARNING

If the vehicle's low beam wiring circuit does not function correctly, pull completely off the road and call the nearest dealer for assistance. DO NOT drive the vehicle using the high beams, as high beam glare can blind other drivers and increase the risk of an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Hazard Lights

This button operates the hazard lights. When pressed, all four turn signals (front and rear) will continuously flash. Press the button again to turn off the hazard lights. Hazard lights work independent of the start key switch position. Always use the emergency hazard lights if the vehicle is disabled or parked under emergency conditions.

 WARNING

Be aware of all governing Hazard Warning Light laws and keep all necessary emergency signals in the vehicle per FMCSR 392.22. During unusual or emergency situations, use all relevant

lights and signals since hard-to-see vehicles can increase the risk of accidents. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Cab and Panel Dimmer Switch

This switch is used to alter the brightness of the instrument panel lights, ambient lights, and cab overhead lights.

i NOTE

The Headlight Switch is an ON or OFF switch. The panel lights are on full intensity during the day and dim when headlights are on.

EXTERIOR LIGHTING SELF-TEST (ELST)



The Exterior Lighting Self-Test (ELST) allows the operator to examine all exterior lights as part of a pre-trip inspection. An ELST can be activated via the dash switch or the key fob. A full ELST can only be acti-

vated with the start key switch in the ON position; otherwise, a limited ELST is performed.

The ELST will run for fifteen minutes. You can confirm exterior light functionality by reading the instrument cluster for displayed faults and by watching the lights from outside the vehicle. Turning the vehicle off or activating the switch a second time while the test is running interrupts the test. The ELST will also start the system check ().

Full ELST

When a full ELST is activated, it will alternately turn on and then off the following lights:

- Park lights
- License plate lights
- Hazard/turn signals
- Low beam headlights
- High beam headlights
- First set of fog/driving lights
- Tail lights
- Stop lights
- Reverse lights
- Fog lights (option)
- Driving lights (option)
- Daytime Running Lights (option)

The following lights stay on during the duration of a full test:

- Clearance lights

- Identification lights
- Side Marker lights
- Beacon/Strobe (option)
- Work/Load lights (option)
- Sign light (option)

Limited ELST

A limited ELST will alternately turn on and then off the following lights:

- Hazard/turn signals
- Low beam headlights
- High beam headlights
- Park lights
- Daytime running lights (option)
- License plate lights
- Tail lights
- Stop lights

The following lights will stay on during the duration of a limited test:

- Clearance lights
- Identification lights
- Side marker lights

TEST THE EXTERIOR LIGHTS

For a full ELST, the parking brake must be set and the start switch must be in the ON position. For a limited ELST, the start switch must be in the ACC or OFF position.

A full ELST tests all exterior lights (also checking the mirror and headlight heaters if

the engine is on). A limited ELST tests only the legal driving lights.

1. Turn the **Exterior Lighting Switch (ELS)** to the momentary ELST position and release the switch, or



The ELST icon will illuminate.

2. Press the **ELST button** on the key fob.

A full ELST will continue until the parking brake is released or the start switch is turned to OFF. Both the full and limited ELST will stop if either the dash or key fob ELST buttons are pressed, or the fifteen minute test duration has elapsed.

10.37 Lights, Work



Turn switch on for cab mounted Flood Lights. Switches 1 and 2 are push buttons, but 3 is a rocker switch.

10.38 Lights, Flood ISO 3732 Spare



Turn switch on for trailer mounted Flood Lights.

10.39 Lights, Fog



Turn switch on for Fog Lights.

NOTE

Fog lights should be used in the presence of fog, rain, dust, snow, or smoke. **DO NOT** use during general operation because this is illegal in some locations.

NOTE

Across the U.S.A. and Canada, State/ Provincial requirements vary as to when high beams and fog lights can and cannot be used together. Some states allow only four lights to be used together,

while some allow more. How your lights are arranged will affect whether you can operate headlights and fog lights concurrently always comply with the state or provincial requirements where you are driving.

10.40 Lights, Footwell (option)



Two position switch that illuminates both the driver and passenger side foot space.

10.41 Lights, Hazard

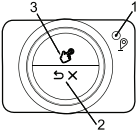


This button operates the hazard lights. When pressed, all four turn signals (front and rear) will continuously flash. Press the button again to turn off the hazard lights. Hazard lights work independent of the ignition switch position. You should always use

the emergency hazard lights if the vehicle is disabled or parked under emergency conditions.

⚠ WARNING

Be aware of all governing Hazard Warning Light laws and keep all necessary emergency signals in the vehicle per FMCSR 392.22. During unusual or emergency situations, use all relevant lights and signals since hard-to-see vehicles can increase the risk of accidents. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



1. **Waypoint Marker** – Tracks time of trip. A long press will clear all trip data.
2. **Back/Cancel** – Withdraws from changing a setting, returns to the previous menu, or suppresses a warning.
3. **Select** – Chooses menu selections, acknowledges warnings (called suppressing), and activates some drive views.

The display indicates when **Select** may be used with this icon:

10.42 Lights, Spot



Turn switch on for Spot Light.

10.43 Menu Control Switch

The Menu Control Switch (MCS) is a dial with buttons.



10.44 Pintle Hook



Turn switch on to remove the slack from the hook.

10.45 Power Take-off (PTO)



This vehicle may be equipped with a dash-mounted switch that controls PTO engagement/disengagement. When the operator activates the switch for the PTO, the status indicator light (located on the switch) will immediately illuminate even though PTO engagement may not have occurred. If the PTO is engaged and the operator turns the switch **OFF**, the PTO status indicator light (located on the switch) will turn off immediately even though PTO disengagement may not have occurred.

⚠ CAUTION

Increasing RPM before the PTO is engaged can prevent the PTO from engaging. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

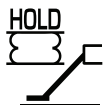
i NOTE

The PTO cannot engage instantly. There is a slight delay.

i NOTE

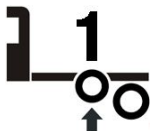
Actual PTO status may be indicated on dash display depending on vehicle configuration.

10.46 Suspension, Air Retention



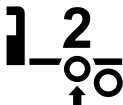
The Air Retention Switch keeps the air suspension bags from losing air pressure when used with vehicle outriggers. Depress the Air Retention Switch prior to deploying the outriggers. While outriggers are deployed, axle stability is maintained.

10.47 Suspension, Axle, Pusher



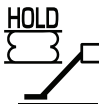
Turn switch on to lower Single or Forward Pusher Axle.

10.48 Suspension, Axle, Tag



Turn switch on to lower Tag Axle.

10.49 Suspension, Lift



Turn switch on to over-inflate suspension air bags. Turn switch off for normal suspension height.

⚠ CAUTION

Operating a vehicle with air suspension bags either overinflated or underinflated may cause damage to driveline components. If a vehicle must be operated under such conditions, DO NOT exceed 5 mph (8 km/h). Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

10.50 Suspension, Third Axle Lift



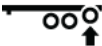
Turn switch on to raise Third Axle.

10.51 Trailer Air Supply



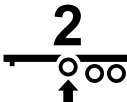
The red octagonal knob controls the air supply to the trailer.

10.52 Trailer, Axle (3rd Axle) Lift



Turn switch ON to lift 3rd Trailer Axle.

10.53 Trailer, Axle Lift Forward



Turn switch on to lift Forward Trailer Axle.

10.54 Trailer, Axle Lift Rear



Turn switch on to lift Rear Trailer Axle.

10.55 Trailer, Belly Dump



Turn switch on to open Trailer Belly Dump.

10.56 Trailer, Dump Gate



Turn switch on to open Trailer Dump Gate.

10.57 Trailer, Belly Dump Gate Center



Turn switch on to open Trailer Center Belly Dump Gate.

10.58 Trailer, Front Dump Gate



Turn switch on to open Trailer Front Belly Dump Gate.

10.59 Trailer, Belly Dump Gate Rear



Turn switch on to open Trailer Rear Belly Dump Gate.

10.60 Trailer, Hotline



Turn switch on to supply electrical power to trailer accessories.

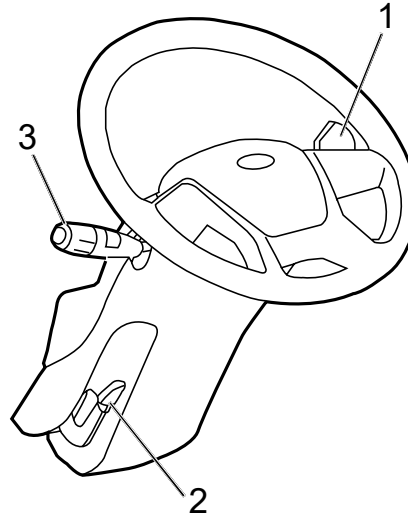
10.61 Trailer, Suspension Air Dump



Turn switch on to deflate trailer air suspension.

11 STEERING COLUMN CONTROLS

11.1 Steering Column Controls



1. Column Shifter (option)
2. Tilt/telescope lever
3. Turn signal/wiper/lights

The turn signal lever is mounted on the left side of the steering column. The lever controls several functions: turn signal, high beam, and windshield wiper control. The turn signals will only operate when the start key switch is in the ACC or ON position.

Tilt/Telescoping Steering Wheel

The vehicle is equipped with a steering column that allows adjustment in the angle, height, and distance of the steering wheel away from the driver. A release handle is present on the left side of the steering column.

⚠ WARNING

Only adjust the tilt/telescoping steering wheel while the vehicle is stopped. Adjusting it while driving can cause a loss of vehicle control. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

11.2 Column Shifter

COLUMN SHIFTER (OPTION)

This vehicle may be equipped with a column shifter located on the right-hand side of the steering column. The column shifter can perform the following transmission functions:

- Transmission Mode selection (**D - N - R** or **D - N - R - P**)
- Manual and Automatic Mode selection
- Upshifting and Downshifting (includes **Low** Mode)
- Engine Brake Level configuration (the level of engine braking when active is controlled by the engine brake controller (right-hand stalk shifter))

NOTE

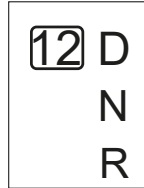
On vehicles equipped with Allison transmission, the stalk shifter is located on the dashboard.

PACCAR TX-8/TX-12 Transmission Gear Indicators

The transmission gear indicator area helps the operator to know the current gear and mode in which the transmission is working. The gear indicator area is shown in the

digital display (DD) when the key is **ON** or **ACC**, and include the following configurations:

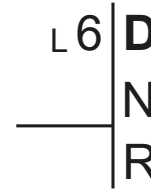
- Gear Number (DNR): Indicates the current transmission gear.



- Manual mode indicator (DNR): Indicates when the transmission is placed into Manual Mode with manual transmission control switch.



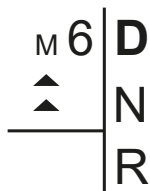
- Low gear mode indicator: Indicates when the transmission control is in a Low Gear configuration.



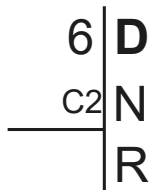
- Upshift one indicator: This configuration applies when the transmission is in Manual Mode and the Driver Shift Aid function (DSA) is active. DSA sends a request to upshift one gear to reduce the engine consumption.



- Upshift two indicator: This configuration applies when the transmission is in Manual Mode and the Driver Shift Aid function (DSA) is active. DSA sends a request to upshift two gears to reduce the engine consumption.



- Configuration 2 (C2) indicator: This applies to PACCAR TX-8 and TX-12 transmissions which have a configuration of two modes (also known as C2) and is selectable by the operator.



- Auto Neutral indicator (AN): Indicates a configuration that perform an automated protection state the transmission can enter. When the Auto Neutral signal is sent to the digital display (DD) indicates the transmission is in Neutral even if the Stalk Shifter position is Drive (D) or Reverse (R).



- Neutral coast indicator: Indicates a configuration that allows the transmission to shift into Neutral and allow the engine to operate at a reduced engine speed while the vehicle is propelled under its own momentum. This configuration allows the operator to reduce fuel consumption.



SECONDARY TRANSMISSION SHIFT FEATURES

The PACCAR TX-8/TX-12 transmissions have been implemented with secondary shift aid features. They help the transmission to reduce the damage of its components through several features available, which work in the gear selection.

NOTE

PACCAR TX-8 transmissions are not offered in vehicles equipped with MX-10 engines.

NOTE

PACCAR TX-12 transmissions are not offered in vehicles equipped with L7 engines.

The following features are secondary shift schedules for PACCAR TX-8 transmissions.

- Auto-neutral
- Adaptive Driving Mode
- Adaptive Starting Gear
- Auto-park (optional)
- Engine overspeed and Underspeed Protection
- Low Mode
- Neutral Idle Control Plus (NIC+)
- Parking Pawl (optional)
- Parking Pawl Manual Release (optional)

Auto-neutral

The Auto-neutral feature will automatically shift the transmission into Neutral if it is left in a forward or reverse mode (such as **Low Mode**, Drive (**D**), or Reverse (**R**)) and the parking brake is set.

Adaptive Driving Mode

Adaptive Driving will adjust the transmission shift schedule based on driving conditions. This mode incorporates feedback such as road slope, vehicle weight, and speed to determine when to smoothly and efficiently shift between gears. The feedback used to determine an ideal shift schedule also helps protect the transmission from shift selections falling outside the acceptable range for the intended gear.

Adaptive Starting Gear

The Adaptive Starting Gear feature automatically selects a start gear based on vehicle weight and road grade. This gear can be changed using the upshift/downshift request procedure and allows the vehicle to launch without causing damage to the transmission.

Auto-park (optional)

This feature prevents unintentional rolling should the operator forget to place the vehicle in Park. Auto-park will automatically

place the transmission in Park (**P**) if the operator moves the ignition switch to **OFF** while the vehicle is stationary.

Engine Overspeed and Underspeed Protection

The transmission system will upshift, if necessary, to prevent damage during an engine overspeed condition and will also downshift to prevent engine lag (driving in a high gear at low rpm) and a potential stall during an engine underspeed condition. Engine Overspeed Protection is active in Drive (**D**), **Manual**, and **Low Modes**; however, Engine Underspeed Protection is only active when in Drive (**D**) mode or **Manual** mode.

Low Mode

Low mode should be used any time you want to limit upshifting, hold lower gears, or improve engine breaking through lower gear selection. For example, when driving down long grades or when coming to a stop.

- Select the lowest available gear for start gear. The starting gear cannot be changed in **Low Mode**.
- If **Low Mode** is selected while moving, the transmission will not upshift (except in conditions requiring overspeed protection). See [Driving Tips and Techniques on page 129](#).

Neutral Idle Control Plus (NIC+)

With this feature, the transmission will shift into neutral when the vehicle is stationary, and the service or parking brake is applied. NIC+ frees the engine from providing power to the drivetrain when the vehicle has stopped, saving fuel and reducing the braking effort required by the operator to keep the vehicle stationary. When the parking or service brake is released, the transmission gradually and automatically shifts back into gear, allowing the vehicle to creep forward normally.

Parking Pawl

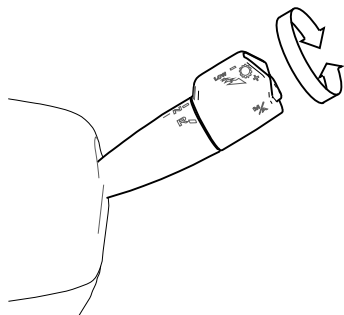
This transmission may be equipped with a park setting that prevents the vehicle from rolling. The parking pawl is activated using the gear shift lever and can also be engaged (by spring force) when the vehicle is at a standstill and the ignition switch is turned to **OFF**. The parking pawl uses the pawl to lock the transmission output that engages in the meshing of the output shaft. This locks the rear wheels by means of the driveshaft.

Parking Pawl Manual Release (Option)

Transmissions with a Park Mode are also equipped with a way to disengage the parking pawl directly at the transmission. Using the manual release places the transmission in neutral and is useful when the transmis-

sion does not respond to gearing requests (for example, when the engine will not start) and the vehicle must be rolled.

TRANSMISSION MODE



The transmission mode is selected by rotating the lever outer knob. There is a position for Drive (**D**), Neutral (**N**), and Reverse (**R**) and for some vehicles Park (**P**).

Rotating the knob to the Park (**P**) or Reverse (**R**) position while the vehicle is moving forward, or to the Park (**P**) or Drive (**D**) position while the vehicle is moving backward, will not change the transmission mode to those selections or will drop

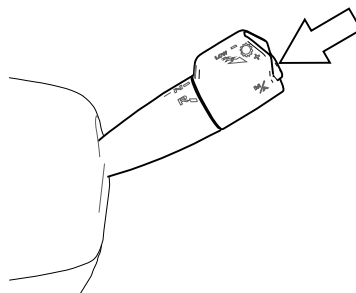
the transmission to Neutral (**N**) if vehicle speed is not slow enough to execute the requested change depending on transmission configuration.

The Digital Display will indicate the corresponding mode.

i NOTE

Vehicles without a Park (**P**) mode must be in Neutral (**N**) to start the truck.

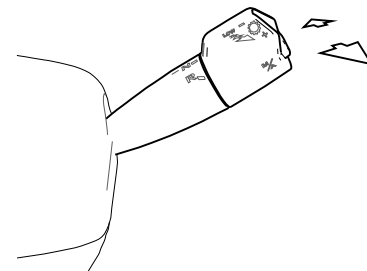
MANUAL AND AUTOMATIC MODE



This button will put the transmission into manual mode. Manual mode will allow the operator to select the gear (See Upshifting and Downshifting).

To activate, put the gear selector in the **D** (drive) mode and then depress the **M/A** button. When Manual Mode is selected, a **M** is shown in the Transmission Gear Display (Transmission Gear Display on page 147).

UPSHIFTING AND DOWNSHIFTING



Manually upshifting and downshifting selects the transmission gear in order to accommodate the driving needs of the

operator. The Transmission Mode must be in Drive (D) for the transmission to acknowledge an upshift or downshifting request from the column shifter. When in Manual mode, the transmission gears can be manually selected by pushing or pulling on the column shifter. Pulling the column shifter towards the driver will upshift the transmission (+). Pushing the column shifter forward will downshift (-). Pushing and holding the column shifter forward for 0.8 seconds will engage the LOW gear range. When in Automatic mode, pushing or pulling the column shifter will briefly upshift or downshift the transmission gear respectively; after which, the transmission will return to the ideal gearing for the current vehicle speed and engine use. The selected gear will appear beside the transmission mode on Transmission Gear Display (Transmission Gear Display on [page 147](#)).

11.3 Turn Signal Lever

STOP/TURN SIGNAL LAMP OPERATION

Your vehicle uses combined stop/turn signal lamps at the rear of the vehicle, using the same lamp to perform both functions.

This means a single lamp is used for the brake lamp as well as the turn signal lamp. This lamp will burn steadily with the brakes applied. The same lamp will flash with the turn signal activated, even with the brakes applied.

HOW TO USE THE TURN SIGNAL

The lever-action turn signal/high beam switch is located on the left side of the steering column. The start key switch must be turned to ON for the signal/switch to operate.

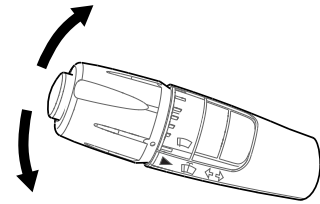


WARNING

If the turn signal lamps or turn signal indicators begin flashing at an accelerated rate (115 cycles per minute) there might be a problem with the turn signal stalk or module, and not the bulb. Please contact your nearest authorized EV service certified dealership to have the problem corrected as soon as possible. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

1. Push the **Signal stalk** lever up to engage the RIGHT turn signal and down to engage the LEFT turn

signal.



2. Release the signal stalk.
3. To cancel the turn signal, move the lever back to the middle position.

An audible beep is associated with each time a turn indicator is activated.



WARNING

After you complete a turn, shut the turn signal off by returning the lever to the "OFF" (center) position. Failure to shut off a turn signal could confuse other drivers and result in an accident. An indicator light in the instrument panel will flash until the turn signal is turned off. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

HIGH BEAM OPERATION

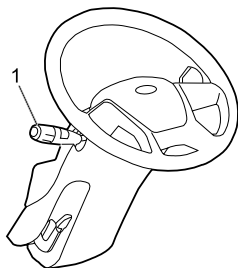
⚠ WARNING

DO NOT use high beams in the presence of oncoming traffic. High beam glare can blind other drivers which increases the risk of an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment, or property damage.

i NOTE

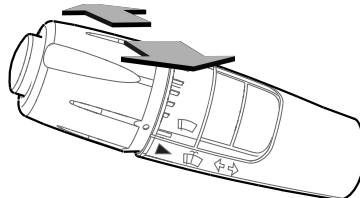
The high beams and flash-to-warn activation methods use the same action. To activate the high beams, turn the low beams ON. To activate flash-to-warn, turn the low beams OFF.

High beams are operated using the turn signal lever:



1. Turn signal lever

1. When the headlights are ON, pull the **Turn Signal** towards the operator until it clicks.



2. Release the **Turn Signal** lever to the original position. This will cycle the headlights between low and high beam.

The blue, high beams indicator light on the instrument panel will be lit when the high beams are active.

EXTERIOR LIGHTING FLASHES

This vehicle comes equipped with exterior lighting flashes used to signal other drivers on the road.

FLASH-TO-WARN

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT use high beams in the presence of oncoming traffic. High beam glare can blind other drivers which increases the risk of an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment, or property damage.

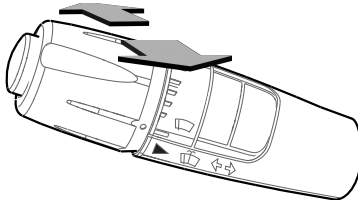
i NOTE

The high beams and flash-to-warn activation methods use the same action. To activate the high beams, turn the low beams ON. To activate flash-to-warn, turn the low beams OFF.

Flash-to-warn, or “high beams flash”, allows the operator to warn other drivers by briefly flashing the high beam headlights when the headlights are turned OFF. To activate flash-to-warn:

1. When the headlights are OFF, pull

the turn signal lever towards the operator to flash the headlights.



2.



WARNING

DO NOT hold the turn signal lever longer than necessary when activating flash-to-warn. The high beams could blind other drivers and increase the risk of an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment, or property damage.

Release the turn signal lever to the original position to end the flash-to-warn function.

The blue high beams indicator light on the instrument panel will momentarily turn on while the high beams are active.

FLASH-TO-PASS

Flash-to-pass, sometimes called “low beams flash”, allows the operator to sig-

nal other drivers. The flash looks different depending on the vehicle’s headlight type.

Halogen headlamps act one of three ways based on the headlight’s initial state:

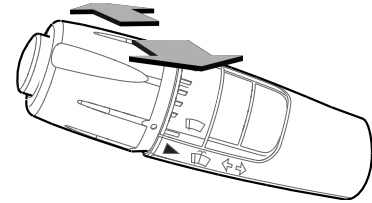
- If the low beam headlights are ON, the flash-to-pass operation will momentarily dim the headlights.
- If the low beam headlights are OFF, the flash-to-pass will turn ON and then flash the low beam headlights.
- If the high beam headlights are ON, the flash-to-pass will turn OFF the high beams and flash the low beams.

For LED (option) and HID headlamps, the flash-to-pass operation will flash the high beams. The high beams will turn off immediately after the operation is complete. Flash-to-pass does not affect the state of HID and LED low beams.

Regardless of the headlamp type, if the vehicle is using high beams, flash-to-pass will immediately deactivate the high beams. The high beams must be reactivated again after flash-to-pass is complete.

To activate flash-to-pass:

1. Push the turn signal lever away from the steering wheel.



2. Release the turn signal lever to the original position.

OPERATE THE WINDSHIELD WIPERS



WARNING

Clean blades regularly with a damp cloth to remove road film and wax buildup. DO NOT drive with worn or dirty wiper blades. They can reduce visibility, making driving hazardous which may lead to an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

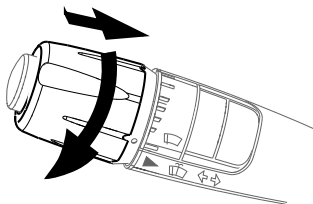
This vehicle is equipped with a two speed, intermittent windshield wiper system. The windshield wiper system is integrated with the exterior lights so that the low beam headlights will turn on when the windshield wipers turn on.

To override this function once, turn the headlights on and then off again. To permanently override this function, open the settings menu, select **Settings > Wiper Interlock** in the instrument cluster display, and select OFF.

Use washer fluid when running the wiper blades over a dry windshield to reduce the chance that the blades may scratch the glass. Scratched windshields reduce visibility.

A seven-position rotary wiper switch (located on the turn signal lever) operates the windshield wipers and washer. If you need to use the windshield wipers:

1. Rotate the end of the turn signal lever to change the wiper mode from off to on.
2. Rotate the outer knob of the turn stalk lever to adjust the wiper speed.



- Four levels of intermittent speeds
- Low wiper speed

- High wiper speed

HOW TO SPRAY WINDSHIELD WASHER FLUID

This vehicle is equipped with a function to wash the windshield and simultaneously engage the wipers.

CAUTION

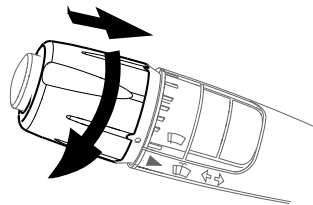
DO NOT use antifreeze or coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. These are harmful fluids to the seals and other components. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

CAUTION

DO NOT operate the electric pump for a long period (more than 15 seconds) with a dry reservoir, or the pump motor may be damaged. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

If you need to use the windshield washer:

1. Push the **Turn Signal Lever Outer Knob** in.

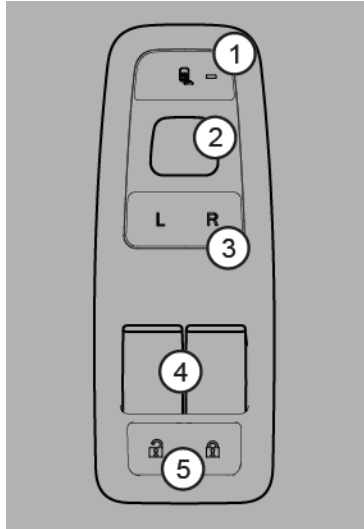


- Press and hold will activate the washer fluid and wipers.
- Instant press and release will activate the washer fluid only.

12 DOOR MOUNTED MIRROR CONTROLS

12.1 Door Mounted Mirror Controls

The vehicle can have power mirrors. If so, the mirror controls are on the driver-side door pad. You can adjust mirrors in four directions. To provide good visibility, adjust the mirror so the side of the vehicle appears in the inboard part of the mirror.



1. Mirror heat
2. Mirrors adjust
3. Left or right mirror adjustment selector
4. Window controls
5. Door lock control

Mirror Heat Switch

The vehicle can come with optional heated mirrors. You can control mirror heat with the mirror heat button. If the vehicle has optional hood-mounted heated mirrors, this switch also activates heat to those mirrors.

NOTE

If the vehicle has optional LED headlights, this switch also activates heat to those headlights.

Power Mirror Switch

If the vehicle comes with power mirrors, the directional controls for both mirrors are on the top of the driver-side door.

Power Door Lock Switch

Power door lock rocker switches are on the door pads. To toggle all door locks simultaneously, press any door lock switch marked with a padlock symbol.

Power Window Switch

Power window rocker switches are on the door pads. Depress the switch to open the window. Pull up on the switch to close the window. Release the switch to stop window movement. The driver-side window has an express down feature. Holding the switch down activates the express down feature. Release the button and the window descends until it is fully open.

12.2 Introduction

Your vehicle comes equipped with two outside rear view mirrors that enable you to see to the sides and behind your vehicle. Be sure both mirrors are adjusted properly before you begin driving.

WARNING

Only adjust mirrors and cameras before driving the vehicle. Adjusting a mirror or camera while driving can cause you to take your eyes off the road, which could result in an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

To provide good visibility, adjust the mirror so the side of your vehicle appears in the inboard part of the mirror.

WARNING

When using convex mirrors, keep plenty of space between your vehicle and others. This space is particularly important when you are turning or changing lanes. Convex mirrors can distort images, making objects that are close to you seem far away. Be aware of this

possible distortion to avoid a collision when you are turning or changing lanes. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

12.3 How To Use Power Mirror Adjustment Switches

WARNING

Only adjust mirrors and cameras before driving the vehicle. Adjusting a mirror or cameras while driving can cause you to take your eyes off the road, which could result in an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

When using convex mirrors, keep plenty of space between your vehicle and others. This space is particularly important when you are turning or changing lanes. Convex mirrors can distort images, making objects that are close

to you seem far away. Be aware of this possible distortion to avoid a collision when you are turning or changing lanes. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

1. Move the **Mirror Selector** switch (3) to the right or left to select the desired mirror for adjustment.
2. Depress the **Mirror Directional Control** pad (2) in one of its four arrow directions. The mirror moves in that direction.
3. Adjust the mirror so the side of the vehicle appears in the inboard part of the mirror.
4. When you are finished with adjustments, return the **Mirror Selector** switch back (3) to the center (neutral) position. This step prevents unintentional adjustments to the mirrors.

13 HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING (AC)

13.1 Heating and Air Conditioning (AC)

This vehicle's heating and air conditioning (AC) system operates in four distinct modes: manual, automatic, semi-automatic and, maximum defrost. Each mode provides the driver with the greatest level of comfort and convenience.

The recommended mode for all conditions that do not require windshield defrosting is the automatic mode. Automatic mode maintains cab comfort under various driving conditions without driver interaction. The cab heater and air conditioner controls sit together in the center of the dash. They sit to the right of the steering column. The bunk heater and air conditioning (AC) controls are in the sleeper control panel.

WARNING

DO NOT drive with visibility reduced or obscured by fog, condensation, or frost on the windshield. Follow the instructions of the ventilation/heating and defogging/defrosting system. Maximum heating output and fast defrost-

ing can be obtained only after reaching the vehicle's operating temperature. If in doubt, consult your dealer. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

DO NOT breathe engine exhaust. Engine exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless, odorless gas. Exhaust fumes can enter the cab from a poorly maintained exhaust system or from nearby vehicles. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**


Routinely inspect and maintain your vehicle exhaust system. A poorly maintained, damaged, or corroded exhaust system can allow exhaust fumes to enter the cab. Engine exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless, odorless gas. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

Never idle your vehicle for prolonged periods of time if you sense that exhaust fumes are entering the cabin. Investigate the cause of the fumes and correct it as soon as possible. If the vehicle must be driven under these conditions, drive only with the windows open. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **NOTE**

DO NOT stay in the vehicle with the engine running or idling for more than 10 minutes with the vehicle's Heater and A/C ventilation system in RECIRC or at LOW FAN SPEED. Even with the ventilation system on, running the engine while parked or stopped for prolonged periods of time is not recommended.

 **NOTE**

Keep the engine exhaust system and the vehicle's cab ventilation system properly maintained. It is recommended that the vehicle's exhaust system and

cab be inspected (1) By a competent technician every 15,000 miles (24,140 km); (2) Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system; or (3) Whenever the exhaust system, underbody, or cab is damaged.

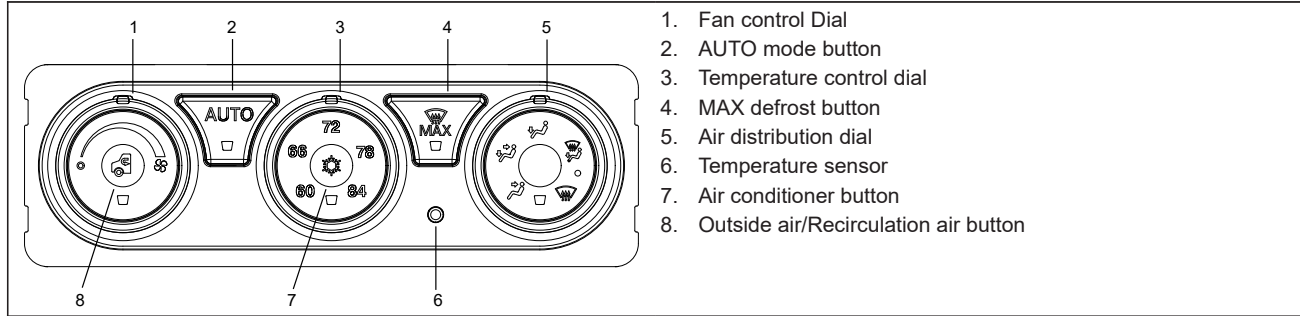
 **NOTE**

If you are required to idle your vehicle for long periods of time, install an auxiliary heater or automatic idle control. These auxiliary devices can reduce fuel consumption and save you money.

 **WARNING**

If you are parked next to idling vehicles, move your vehicle or minimize your time in the cab or sleeper. Engine exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless, odorless gas which can enter the cab from nearby exhaust systems. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

13.2 Air Conditioner Controls



13.3 Air Conditioning Functions

Table 4: Symbols for the air conditioning control panel



Image	Function
	The source of air entering the cab can be set to either outside air or recirculation air using the button inside the fan speed control dial. Recirculated air is automatically selected in defrost modes.
	The fan speed is adjusted by rotating the dial clockwise to increase speed or counterclockwise to decrease speed.
AUTO	Automatic air conditioner function

Table 4: Symbols for the air conditioning control panel








Image	Function
	The button inside the temperature control dial engages the A/C compressor. When activated the indicator on the button will illuminate. During AUTO mode, the A/C button indicator will remain illuminated at all times even though the compressor may be cycling.
MAX 	Max defrost function
	Floor Vents
	Defrost Vents (and Fresh air intake)
	Panel and Floor Vents

Table 4: Symbols for the air conditioning control panel

Image	Function
	Panel Vents
	Floor and Defrost Vents (and Fresh air intake)

13.4 How to Manually Control the Cab Air Conditioner

Temperature Control Set Point Set the cab temperature using the temperature control dial. The operating range is 60°F (16°C) and 84°F (28°C). Adjustments are made in two degree Fahrenheit increments.

Air Conditioner The button inside the temperature control dial engages the AC compressor. When activated the indicator on the button illuminates. During AUTO mode, the AC button indicator remains illuminated constantly, even while the compressor cycles.

NOTE

Fan Control Dial must also be in the ON position for A/C to be on. A/C engages

automatically in AUTO, defrost, and floor/defrost.



The air conditioner defaults to manual mode when switched on. Select the fan speed, air temperature, and air outlets using the dials on the controller.

1. To adjust the fan speed, turn the **Fan control** dial clockwise to increase speed or counterclockwise to decrease speed.
2. To adjust the temperature setting, turn the **Temperature control** dial to the desired temperature. The system automatically adjusts the outlet air temperature to achieve the desired cab temperature.
3. Push the **Air Conditioner** button if the air temperature must be colder, this button switches on the compressor.



4. To adjust the air distribution, turn the **Air Distribution** dial to distribute cab air as indicated by the dial graphics.
5. Press the **Recirculation** button to use cab air instead of outside air.

The temperature of the air from the vents fluctuates as the vehicle works to achieve the chosen cab temperature. When idling for short periods of time, switch the fan ON. Then turn OFF **recirculation**. For vehicles with a sleeper, use the cab control to activate or deactivate the sleeper HVAC. Use the button inside the mode dial.

13.5 Auto Mode for the Air Conditioner

The AUTO mode manipulates several variables. These include air distribution, air temperature, fan speed, AC compressor, and cab air recirculation. The Auto mode adjusts to achieve the comfort level selected on the temperature dial. Depending on the specific environmental conditions, the air temperature can be slightly higher or lower than the set point. This variation is a normal function of the AUTO mode and is not a malfunction. The button that enables automatic mode is labeled **AUTO**.

Adjust the temperature knob, and the system responds to obtain the selected comfort level as quickly as possible.



Set the cab temperature using the temperature control dial. The operating range is between 60°F (16°C) and 84°F (28°C). Adjustments are made in two-degree increments.

The AUTO function uses a sunlight sensor to measure the amount of sunlight entering the cab. You can find this sensor at the base of the windshield on the driver's side. Do not block this sensor.

The system remains in automatic mode until the driver adjusts both the fan speed and air distribution dials on the control.

Semi-Automatic Mode

During AUTO mode, the operator can override any settings and operate in a semi-automatic mode. You can override AUTO mode using the dials and/or buttons on the HVAC control. In semi-automatic mode, the AUTO button indicator extinguishes. Instead, the indicator of the adjusted setting illuminates. For example, if the driver adjusts the fan dial while in AUTO mode, the fan dial indicator illuminates. The fan

speed also adjusts to the setting of the dial. However, the temperature and air outlet settings continue to function automatically. Also, if the user adjusts the air distribution setting while in AUTO mode, the air distribution dial indicator illuminates. Then the distribution adjusts to the setting of the dial. The fan and temperature settings continue to function automatically.

Economy Function

An economy function is also available in semi-automatic mode. In this mode, the system operates in AUTO mode without the use of the AC compressor. The operator can select economy by initiating AUTO mode and then pressing the AC button to disengage the compressor. The indicators for AC compressor and AUTO mode do not illuminate while operating in economy mode.

13.6 How To Operate an Automatic Cab Air Conditioner

Follow these steps to activate the Auto Mode:

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Rotate the **Temperature Control** dial to the desired temperature.

The system achieves the comfort level associated with the temperature selected. Cab temperature can be slightly higher or lower than the selected temperature. This variation is normal when in **AUTO** mode. This fluctuation is not a system malfunction.

13.7 MAX Defrost Mode

The heating and air conditioning (AC) system provides for one-touch windshield defrosting. Certain driving conditions cause fog or ice to form on the windshield. By pressing the **MAX** defroster button, the system automatically adjusts certain settings to maximize clearing of the windshield. These settings include the blower speed, recirculation, air temperature, and air outlet distribution. The system remains in this mode until the driver presses the button again or adjusts the dials.



The air temperature in MAX defrosts mode adjusts to the warmest temperature setting. This setting helps to clear the windshield of ice and fog more quickly. Outside air mode and the air conditioner compressor are also active to maximize performance. The AC

compressor and recirculation switches do not function in MAX Defrost, and the lights on those switches blink when pressed.

13.8 Air Conditioner Operating Tips

CAUTION

During extreme cold weather, blowing hot defroster air onto a cold windshield can crack the glass. When the heater core is hot and the windshield is cold (such as idling the engine when the HVAC has been off), move the Temperature Control Dial to "COOL." Gradually increase the temperature as the windshield warms up. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

Defrosting and Defogging the Windshield

You can clear the cab windshield and side windows of ice and fog in two ways. The first is to use the **MAX** defrost mode. You can also manually adjust the air distribution dial to the defroster position. The manual defrost-defogging mode differs from the **MAX** defrost mode by allowing the driver to select an air temperature other than full heat. This mode allows the

driver to maintain a constant cab temperature while defrosting the windshield. However, reduced performance can follow.

- Adjust the fan speed too high by rotating the fan control dial clockwise.
- Set the air distribution dial to the defroster mode setting. This mode automatically engages the outside air and the air conditioner compressor.
- Adjust the temperature dial to add heat as needed.

For maximum performance, adjust the temperature to maximum heat by rotating the temperature dial clockwise. The driver can also use the Floor or defrost setting on the air control.

For Maximum Cooling

- Adjust the fan speed to its highest setting by rotating the fan control dial clockwise.
- Set the air distribution dial to the panel setting.
- Adjust the air temperature to maximum cooling by rotating the temperature dial counterclockwise.
- Engage the air conditioner compressor by pressing the air conditioner button.
- Set the air source to recirculation mode by pressing the outside air-recirculation air button. The button indicator light illuminates.

For Maximum Heating

- Adjust the fan speed to its highest setting by rotating the fan control dial clockwise.
- Set the air distribution dial to the Floor setting.
- Adjust the air temperature to maximum heat by rotating the temperature dial clockwise.

i NOTE

The engine must be at operating temperature for maximum heating. If operating in AUTO mode, heating airflow is not allowed until the engine warms sufficiently to provide required coolant temperatures.

Air Dehumidification

You can also use the air conditioner system to reduce the humidity level of the cab and clear fog from the windshield.

- Adjust the fan speed to the desired airflow setting.
- Engage the air conditioner compressor by pressing the air conditioner button.
- Set the air source to outside air mode by pressing the outside air and recirculation air button. The button indicator light must NOT be illuminated.

i NOTE

The A/C compressor may not engage when the outside temperature is below 34°F (1°C).

Cab Air Distribution

Equal distribution of air is important in maintaining a constant cab interior temperature. For best performance, all vents must remain open to allow AUTO mode to function properly. To maintain the selected cab temperature, AUTO mode can provide an air temperature from the vents that differs from the temperature set point. The driver can redirect the air instead of adjusting the temperature set point or closing the vent. The system can have difficulties in obtaining the desired cabin temperature when the temperature setting rapidly changes.

You set the mode of air distribution inside the cab using the air distribution dial. Five icons on the dial indicate the primary mode options. The driver can also select a secondary mode in between the primary modes indicated by points on the dial. The side windows receive airflow in all modes.

Outside Air or Recirculation Air

Selecting air recirculation mode completely isolates the cab interior from the outside air. This mode is helpful in preventing dust,

pollen, and odors from entering the cab. Additionally, recirculation mode can reduce the amount of time required to cool down the vehicle while in maximum cool down. This mode can increase fogging on the windshield. A coarse air filter provides for recirculation air. This filter is under the instrument panel. The outside air mode provides for 100% outside air into the cab. This mode is helpful with windshield defogging. A pleated air filter located under the hood provides filtration for dust, pollen, and debris. If equipped, the vehicle can also provide for ember filtration or fine particulate filtration.

14 CAB ACCESSORIES

14.1 Cab Accessories

NOTE

The 12V accessory power port will operate with the start switch in either the OFF, ACC (accessory), or ON position.

This vehicle comes standard with two cupholders and power ports located in the center of the dashboard. This vehicle may contain a variety of optional cab accessories. Electrically powered cab acces-

sories, such as the stereo system, can be used when the start key switch is in the ACC position and can be affected by the Low Voltage Disconnect (see Low Voltage Disconnect (LVD) (Option) [on page 235](#)).

14.2 Radio Stereo System (option)

Your vehicle has one of two stereo systems. An AM/FM Stereo Receiver is standard equipment and may have a combination of CD, Satellite Radio, USB media, or Bluetooth™. A stereo system integrated with GPS navigation and telematics is also available (option). For instructions on how to operate your particular radio, see the supplemental operating manual for those units.

Controls for the PACCAR display are located on the Right Switch Pod of the steering wheel.

14.3 Dual USB Charger

This vehicle comes standard with dual USB 5V charging ports. Both USB ports are 5V, USB-A type connections.

14.4 Cigarette Lighter and Ashtray (Option)

This vehicle may have the optional ashtray insert (for the cupholder) and the optional cigarette lighter instead of a power port. To operate, push in on the knob end of the lighter. After a few moments, the lighter will automatically pop out, glowing hot and ready to use. After use, insert the lighter back into the socket without pushing all the way in. The socket of the cigarette lighter may be used to operate 12V, 15 amp appliances, such as a hand spotlight or small vacuum cleaner.

WARNING

DO NOT attempt to operate a cigarette lighter using the 12V power port receptacle. A cigarette lighter inserted into the 12V power port will heat up and be expelled into the cab, potentially causing fire. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

DO NOT place paper or other combustible substances in an ashtray, it

could cause a fire. Keep all non-tobacco related substances out of the ashtray. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

DO NOT exceed the voltage/amperage capacity of the accessory power port. It could result in a fire. Follow all warnings and instructions in the operator's manual for the appliance you are using. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

14.5 Glove Box

A glove box is provided to store important documents, the vehicle literature set (including this Operator's Manual), and other related materials. You can choose from a variety of other interior storage options to store your personal supplies or small tools:

- Center console
- Map pocket on the door
- Overhead storage compartments

 **WARNING**

DO NOT drive with the glove box open. In an accident or sudden stop, you or a passenger could be thrown against the open cover and be injured. To reduce the risk of personal injury during an accident or sudden stop, keep the glove box closed when the vehicle is in motion. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

DO NOT carry loose objects in your cab. In a sudden stop, or even going over a bump in the road, they could fly through the air and strike you or a passenger. Secure all loose objects in the cab before moving the vehicle. Carry heavy objects such as luggage in the exterior storage compartment and close it securely. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

14.6 Appliances

If your vehicle is equipped with a television or other appliance, be sure they are compatible with your vehicle's electrical system. Secure them in the cab so they cannot come loose during a sudden stop.

 **WARNING**

Secure any appliance (such as a radio or TV) you add to your sleeper or cab. In a sudden stop or collision, these objects could strike you or a passenger. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

14.7 Vehicle Telematic System

VEHICLE TELEMATIC SYSTEM

Your vehicle may be equipped with an onboard telematics system. This system is a Global Positioning Satellite (GPS)-linked computer. It receives input from multiple sources to locate your vehicle. Read and understand the Supplemental Telematics

and Navigation System Owner's Manual and observe the Warnings, Cautions, and Notes that follow before using the system.

 **WARNING**

Verify legal weight and height restrictions for the route suggested by the telematic system. Not verifying height restrictions could lead to an impact. Not verifying weight restrictions could result in a traffic infraction. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

Only glance at the system monitor while driving. Prolonged periods of viewing while driving could result in an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

DO NOT program the telematic system while driving. Always stop the vehicle before changing settings to avoid potential accidents. Failure to comply may

result in death, personal injury, equipment, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

Regardless of the navigation system's directions, it is the operator's responsibility to operate the vehicle in a safe and legal manner. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

 **WARNING**

Ensure the volume level of all audio devices is set to a level that still allows you to hear outside traffic and emergency vehicles. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

 **NOTE**

DO NOT rely on the telematic system to route you to the closest emergency services. Not all emergency services are in the database.

 **NOTE**


The map database is the most current available at the time of production. The database is designed to provide you with route suggestions and does not take into account the relative safety of a suggested route or of factors that may affect the time required to reach your destination. See the Supplemental Navigation System Owner's Manual for more information.

USING THE TELEMATIC SYSTEM

Screen Display On/Off

1. Press and hold the **POWER/LIGHT** button for approximately 1 second.
2. After the display has been turned on, the following Warning/Informational screen will appear.

Table 5: Warning/Informational Screen

WARNING

DO NOT let this device distract you while driving. Always concentrate on your driving. Distractions could cause an accident resulting in injuries to you or others.
IMPORTANT
Disclaimer: Map data may be inaccurate and navigation routes may not be available for larger size vehicles. Regardless of how and where the navigation system directs you, it is your responsibility to operate the vehicle in a safe and legal manner. Note: Before using this system, read the Owner's Manual and learn how it operates. Some functions of this system will not operate when the truck is moving.

3. After reading the information, touch the **T** in the upper right corner of the screen with your finger indicating you

acknowledge and understand the information. The **MENU** screen will automatically appear next.

4. To turn the system off, press and hold the **POWER/LIGHT** button for 3 seconds.

Disclaimer: The vehicle manufacturer is not responsible for erroneous map data, misrouting or any downtime or other damages associated with or arising out of the use of the Navigation System.

CHAPTER 4: DRIVING

1	Starting and Operating.....	125
2	Lighting Controls.....	134
3	Engine Operations.....	136
4	Driver Assistance.....	141
5	Transmission.....	146
6	Brakes.....	153
7	Axle and Suspension.....	164
8	Trailer Operations.....	171

1 STARTING AND OPERATING

1.1 Starting and Operating

Since each vehicle is custom-equipped, all engine operation instructions in this manual are general. You will want to consult the manual for your engine to find out details about your specific engine's needs. You may need to use a slightly different procedure from the one outlined here.

1.2 Anti-theft

With Anti-theft active, you must enter the correct passcode to start the engine.

i NOTE

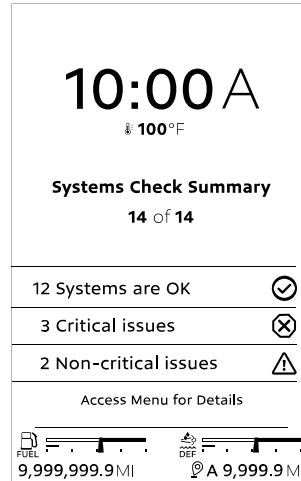
Enabling Anti-theft requires drivers that share this vehicle to enter a passcode before starting the engine. This action is done by entering the Settings sub-menu. It is also possible to disable Anti-theft or alter the Favorites View there.

After entering the passcode, you have five minutes to start the engine. After five minutes of engine off, you must re-enter the passcode. You can postpone this

safety measure in one minute intervals by using any steering wheel switch. Upon re-enabling the Anti-theft feature, the previous passcode is still the passcode. Anti-theft allows for only one passcode per vehicle.

1.3 Systems Check Summary

Figure 18: Systems Check



After completion of a system check, you can view the results in a summary. You can view a detailed explanation of this summary by accessing the Menu after the Systems Check.

1.4 How To Start Vehicle in Normal Weather

⚠ CAUTION

Never operate the starter motor with the engine running. The starter and flywheel gears could clash or jam, severely damaging them. Failure to comply may result in equipment damage or property damage.

i NOTE

Some starters are equipped with over-crank protection. Check the Engine Operation and Maintenance Manual for details.

When the outside temperature is above 50°F (10°C), use the following procedure: With anti-theft enabled, the first time you turn the start key switch to START, you must enter the passcode.

1. Set the parking brake.

2. Put the main transmission in neutral.
3. Disengage (depress) the clutch (with manual transmission).
4. Turn ON the engine to START.

i NOTE

With anti-theft enabled, you must enter the passcode to start the engine (see [Anti-theft on page 125](#)).

5. If the engine does not start within 30 seconds, release the start key switch. To avoid overtaxing the starter motor or the batteries, do not use the starter for more than 30 seconds. Let the starter motor cool and the batteries recover for two minutes before trying again. While waiting, check the fuel lines for possible fuel starvation or air leaks. Starting failure can mean that there is no fuel reaching the injectors.
6. When the engine starts, begin to watch the oil pressure gauge. Check the engine manufacturer's manual for the right pressure for the engine. If the oil pressure does not rise within a few seconds, stop the engine. Find out what is wrong before restarting the engine.

7. Slowly engage (release) the clutch after the engine starts.
8. Wait for the oil pressure to reach normal operating pressure before driving the vehicle. Also do not idle faster than 1,000 rpm.

1.5 Tips To Remember When Starting a Vehicle in Cold Weather

TIPS TO REMEMBER WHEN STARTING A VEHICLE IN COLD WEATHER

By following a few simple guidelines, you can extend the service life of the engine:

- Keep the electrical system in top condition.
- Use the best quality fuel of the recommended grade.
- Use the recommended engine lubricating oil.
- For manual transmissions and auxiliary (AUX) transmissions, leave the transmission in neutral. This action allows the transmission lubricating oil to warm up (approximately 3-5 min) before operating the vehicle.

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (OPTION)

To preheat the engine before starting, plug the optional engine block heater into a properly grounded AC electrical source. DO NOT start the engine with the heater plugged in.

⚠ WARNING

Regularly inspect, and properly maintain and operate, the engine block heater. DO NOT use the heater if there are frayed wires or connector damage. If not properly maintained and operated, engine block heaters can cause fires. Contact an authorized dealer or the heater manufacturer if information or repairs are needed. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

⚠ CAUTION

Always unplug the engine block heater before starting the engine. If the heater is not turned OFF (unplugged), the cooling system could be damaged. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

Depending on engine make, when the temperature falls below -10°F (-24°C), the block heater is required.

1.6 Engine Warm Up

Engine warm-up allows oil film to establish between pistons and liners, shafts, and bearings. It creates this film while the engine gradually reaches operating temperature.

1. After starting the engine, idle it at approximately 600 rpm while checking the following:
 - Oil pressure
 - Air pressure
 - Alternator output
2. After a few minutes of idling the engine, increase the idle speed to 900 rpm or 1,000 rpm. Continue the warm-up. This procedure allows the oil to warm and flow freely. This permits pistons, liners, shafts, and bearings to expand slowly and evenly. In cold temperatures, it could help to increase idle speed.

NOTE

In colder climates where the temperature is often below freezing,

the warm-up for turbocharged engines is especially important. Chilled external oil lines leading to the turbocharger will slow the oil flow until the oil warms, reducing oil available for the bearings. Watch the engine oil temperature or pressure gauge for a warming trend before increasing engine idle speed (rpm).

3.

WARNING

DO NOT leave the engine idling without an alert driver present. If the engine overheats, as indicated by the coolant temperature light, take immediate action. Continued unattended operation, even briefly, may cause serious engine damage or a fire. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

DO NOT breathe engine exhaust. Engine exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a poisonous,

colorless, odorless gas. Exhaust fumes can enter the cab from a poorly maintained exhaust system or from nearby vehicles. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

Never idle your vehicle for prolonged periods of time if you sense that exhaust fumes are entering the cabin. Investigate the cause of the fumes and correct it as soon as possible. If the vehicle must be driven under these conditions, drive only with the windows open. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.


WARNING

Routinely inspect and maintain your vehicle exhaust system. A poorly maintained, damaged, or corroded exhaust system can allow exhaust fumes to enter the cab. Engine exhaust fumes con-

tain carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless, odorless gas. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.


 **WARNING**

If you are parked next to idling vehicles, move your vehicle or minimize your time in the cab or sleeper. Engine exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless, odorless gas which can enter the cab from nearby exhaust systems. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **CAUTION**

A winterfront should only be used at temperatures below 40°F (4°C). Use of a winterfront above 40°F (4°C) can decrease the life of cooling module components and result in excessive coolant, engine oil, and intake air temperatures. This may lead to overheating, engine or coolant mod-

ule damage, and emissions non-compliance. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.


 **CAUTION**

DO NOT idle engine longer than five minutes at low rpm (400-600 rpm). DO NOT allow the engine to operate at idle for extended periods at temperatures at or below 160°F (71°C). Long idle periods after the engine has reached operating temperatures can result in gummed piston rings, clogged injectors, and break down engine lubrication resulting in engine damage. Torsional vibrations at low idle can cause transmission wear. Failure to comply can result in equipment or property damage.

Continue the engine warm-up until the coolant temperature reaches at least 130°F (54°C). At this temperature, you can use partial throttle. Wait until the coolant temperature is at least 160°F (71°C) before operating at full throttle.

 **NOTE**

Under most circumstances, idling the engine for long periods merely wastes fuel. In severe arctic weather conditions, however, you may need longer idling to make sure that all parts of the engine are fully lubricated.

 **NOTE**

Keep the engine exhaust system and the vehicle's cab ventilation system properly maintained. It is recommended that the vehicle's exhaust system and cab be inspected (1) By a competent technician every 15,000 miles (24,140 km); (2) Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system; or (3) Whenever the exhaust system, underbody, or cab is damaged.

1.7 How to Warm up the Transmission

In cold weather (below 32°F (0°C)), shifting can be sluggish upon initial start-up. Transmission warm-up is especially important under these conditions, but it is always a good idea to warm up the transmission before starting out on the road.

To warm up the transmission lubricating oil during engine warm up, with a single transmission (manual and automatic):

1. Put the transmission in neutral.
2. Release the clutch pedal (manual only). Operate the transmission in neutral for 3 to 5 minutes before moving the vehicle.
3. If you have a two-transmission combination:
 - a. Put the main transmission in gear.
 - b. Put the auxiliary (AUX) transmission in neutral. This action allows the transmission countershaft to turn, agitating the oil and warming it.

1.8 Driving Tips and Techniques

This section covers additional driving tips and techniques on how to drive your vehicle more efficiently.

Coasting

WARNING

DO NOT coast with the transmission in neutral or with the clutch pedal depressed, it is a dangerous practice. Coasting in neutral may damage your drivetrain when you try to re-engage the transmission and could result in a loss of vehicle control. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Do not coast with the transmission in neutral or with the clutch pedal depressed. Besides being illegal and dangerous, coasting is also expensive. It causes premature failure or damage to the clutch and transmission and overloads the brake system. Coasting with the transmission in neutral also prevents proper transmission component lubrication. During coasting the transmission is driven by the rear wheels,

and the countershaft gear (which lubricates the transmission components by oil splash) will only be turning at idle speed.

Descending a Grade

WARNING

DO NOT frequently or continuously use the service brakes. Reduce speed before descending a long or steep grade, shift to a lower gear, and turn on the retarder. Frequent or continuous braking can overheat the brakes, reducing their effectiveness and increase vehicle stopping distance. This can lead to an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Engine Overspeed

CAUTION

DO NOT let the engine rpm operate beyond the maximum governing rpm. Operating the engine above the maximum governing rpm can result in engine damage. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

i NOTE

Often these recommendations are secondary to maintaining an adequate and safe speed relative to the surrounding traffic and road conditions.

i NOTE

The RPM warning band is from 3750 - 4500 rpm in Octane engines.

i NOTE

The RPM warning band is from 1800 - 3000 rpm in diesel engines.

Operate the engine within the optimum engine rpm range and do not allow the rpm to exceed the maximum governed speed. See your Engine Operation and Maintenance manual for information regarding engine rpm. When the engine is used as a brake to control vehicle speed (e.g., while driving down a grade), do not allow the engine rpm to exceed maximum governed speed. Under normal load and road conditions operate the engine in the lower end of the range.

The tachometer is an instrument that aids in obtaining the best performance of the engine and manual transmission, serving as a guide for shifting gears. Refer to the Engine Operation and Maintenance manual for optimum engine rpm.

- If the engine rpm moves beyond the maximum governed speed, indicating an overspeed condition, apply the service brake or shift to a higher gear to bring engine rpm within the optimum speed range.

i NOTE

The injection pump governor cuts off fuel to the engine system in overspeed conditions to protect the engine from overheating. Although, some engines (such as Octane) can allow operation above governed speed.

- When driving downhill: shift to a lower gear, use the engine brake (if so equipped), and use the service brake, keeping the engine speed below 2,100 rpm.

i NOTE

The Octane engines can go significantly higher, so adjust the engine rpm speed below the maximum red-line rating.

When the engine speed reaches its maximum governed speed, the injection pump governor cuts off fuel to the engine. However, the governor has no control over the engine rpm when it is being driven by the vehicle's transmission, for example, on steep downgrades. Apply service brakes or shift to a higher gear. Fuel economy and engine performance are also directly related to driving habits:

- The best results in trip time and fuel economy are obtained while driving the vehicle at a steady speed.
- Shift into higher or lower gears (or apply the service brake) to keep engine rpm near the lower end of the optimum operating range.
- Avoid rapid acceleration and braking.

Use of Digital Display** WARNING**

DO NOT look at a screen on the instrument cluster for long periods while dri-

ving. Vehicle screens should be referenced only briefly and should not be used as a substitute for observing actual road and traffic conditions. Failure to pay attention to the vehicle's road position or situation can lead to an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

The Digital Display provides information to help the driver optimize vehicle efficiency. See Trip Summary [on page 59](#) for more information. A driver will find the section describing Trip Information and the rpm detail useful.

Fuel Consumption

The vehicle's fuel consumption is connected to five important factors: maintenance, driving habits, general condition of the road, traffic conditions, and vehicle load.

Proper maintenance will keep the vehicle running like new even after long periods of use. The driver must perform the daily and weekly checks of the vehicle.

Maintenance factors affecting fuel consumption:

- Air and/or fuel filters partially clogged
- Engine valves out of adjustment
- Injection pump improperly

synchronized

- Injection nozzles defective or uncalibrated
- Improperly inflated tires
- Wheel bearings improperly adjusted
- Clutch improperly adjusted or worn (slipping)
- Fuel leaks

Wrong driving habits must be corrected and the recommendations on economic driving should be followed. Driving factors affecting fuel consumption:

- Excessive speed and unnecessary fast acceleration
- Long periods of idling
- Driving with foot resting on the (manual transmission) clutch pedal

General Condition

Other factors affecting fuel consumption are related to loads and the type of roads on which the vehicle operates. It is not always possible to choose the most adequate road, but the ideal road is the one that allows a steady speed in high gear, without requiring frequent braking and acceleration. The following general conditions can affect fuel consumption:

- Overload
- Unbalanced load
- Very high load

- Inadequate roads
- Traffic conditions

1.9 Stopping the Vehicle

STOPPING THE VEHICLE

A hot engine stores a great amount of heat. It does not cool down immediately after you shut it off. Always cool your engine down before shutting it off. You will greatly increase its service life.

Idle the engine at 1,000 rpm for five minutes. Then low idle for 30 seconds before shutdown. This will allow circulating coolant and lubricating oil to carry away heat from the cylinder head, valves, pistons, cylinder liners, turbocharger, and bearings. This way you can prevent serious engine damage that may result from uneven cooling.

Turbocharger

This cooling-down practice is especially important on a turbocharged engine. The turbocharger contains bearings and seals that are subjected to hot exhaust gases. While the engine is operating, heat is carried away by circulating oil. If you stop the engine suddenly, the temperature of the turbocharger could rise as much as 100°F (55°C) above the temperature reached dur-

ing operation. A sudden rise in temperature like this could cause the bearings to seize or the oil seals to loosen.

Refueling

Air space in your fuel tanks allows water to condense there. To prevent this condensation while you are stopped, fill your tanks to 95 percent of capacity. When refueling, add approximately the same amount to each fuel tank on vehicles with more than one tank.

 **WARNING**

DO NOT carry additional fuel containers in your vehicle. Fuel containers, either empty or full, might leak, cause or feed a fire, or could possibly explode. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

DO NOT remove a fuel tank cap near sparks, flames, or smoking materials. Fuel in the presence of an ignition source could cause an explosion. A mixture of gasoline or alcohol with diesel fuel increases this risk of explosion. Use only the fuel or additives rec-

ommended for your engine. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **CAUTION**

For diesel vehicles, use only Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD) fuel as recommended by engine manufacturers. High-sulfur diesel fuel can damage the aftertreatment system and affect engine emissions, leading to non-compliance with emission regulations. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

 **NOTE**

For more information on fuel specifications, consult the engine operator's manual.

If your vehicle is equipped with fuel shut off valves for the take-off and return lines, they are located on the fuel lines entering the top of the fuel tank. Fuel shut off valves for the fuel crossover line are on the bottom of the fuel tank, at the crossover line connection.

FINAL STOPPING PROCEDURES

 **WARNING**

When parking a vehicle, fully raise lift axles that are not equipped with a parking brake. If left in the down position, a lift axle not equipped with a parking brake could cause the parked vehicle to roll, resulting in an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Your vehicle will be easier to start driving when you are ready, and it will be safer for anyone who might be around it. Please remember, too, that in some states it is illegal to leave the engine running and the vehicle unattended.

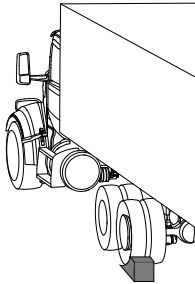
1. Set the parking brake before leaving the driver's seat.

 **WARNING**

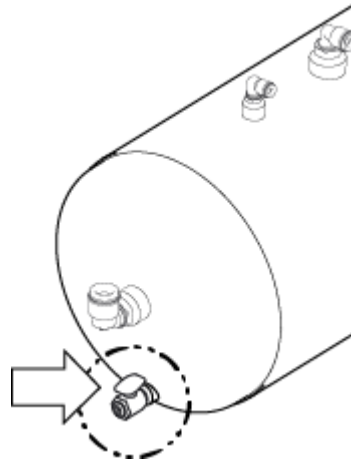
DO NOT rely on the service brake, trailer hand brake, or transmission gear to hold a parked vehicle. Loss of air pressure or engine compression may

allow the vehicle to roll unexpectedly. Always set the parking brake to ensure the vehicle remains stationary. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

2. If you are parked on a steep grade, block the wheels.



3. Drain water from the air reservoirs. Open the reservoir drains just enough to drain the moisture. Don't deplete the entire air supply. Be sure to close the drains before leaving the vehicle.

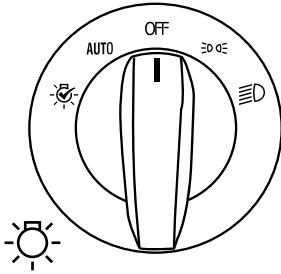


4. Secure the vehicle. Close all the windows and lock all the doors.

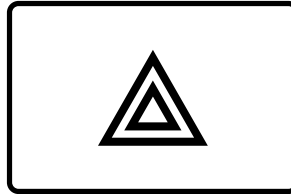
2 LIGHTING CONTROLS

Table 6: Lighting Switches

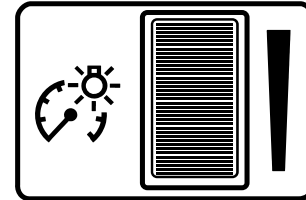
Exterior Lights Switch (ELS)



Hazard Warning



Cab and Panel Dimmer



Cab and Panel Dimmer

Changes the brightness of the instrument panel lights. See [Lights, Cab and Panel Dimmer Switch](#) on page 91.

Exterior Lights Switch (ELS)

Five-position rotary switch that controls which exterior lights are active and can also start an Exterior Lights Self Test (ELST). See [Lights, Exterior Lights Switch \(ELS\)](#) on page 95.

Hazard Lights

Turns on Hazard Warning Lights. See [Lights, Hazard](#) on page 98.

Table 7: Optional Lighting Switches



Lights, Beacon [on page 94](#)



Lights, Daytime Running (Override) [on page 95](#).



Lights, Fog [on page 98](#)



Lights, Spot [on page 99](#)



Lights, Work [on page 98](#)

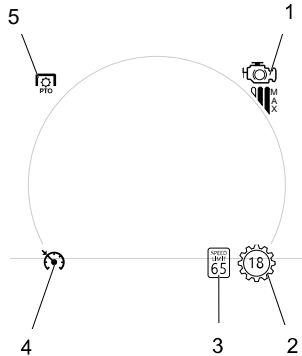
Headlight flashing

- **Flash-to-Warn** (or High Beams Flash) - Warn other drivers by briefly activating high beam headlights. See Flash-to-Warn [on page 108](#).
- **Flash-to-Pass** (sometimes called Low Beams Flash) - Signal other drivers by briefly changing headlight intensity. See Flash-to-Pass [on page 109](#).

3 ENGINE OPERATIONS

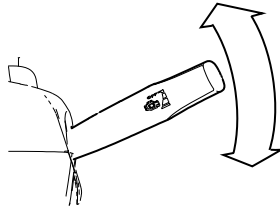
3.1 Indicators Around the Speedometer

Figure 19: Indicators Around the Speedometer



1. Engine Brake
2. Transmission Gear Indicator
3. Speed Limit Recognition (Option)
4. Cruise Control, Adaptive Cruise (Option), Predictive Cruise (Option)
5. Power Take Off (PTO)

3.2 Engine Brake Operation



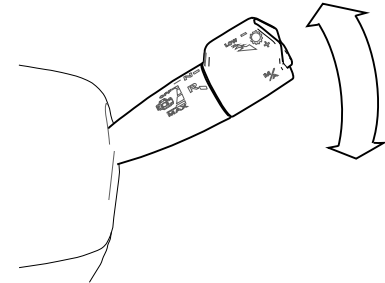
Moving the lever clockwise will engage the engine brake. Increase the amount of engine brake by moving the lever further clockwise. Each position has a corresponding level of engine brake.

Position	Amount of Engine Brake
Off	0%
1	33%
2	66%
3	100%

3.3 Engine Brake Operation for a Vehicle

With Automated Transmission

ENGINE BRAKE OPERATION FOR A VEHICLE WITH AUTOMATED TRANSMISSION



Moving the shifter down (clockwise) engages the engine brake, with each downward position providing more engine braking. The bottom-most position (Position 4) is a momentary position and activates MAX mode.

Position	Amount of engine brake
Off	0 %
1	33%
2	66%
3	100%
4	100% AND engages MAX mode. (this position is momentary and reverts back to position 3 upon releasing the shifter)

The corresponding engine brake level (and MAX mode) indicates on the engine brake indicator.

MAX MODE OPERATION

Some vehicles have a MAX mode. Use this feature when a situation requires 100% engine brake and the additional resistance from using the transmission lower gears.

1. Move the transmission shifter to the 3rd position, enabling 100% engine braking.
2. Pull the transmission shifter down again. Then allow the shifter to move back up to the previous position (3rd position).

Figure 20: Engine Brake + MAX



The vehicle remains in Max mode until the transmission downshifts into the coast-down gear, or the operator:

- Presses the accelerator pedal.
- Upshifts.
- Reduces the engine brake level.
- Attempts to activate MAX mode again (pulling the column shifter down to the temporary 4th position).
- Selects Neutral (**N**).
- Selects Low mode.

3.4 How To Deactivate MAX Mode

Vehicles with PACCAR TX-12/TX-18 series or Eaton Endurant automated transmissions have the engine brake function integrated with the transmission controls. Follow these steps to deactivate **MAX** engine brake mode.

1. Accelerate with the throttle pedal.
2. Upshift. See [Up or Down Shifting on page 151](#).
3. Wait for the transmission coast down

gear to engage.

4. Reduce the engine brake level.
5. Re-initiate **MAX** mode.
6. Select Neutral **N**. See Drive Neutral Reverse Selector [on page 152](#).
7. Select **LOW** mode.

3.5 Engine Brake Indicator



This indicator appears when the engine braking (compression brake or exhaust brake) is active. It shows available engine braking levels near the indicator, with the selected braking level highlighted:

When using engine braking, the engine brake indicator turns green. An override of active engine braking can occur when the operator (or a vehicle feature, such as Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)) provides acceleration. In these cases, the engine brake indicator turns white (enabled but not active) while the vehicle accelerates.

3.6 How To Change Fast Idle Control (FIC) Speed

The truck must be stationary, the transmission in neutral, and the park brake set.



CAUTION

DO NOT let the engine rpm operate beyond the maximum governing rpm. Operating the engine above the maximum governing rpm can result in engine damage. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

1. Press the Cruise Control **ON-OFF** toggle.
If enabled, the white FIC indicator appears near the Speedometer/ Tachometer.
2. To set the FIC speed:
 - Press **RES -** to resume the last used FIC speed.
 - Alternatively, use the accelerator to increase rpm. Then press **SET +**.
 - You can also press and hold **SET +** to increase and set the new FIC speed.
 - You can also press and hold **RES -** to reduce FIC speed. Then

press **SET +**.

When active, the FIC indicator is green.

3.7 PTO Operations (Option)

PTO OPERATIONS (OPTION)

This truck may be equipped with Power Take-Off (PTO). PTO operation is enabled by using the dash mounted PTO switch in conjunction with the cruise control feature. When enabled, the tachometer will represent PTO operation, and may display the following additional PTO related information:

- Engine RPM – indicated near the tachometer as well as on the scale line.
- PTO hours – shows engine hours used during PTO activity.
- DPF Status – shows Diesel Particulate Filter usage as a percentage. (On diesel engines only.)
- Engine Torque – shows the percentage of max engine torque being exerted.

Depending on your engine type, these modes can be read inside the tachometer. For more information on PTO operation see How to Start the PTO [on page 138](#),

How to Stop the PTO [on page 139](#), and/ or consult your PTO manufacturer's operating instructions.

HOW TO START THE PTO

The PTO operation can be enabled and activated in many different ways. Refer to your PTO manufacturer's operating instructions for specific guidance on how to operate the PTO. The information below provides the basic process of enabling and activating PTO and what the operator should observe during this process; however, defer to your PTO manufacturer's Operating Instructions in all cases where there is a disagreement in instruction.



CAUTION

Increasing RPM before the PTO is engaged can prevent the PTO from engaging. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.



NOTE

The PTO cannot engage instantly. There is a slight delay.

i NOTE

Individual PTO activation and operation depends largely on the power source of the PTO as well as the transmission or engine configuration. Seek out appropriate transmission or engine operator's manual for additional information.

1. Toggle the **PTO ON/OFF** switch to the ON position. Text indicating PTO engagement will appear at the center of the display.
2. Press the Cruise Control (CC) **ON/OFF** button to enable PTO speed control operations. A white speed control enabled icon will appear.
3. Press the **SET +** and **RES -** Cruise Control (CC) buttons to command a desired engine speed. PTO Speed Control is now active.
4. To increase or decrease PTO engine speed use a combination of short and long presses of the **SET +** and **RES -** Cruise Control (CC) buttons.

PTO speed indicates on the digital tachometer and below it, as a numerical readout.

HOW TO STOP THE PTO

When PTO Speed Control is active, there are many ways to disable it depending on how the vehicle is configured.

1. Tap the service brake.
2. Engage the clutch.
3. Turn Cruise Control Off .
4. Release the Parking Brake - (This is applicable only if PTO was activated while the truck was stationary.)
5. Toggling the **PTO switch** to OFF

In some PTO configurations, Cruise Control switches will continue to control engine speed even after the PTO switch is turned off. It is not advised to stop the PTO when engine speed is above the default setting. Remember, to quit PTO operations fully, toggle the **PTO switch** to OFF.

3.8 Engine Fan Control


The engine fan switch on the dash has a manual and an automatic mode. In the manual mode, the engine fan will engage until the switch is back into automatic mode. In automatic mode, the engine fan operation is controlled by the engine computer.

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT work on or near the engine fan while the engine is running. The fan can start at any time without warning, and anyone near the fan when it turns on could be injured. If the manual fan switch is set to **MANUAL**, the fan will turn on when the start key switch is turned to the ON position. If the switch is set to **AUTO**, it could engage suddenly at any time without warning. Before starting the engine or switching the manual fan switch from **AUTO** to **MANUAL**, make sure no one is near the fan. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage or property damage.


⚠ CAUTION

DO NOT operate the engine fan in the **MANUAL** position for extended periods of time. The fan hub was designed for intermittent operation. Sustained operation will shorten the fan hub's service life as well as reduce fuel economy. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

 **CAUTION**

The fan or equipment near it could be damaged if the fan turns on suddenly when you do not expect it. Keep all tools and equipment away from the fan. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

3.9 Using a Winterfront

 **CAUTION**

A winterfront should only be used at temperatures below 40°F (4°C). Use of a winterfront above 40°F (4°C) can decrease the life of cooling module components and result in excessive coolant, engine oil, and intake air temperatures. This may lead to overheating, engine or coolant module damage, and emissions non-compliance. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

The winterfront is designed to minimize the temperature differences across the radiator and reduce the possibility of cooling module damage. Aftermarket winterfronts may not provide the proper airflow distribution and could cause cooling module damage.


3.10 How to Set the Shutdown Timer

The Shutdown Timer must first be enabled. Enabling the shutdown timer is located in the Settings Sub-menu.

Follow these steps to turn on the engine idle shutdown timer. The shutdown timer will default to 5 minutes (or the last value used) and can be set up to 30 minutes unless limited by the Engine Shutdown System (Clean Idle [on page 287](#)).

 **WARNING**

Never idle your vehicle for prolonged periods of time if you sense that exhaust fumes are entering the cabin. Investigate the cause of the fumes and correct it as soon as possible. If the vehicle must be driven under these conditions, drive only with the windows open. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **CAUTION**

DO NOT idle engine longer than five minutes at low rpm (400-600 rpm). DO NOT allow the engine to operate at idle

for extended periods at temperatures at or below 160°F (71°C). Long idle periods after the engine has reached operating temperatures can result in gummed piston rings, clogged injectors, and break down engine lubrication resulting in engine damage. Torsional vibrations at low idle can cause transmission wear. Failure to comply can result in equipment or property damage.

1. Using the **Scroll Wheel**, target the number of minutes and press **Select**.
2. **Back** to return to the Settings menu.

3.11 Engine Aftertreatment System

If your vehicle is equipped with diesel engine, the exhaust system will include an aftertreatment system (EAS) to control vehicle exhaust emissions. The EAS consists of the following:

- Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)
- Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR)
- Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) filter
- DEF tank
- DEF injector
- DPF switch
- Warning lights

The DPF will trap soot from the engine exhaust gases. The SCR uses Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) to reduce the levels of Nitrogen Oxides (NOx) in the engine exhaust. The EAS will periodically clean (regenerate) the DPF.

Please refer to the Engine Aftertreatment System Supplement provided with the vehicle for a more detailed description of functionality and warnings.

4 DRIVER ASSISTANCE

4.1 Driver Assistance

Driver Assistance (or Advanced Driver-Assistance Systems (ADAS)) defines various electronic features that assist the operator while driving. These features improve operator and vehicle safety by alerting the operator (and sometimes acting) to the driving environment. Driver Assistance features use electronic and hardware improvements to accomplish this task: cameras, radar, sensors, and in-cab notifications.

The features described in this section are a supplement to the ADAS OEM operator's manuals. These manuals are in the glove compartment of the vehicle. There can be various ADAS components optioned for the vehicle. Each option has its own

manual. It is important that the operator becomes familiar with the OEM manuals for the ADAS equipment. They must read them before driving the vehicle.

Table 8: Bendix™ Advanced Driver-Assistance Systems (ADAS)

Product	Feature
Bendix™ Wingman Advanced	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
	Collision Mitigation

4.2 Cruise Control

CRUISE CONTROL



WARNING

DO NOT use a retarder (such as the engine brake, exhaust brake, transmission retarder, or regenerative braking) when operating on road surfaces with poor traction (such as wet, icy, or snow covered roads, or gravel). Retarders can cause the wheels to skid on a slippery surface. You could lose control of the vehicle or jackknife if the wheels begin to skid, resulting in an accident. Failure to comply may result in death,

personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



WARNING

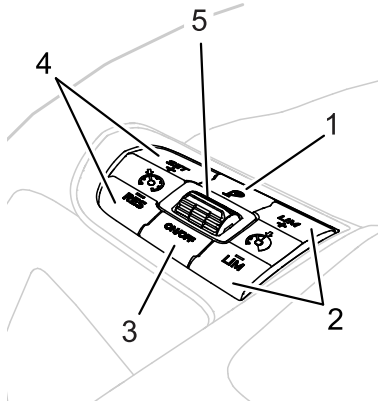
DO NOT use a retarder (engine brake, exhaust brake, transmission retarder, or regenerative braking) in heavy traffic. Most retarders slow the vehicle without activating brake lights, which may not alert following drivers and can lead to rear-end collisions. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Cruise control functions and features may vary depending upon which engine you have. For a specific explanation of your cruise control, see the cruise control or engine manual included with your vehicle. This vehicle's electronic system will perform a 'rationality check' every time the vehicle is started. This check is to ensure that the service brakes are working before allowing cruise control to function. This safety feature is designed to ensure that a driver is able to cancel the cruise set speed by using the service brake pedal. The system will not allow cruise control operation if it does not pass the 'rationality check.' The display will prompt you to press the ser-

vice brake pedal if it has not been pressed since the vehicle has been started. In vehicles with PACCAR TX-12/TX-18 or Eaton Endurant transmission, the cruise control switches may be located on the shift control knob.

The left switch pod on the steering wheel contain buttons for the cruise control.

Figure 21: Left Switch Pod



1. **Trip**
2. Variable Road Speed Limiter (VRSL) **LIM+** and **LIM-** (option)
3. Cruise Control **ON/OFF**
4. Cruise Control (CC) **SET+** and **RES-**
5. **Toggle**

The switches on the left side of horn pad manage vehicle speed functions like cruise control and variable road speed limiter (option). If the vehicle has adaptive cruise control (option), predictive cruise control (option), etc., the toggle switch is also used to operate that system.

CRUISE CONTROL INDICATOR



This indicator shows the operator which Cruise Control function is currently enabled or active. This includes:

- Cruise Control
- Adaptive Cruise Control (optional)
- Predictive Cruise Control (optional)

The indicator is white when the system is on and turns green when the cruise control set speed is active. For more information see [Cruise Control on page 141](#).

HOW TO SET CRUISE CONTROL SPEED WHEN DRIVING

To Set the Cruise Speed:

The vehicle speed must be greater than 19 mph (30 kph) for PACCAR powered vehicles.

1. Turn the cruise function on by using the ON/OFF button.

The cruise icon will appear in the display.



2. Accelerate the vehicle via accelerator pedal to the desired cruise speed.
3. Press the "SET +" button to set the cruise speed.

! WARNING

Cruise Control may not hold the set speed going downhill. If the speed increases going downhill, use the brakes to slow down and cancel Cruise Control. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

The cruise set speed will appear in the display.

HOW TO CHANGE CRUISE SET SPEED

The vehicle cruise control must be ON and the cruise speed engaged.

- To increase vehicle speed
 - Press or long press **SET +** until you reach the desired speed, or
 - Use the Accelerator Pedal to reach the desired speed, and then press the **Set +**
- To decrease vehicle speed, press or long press **RES -** until you achieve the desired speed, and then press **SET +**.

The new cruise speed can be seen next to the Cruise Control Indicator.

CANCELING AND RESUMING CRUISE CONTROL

There are four ways to cancel the set speed in cruise control:

- Tap the brake pedal
- Tap the clutch pedal
- Turn the cruise control system OFF (ON/OFF button on steering wheel)
- Press the Variable Road Speed Limit buttons

Using the brake or clutch pedal to cancel set speed allows the operator to use the RESUME feature. Pressing the **RES -** button will resume the vehicle speed previously set.

Pressing **ON/OFF** once will deactivate cruise control, and pressing it twice will turn off the system. When turning the system OFF, the previous set speed is removed from memory. The operator will have to manually reset the vehicle's cruise speed.

4.3 Variable Road Speed Limiter (Option)

VARIABLE ROAD SPEED LIMITER (OPTION)

The Variable Road Speed Limiter (VRSL) prevents the vehicle from exceeding a chosen vehicle speed limit. This limit is selected by the operator and can be changed while driving. VRSL uses various braking methods to enforce the limit including ignoring further input from the accelerator pedal, but will only use engine braking if available and enabled.

VRSL replaces the Cruise Control indicator when active and will show the VRSL limit to the right of the indicator. This limit is shown in gray but turns white when

actively limiting vehicle speed. PACCAR MX and P Series Engines, additionally, show "LIMITED" on the speedometer. When active, the VRSL speed limit can be changed using the **LIM+** and **LIM-** buttons in the right, steering wheel switch pod. See How to Set the Variable Road Speed Limiter. Enabling VRSL will disable Cruise Control.

VRSL can be canceled by

- A long press of the Cruise Control **ON/OFF**.
- Stopping then parking the vehicle.
- Activating the PTO (option) (PACCAR MX and P Series Engines only).

HOW TO SET THE VARIABLE ROAD SPEED LIMITER

The Variable Road Speed Limiter (VRSL) cannot establish a limit while the parking brake is set or the PTO is in operation. The minimum VRSL setting is 25 mph (40 kph). Enabling VRSL will disable Cruise Control if Cruise Control is active.

- Press the Cruise Control **ON/OFF** button in the left, steering wheel switch pod.



Indicates that the VRSL feature is awaiting input.

2. Press, or press and hold, **LIM+** or **LIM-** to incrementally, or continuously, raise or lower the VRSL limit.

The green VRSL indicator will replace the Cruise Control indicator, indicating that VRSL is enabled. VRSL (like Cruise Control) will use the current vehicle speed as the VRSL limit until changed.

Pressing either **LIM+** or **LIM-** will adjust the VRSL limit while this feature is active.

4.4 Adaptive Cruise Control (Option)

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (OPTION)

WARNING

The driver must remain alert, react appropriately, and use safe driving practices while using this driver assistance feature. Ultimate responsibility for safe operation of the vehicle remains with the driver at all times. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury,

equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

The driver must remain visually aware of the roadway and traffic and not rely solely on Driver Assistance features to identify and respond to the variety of vehicles or objects sharing the road. The driver must read the ADAS operator's manual associated with this feature and understand its limitations prior to driving the vehicle. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

Driver Assistance features respond differently to specific road, weather, and traffic conditions. The operator must read the ADAS operator's manual associated with this feature and understand how it responds to these specific conditions prior to driving the vehicle. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



When Cruise Control is active, ACC accelerates and slows the vehicle to maintain a chosen distance from a detected forward vehicle. Collision Mitigation attempts to prevent a forward collision when the vehicle is advancing at speeds greater than 15 mph (24 kph). Please review the ACC section of this manual, and the manufacturer's manual, prior to driving this vehicle.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE DISPLAY

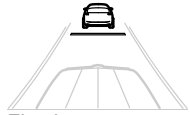
The display area for Active Cruise will contain dynamic visuals related to whether a tracked vehicle is in front and the amount of following distance set for Active Cruise. It will show an outline of a car in the display area when the radar is tracking a vehicle. Once it locks on to a tracked vehicle, it will display horizontal bars to represent the amount of following distance from the tracked vehicle. Once it locks and tracks a target vehicle, the system will adjust the speed to accommodate the speed of the tracked vehicle in front of it.

Figure 22: No Tracked Vehicle



The operator can set the amount of following distance from the tracked vehicle. There are five preset distances to choose from, represented by horizontal bars between the hood and the forward car. One bar represents the nearest following distance.

Figure 23: Following Distance One Bar



Five bars represents a farther distance.

Figure 24: Following Distance Five Bars



See Set ACC Following Distance [on page 145](#).

SET ACC FOLLOWING DISTANCE

Follow these steps to adjust the following distance for Adaptive Cruise Control:

1. Press the **Toggle** until the following distance bars illuminate in the view. If the vehicle has Predictive Cruise Control, you may have to press multiple times to cycle through the other settings for PCC.

2. Rotate the **Toggle** up or down to choose the amount of following distance.
3. Push the **Toggle** again to set the following distance.

FOLLOWING DISTANCE ALERTS

The display is white when a tracked vehicle is at a proper following distance. If the following distance decreases (less than 1.5 seconds), the following distance bars turns amber. When the following distance decrease more (0.5 seconds), the following distance bars turns red (following distance value may differ based on vehicle option codes).

OBJECT DETECTED ALERT

When Collision Mitigation instrumentation detects a roadway object not recognized as a vehicle, the following graphic will show in the Driver Assistance area of the Digital Display:

Figure 25: Active Cruise - Object Detected



Because ACC does not classify the forward object as a vehicle, Collision Mitigation braking will not occur (see Collision Mitigation); instead, this graphic is accompanied by an audible alert, allowing the operator to decide how to best respond to the detected object.

For more information on the characteristics of the Adaptive Cruise Control feature, please read the ADAS OEM Operator's Manual specific for your vehicle.

COLLISION MITIGATION

WARNING

The driver must remain alert, react appropriately, and use safe driving practices while using this driver assistance feature. Ultimate responsibility for safe operation of the vehicle remains with the driver at all times. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

The driver must remain visually aware of the roadway and traffic and not rely solely on Driver Assistance features to identify and respond to the vari-

ety of vehicles or objects sharing the road. The driver must read the ADAS operator's manual associated with this feature and understand its limitations prior to driving the vehicle. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



WARNING

Driver Assistance features respond differently to specific road, weather, and traffic conditions. The operator must read the ADAS operator's manual associated with this feature and understand how it responds to these specific conditions prior to driving the vehicle. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Collision Mitigation will attempt to prevent or lessen the impact of a forward collision where Collision Mitigation has determined impact with a vehicle is likely. Although the Driver Assistance instrumentation can detect a non-vehicular, forward object, only a recognized vehicle can trigger Collision Mitigation.

Unlike Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), Collision Mitigation is always on (at speeds greater than 15mph) and does not depend on Cruise Control being active. When Collision Mitigation determines that a forward vehicular impact is likely, Collision Mitigation will apply the service brakes and present the following warning in the Driver Assistance area of the display along with an audible warning:

Figure 26: Adaptive Cruise - Brake!



Additionally, this notification will appear instructing the operator to take control:

Collision Alert
BRAKE!

Collision Mitigation should not be used to stop or slow the vehicle without operator intervention. A Collision Mitigation braking event will temporarily disable both ACC and standard Cruise Control, requiring these features to be reactivated by the operator.

Collision Mitigation will continue to slow the vehicle until the potential for a collision has been averted, whether the potential colli-

sion be the vehicle that triggered the braking event or another forward vehicle the system has determined may likely result in an impact. The operator can cancel the braking event by using either the accelerator pedal or the service brake. This lets Collision Mitigation know that the triggering event has been acknowledged.

To prevent abuse of this emergency feature, after three Collision Mitigation braking events, ACC and Collision Mitigation will be disabled until the next time the ignition switch is cycled. This is to prevent using Collision Mitigation irresponsibly or in a manner for which it was not intended. Please read the ADAS operator's manual specific for your vehicle to become familiar with the limitations of Collision Mitigation.

5 TRANSMISSION

5.1 Transmission Tips

Riding the Clutch

The clutch is not a footrest. Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal. Release fully the pedal because riding the clutch results in the disc slipping and causes excessive heat and wear on it.

Release Bearing Wear

When idling the engine, shift the transmission to neutral and disengage the clutch by removing your foot from the pedal. Disengaging the clutch in idle prevents unnecessary wear to the clutch release bearing and is less tiring for drivers.

More Tips

- Always use the clutch when making upshifts or downshifts.
- Always select a starting gear that provides sufficient gear reduction for the load and terrain.
- Never downshift when the vehicle is moving too fast.
- Never slam or jerk the shift lever to complete gear engagement.
- Never coast with the transmission in neutral and the clutch disengaged. To provide smooth gear engagements while shifting, use proper coordination between shift lever and clutch.
- Double clutching is a very effective means to increase the service life of the transmission. Double clutching refers to a technique where the clutch pedal is used twice per shift instead of once. It also requires that you adjust the engine rpm in the middle of the shift which ultimately synchronizes the gears during shifting. Synchronizing

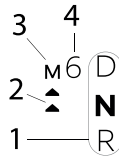
reduces wear on the gears.

5.2 Transmission Oil Temperature Gauge



The Transmission Temperature Gauge indicates the temperature of the oil in the transmission. Watch this gauge to know when the transmission is overheating. If the gauge illuminates amber, have it checked by an authorized service representative.

5.3 Transmission Gear Display



1. Transmission mode (Neutral shown)
2. Gear Shift Assist (option)
3. Drive mode (Manual shown)
4. Current gear

Vehicles with PACCAR TX-12/TX-18 series or Eaton Endurant transmissions will show the transmission mode, current gear, and diagnostic information associated with the transmission. This display does not apply for vehicles with Allison transmissions.

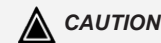
5.4 Operating Manual Transmissions

OPERATING MANUAL TRANSMISSIONS

The transmission shift pattern for your vehicle may be located on the shift control knob. In addition to understanding the shift pattern and its location, you should read the transmission manufacturer's manual provided with your vehicle before operating the vehicle. After making sure the vehicle's oil and air pressure are correct and all other parts and systems are in proper working condition:

1. For vehicles with a clutch pedal, locate the clutch pedal and engage the clutch brake.

2.



Always use first gear or a low speed range to start the vehicle

in motion. The use of a higher gear or speed range forces undue strain on the engine, clutch, and other transmission components. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

Shift into a low gear.

3. Evaluate the road surface conditions and terrain. Select a gear low enough to let the vehicle start forward with the throttle at idle.
4. Push the parking brake valve handle (yellow) against the dash panel to release the brake.
5. Release the clutch pedal (manual only), then gradually accelerate to permit smooth starting.
6. DO NOT allow the vehicle to roll (even a little) in the opposite direction during clutch engagement. When starting on an incline, apply the service brakes before releasing the parking brake. Then, release the service brake as you engage the clutch and apply throttle.

For further instructions on operating the transmission, see the transmission manufacturer's Driver/Operator's Instruction Manual.

To shift directly into any gear other than first or reverse, depress the clutch pedal only far enough to release the clutch. Fully depressing the pedal applies the clutch brake and could cause gear hang-up. If the vehicle has a misaligned gear condition and cannot start, gradually release the clutch, allowing the drive gear teeth to line up properly. Then the drive gear can roll enough to allow the teeth to line up properly and complete the shift. The best engine performance and maximum economy is obtained if gears are properly selected. This efficiency is achieved by always selecting gears within optimum engine rpm, which is where maximum torque and power are obtained. Shift carefully in a new vehicle or one that has been exposed to cold water. The transmission may be a little stiff at first because the transmission lubricant has not yet circulated and coated the contacting surfaces of the gears. To avoid gear clashing, closely follow these procedures:

- Always select a starting gear that will provide sufficient gear reduction for the load and terrain.
- Never downshift when the vehicle is moving too fast.
- Never slam or jerk the shift lever to complete gear engagement.
- Never coast with the transmission in

neutral and the clutch disengaged.


CAUTION

When starting the vehicle, wait a few seconds before placing the vehicle in gear. This pause allows lubricant to coat contacting metal surfaces. Metal contacting metal in moving parts may seriously damage your transmission. Once the vehicle is in motion, avoid driving in first gear unnecessarily. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

HOW TO USE THE HYDRAULIC CLUTCH

CAUTION

Be careful not to apply the clutch brake while the vehicle is moving. The purpose of the clutch brake is to stop the transmission so that you can shift into a starting gear without grinding gears. Applying the clutch brake when the vehicle is moving causes a braking effect on the drivetrain and shortens the service life of the clutch brake. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.


CAUTION

DO NOT push the clutch pedal completely to the floor when shifting while the vehicle is in motion. Using the clutch brake while shifting a vehicle in motion will damage the clutch brake. A non-functioning clutch brake will make shifting very difficult when the vehicle is stationary. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

1. The clutch pedal only needs to be fully depressed when it is necessary to engage the clutch brake. Typically, this is only when starting from a stop to help mesh the gears.
2. For the remainder of the more typical gear changes, it is not necessary to fully apply the clutch pedal, and instead the pedal should only be partially depressed. A force ramp can be felt near the end of the clutch travel to help avoid engaging the clutch brake when not needed.

The clutch brake is used for stopping transmission gears, allowing shifting into first gear or reverse without grinding gears. It is not necessary to use the clutch brake to shift gears when the vehicle is in motion.

If the clutch pedal is pressed completely to the floor, and the transmission is not shifting, it is time to have the clutch adjusted or serviced.

If the transmission has a butt-tooth condition and you cannot engage a gear, gradually release the clutch. Then the drive gear can roll enough to allow the teeth to line up properly and complete the shift.

The clutch is not a footrest. Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal. It will allow your clutch to slip, causing excessive heat and wear. Damage could result. When idling the engine, shift the transmission to neutral and disengage the clutch by removing your foot from the pedal. Disengaging the clutch in idle prevents unnecessary wear to the clutch release bearing and is less tiring for drivers.

- Always use the clutch when making upshifts or downshifts.
- Never coast with the transmission in neutral and the clutch disengaged.
- To provide smooth gear engagements while shifting, use proper coordination between shift lever and clutch.

HOW TO SHIFT USING DOUBLE CLUTCH METHOD

Double clutching is easier on the transmission and on the engine, helping match the

vehicle's engine speed with driveline speed to achieve clash-free shifts.

The manual transmission in the vehicle is not equipped with gear synchronizers. Whether you are upshifting or downshifting, it is best to double clutch.

To double clutch:

1. Push the clutch pedal down to disengage the clutch.
2. Move the gear shift lever to neutral.
3. Release the pedal to engage the clutch. This lets you control the rpm of the transmission mainshaft gears, allowing you to match the rpm of the mainshaft gears to those of the output shaft.
 - Upshifts: let the engine and gears slow down to the rpm required for the next gear.
 - Downshifts: press accelerator, increase engine and gear speed to the rpm required in the lower gear.
4. Now quickly press the pedal to disengage the clutch and move the gear shift lever to the next gear speed position.
5. Release the pedal to engage the clutch.

5.5 Automated Transmissions

AUTOMATED TRANSMISSIONS

This vehicle may have a PACCAR TX-12/ TX-18 series or Eaton Endurant automated transmission. It is important to understand how to operate the transmission to optimize its efficiency. Please read the manual for the automated transmission included with your vehicle.

Always apply the parking brake before leaving the cab.



WARNING

If your vehicle has an automated or automatic transmission, the vehicle can roll backwards when stopped or started on a hill or grade. To prevent rolling, observe the following guidelines:

- When stopped on a hill or grade, press the brake pedal.
- When starting from a stop on a hill or grade, quickly remove your foot from the brake pedal and firmly press on the accelerator pedal.

Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



WARNING

DO NOT leave the cab of the vehicle without first applying the parking brake. The vehicle could roll and cause an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Hill Hold



The hill hold feature is available as an option with certain automated transmissions. This feature holds the vehicle while on a hill to allow the operator to release the service brakes and press the accelerator. This feature will hold the vehicle if the vehicle is attempting to go up a hill from a stop in either drive or reverse. There is usually a switch associated with defeating this hold feature, should it be desirable to intentionally roll back, such as down a loading ramp for example.

Shift Configuration

Some transmissions are equipped with more than one shifting configuration to match various operating conditions. Please

read the automated transmission manual included with your vehicle for instructions on how to change shift configurations. When the transmission is in an alternate configuration, there is usually some kind of indication near the gear graphic. The letters 'C2' may appear, for example, or words describing the configuration such as "Tanker" or "Off-Road".

TRANSMISSION GEAR DISPLAY



This indicator shows the transmission mode and current gear. This display location does not apply to vehicles with Allison automatic transmissions.

- Max mode
- Low gear mode
- Manual Mode
- Neutral Coast
- Driver Shift Aid
- Configuration 2

Inside the gear icon, the indicator normally shows the current gear number and may at times show:

- **AN** - Auto Neutral
- **CA** - Clutch Abuse
- **GI** - Grease Service Interval
- **!** - Error State

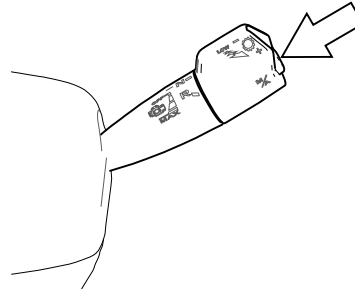
Figure 27: Transmission Error

This icon indicates an error in the transmission. Attempt to reset the transmission by switching off the vehicle. After two minutes, restart the engine. Then see if the same icon appears in the display. Contact the nearest authorized dealership if the condition persists.

CONTROLS FOR VEHICLES WITH A PACCAR TX-12/TX-18 SERIES OR EATON ENDURANT TRANSMISSION

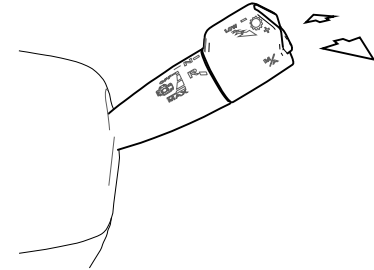
This vehicle may be equipped with either a PACCAR TX-12/TX-18 series or Eaton Endurant Transmission. The Automated or PACCAR Transmission controls are located on the right hand side of the steering column.

USING THE MANUAL - AUTOMATIC BUTTON



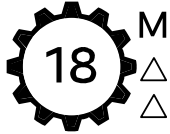
This button will put the transmission into manual mode. Manual mode will allow the operator to select the gear. See [Up or Down Shifting on page 151](#). To activate, put the gear selector in the **D** (drive) mode and then depress the **M/A** button. The instrument cluster will display the corresponding selection in the transmission mode area of the display.

UP OR DOWN SHIFTING



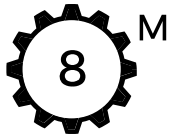
When in the Manual mode, the transmission gears can be manually selected by pushing or pulling on the lever. Pushing the lever forward will down shift. Pushing and holding the lever forward will engage the LOW gear range. Pulling the lever towards the driver will upshift the transmission. Some vehicles may have a feature that prompts the operator to shift for optimal fuel economy. If the prompt appears in the instrument cluster, use the manual gear selector lever to change gears.

Figure 28: Gear Shift Assist

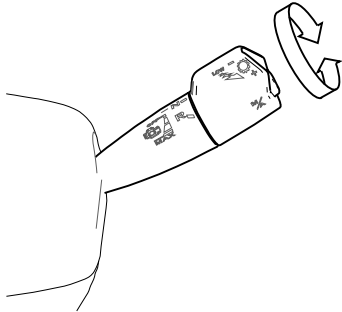


The instrument cluster will illuminate with the corresponding gear.

Figure 29: Transmission Gear



DRIVE NEUTRAL REVERSE SELECTOR



Transmission mode is selected by rotating the lever outer knob. There is a position for Drive (**D**), Neutral (**N**), and Reverse (**R**). The Digital Display will indicate the corresponding mode.

i NOTE

Selector (the transmission) must be in Neutral (**N**) to start the truck.

AUTO-NEUTRAL



The Auto-neutral feature will automatically shift the transmission into Neutral if it is left in a forward or reverse mode (such as Low, Drive, or Reverse) and the parking brake is set. The transmission gear display shows **AN** when Auto-neutral is activated. This mode might also activate if the driver does not apply the foot brake before shifting. When this happens, the selector might have to be cycled with the correct brake application to perform the desired gear selection

i NOTE

If Auto-neutral has been activated, the transmission will not shift into Drive (**D**) or Reverse (**R**) until the shifter is first moved to Neutral (**N**) before selecting another transmission mode.

NEUTRAL COAST MODE

Neutral Coast mode places the transmission into Neutral on slight downhill grades, improving fuel economy. Neutral Coast mode only operates when cruise control is active and the transmission is in Drive. When Neutral Coast Mode is active, the engine will drop to idle speed and the transmission will disengage. The gear display shows a green **N** when Neutral Coast mode is active. The transmission exits Neutral Coast, returning to an appropriate gear, when the

- Vehicle brake is applied
- Operator depresses accelerator pedal
- A mode other than Drive is selected
- Operator performs an upshift or downshift request
- Cruise control is canceled
- Cruise high or low set speeds are exceeded
- Maximum vehicle grade is exceeded

- Driver Assistance systems (ADAS) make a brake request

CLUTCH ABUSE PROTECTION

The clutch can overheat and slip with improper use. Select the lowest possible start gear for the application.

- If moving slowly is required, select 1st or R1.
- Use the service brake and let Hill Start Aid assist you when launching on an incline.
- Do NOT use the throttle to hold the vehicle on an incline. (Use Service Brake).
- Do NOT use the throttle to stop roll back on an incline after Hill Start Aid disengages. (Use service brake, and then relaunch).

Figure 30: Transmission Gear Display (Clutch Abuse)



If the clutch starts to overheat, the transmission gear display will show **CA** and sound a warning tone. Full clutch actuation must be completed quickly. If not, the system will either open the clutch if not on the throttle or close the clutch if on the throttle. If the abuse continues, the system will

open the clutch and take away throttle control for a short period of time to allow the clutch to cool down.

5.6 Automatic Transmissions

An automatic transmission makes shifting much easier. It is important to understand how to operate the transmission to optimize its efficiency. Please read the manual for your automatic transmission included with your vehicle.

Some automatic transmissions (TX-8, Allison 1k/2k) have a "park" position. Always use a parking brake before leaving the cab.



WARNING

DO NOT leave the cab of the vehicle without first applying the parking brake. The vehicle could roll and cause an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

5.7 Auxiliary Transmission

If you have an auxiliary transmission, see your transmission manufacturer's manual for its proper operation.

6 BRAKES

6.1 Air Brake System



WARNING

DO NOT drive through water deep enough to wet brake components. It may cause the brakes to work less efficiently than normal. The vehicle stopping distance may be longer than expected or the vehicle may pull to the left or right when brakes are applied, causing an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

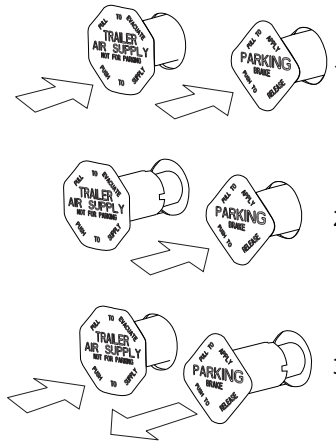
Compressed air is delivered to the brake system through the valve at the brake pedal and is controlled with various valves and braking circuits. The brake system is designed with separate front, rear, and (when applicable) trailer circuits so that if one circuit is compromised and loses air,

the other circuits will not be affected. Safety valves in each circuit will protect the other circuits in the event that a circuit loses air. The air compressor on the engine will typically provide 100 to 130 psi (6.89 to 8.96 bar/689 to 896 kPa) to the air tanks. The vehicle is also designed with an air dryer, which removes moisture from the compressed air in order to protect all components in the air system.

The brake system may be further enhanced by additional devices such as brake proportioning valves, antilock braking systems, or sensors designed to let you know if your brake pads need to be serviced. Certain conditions may result in the brake surfaces getting wet. Brake surfaces that are wet do not perform as well as when they are dry. There may be situations where wet brake surfaces cannot be avoided. In such situations, apply the brakes while in motion, to dry the brake surfaces.

Certain conditions may result in your brake surfaces becoming overheated (above 800°F or 427°C). Overheated brakes will damage linings and drum surfaces, ultimately decreasing brake performance. Refer to Retarders and Descending a grade to avoid overheating the brakes.

Parking Brake

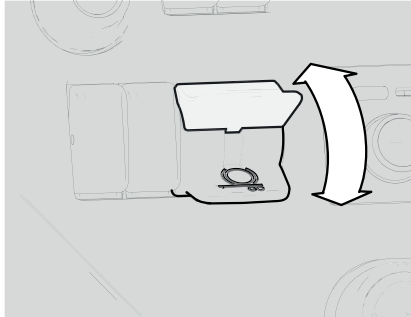


1. Normal run position
2. Trailer park with vehicle released
3. System park or trailer charge with vehicle parked

Commercial Truck Parking brake works in reverse action of automotive hydraulic brakes. When the parking brake is engaged, air is exhausted from the spring chambers, which allows the spring to engage the brake. This design also provides a safety function if a brake circuit has a leak and loses air. In such a scenario, the parking brake will apply.

The vehicle's parking brake controls are the yellow diamond shaped knob on your dash board. If the vehicle is equipped to tow a trailer, then there will be an additional red octagon shaped knob for the trailer parking brake. The parking brake will be engaged when either of these knobs are pulled OUT. (If one knob is pulled out, the other knob will automatically pop out.) Pushing IN a knob will disengage the respective parking brake. If you push in the yellow knob only, you will disengage the vehicle's parking brake but will not disengage the trailer parking brake (if applicable). Either knob will pop back out if the system pressure is not above 60 psi (4.14 bar/414 kPa). The instrument panel display will provide a message any time the parking brake (vehicle or the trailer) are set and the vehicle is put into motion.

6.2 Engage Trailer Hand Brakes



Press the lever down to engage the Trailer Hand Brake. If the brake does not self release, raise the lever back up manually to disengage the Trailer Hand Brake.

6.3 Automatic Traction Control



The truck-tractor antilock brake system (ABS) has an Automatic Traction Control (ATC) feature. A switch on the dash controls this feature. Check for illumination of the ABS and traction control warning lamps when first starting the vehicle. Monitor these lamps while driving. Other than

these provisions, there are no special operating procedures required. For a detailed system description, see the literature for the specific ABS that came with the vehicle.

i NOTE

DO NOT allow the traction control lamp to remain on continuously for an extended length of time. Continuous use of the ATC can cause overheating of the drive wheel brakes. Reduce the engine torque or vehicle speed to eliminate wheel spin.

6.4 Antilock Brake Systems (ABS)

This vehicle can have an Antilock Brake System (ABS). The ABS adjusts air pressure at the appropriate wheels to prevent wheel lock-up. The ABS arms when the start key switch is in the ON position.

! WARNING

The antilock brake system (ABS) is a critical vehicle safety system. For the safety of you and others around you, have the vehicle submitted for periodic

preventive maintenance checks. If you suspect problems, immediately contact an authorized dealer. Failure to maintain the brake system properly can lead to serious accidents. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

! WARNING

DO NOT rely on an antilock brake system that is functioning improperly. You could lose control of the vehicle resulting in a severe accident, causing personal injury or death. If your ABS lamp goes on while you are driving or stays on after the self-check, your antilock system might not be working. The ABS may not function in an emergency. You will still have conventional brakes, but not antilock brakes. If the lamp indicates a problem, have the ABS checked. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Vehicles without ABS are typically equipped with a bobtail brake proportioning system. When a trailer is not connected, the drive axle brake application pressure will automatically be limited by the propor-

tioning system. When driven in a bobtail mode, these tractors will require greater brake pedal application to provide the equivalent braking to a bobtail tractor not equipped with a proportioning system.

Trailer ABS Power Line Communication (PLC)

North American on-highway vehicles are equipped with a separate electrical circuit to power the ABS on towed vehicle(s). In most cases, the ABS power will be supplied through the Auxiliary circuit on the primary 7-way trailer light line connector. If the vehicle was manufactured with a switchable Auxiliary circuit for trailer accessories, an additional 7-way connector would have been provided for trailer ABS power. In either case, the ABS power line on the vehicle will be PLC equipped.



WARNING

DO NOT splice into the non-switchable Auxiliary circuit on the primary 7-way trailer light line. Doing so may cause the trailer ABS to malfunction. This circuit is dedicated for trailer ABS power. To add a switchable auxiliary circuit, contact a dealership. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



NOTE

Tractors/trucks and trailers built after 03/01/2001 must be able to turn on an In-Cab Trailer ABS Warning Light (per U.S. FMVSS121). The industry chose Power Line Communication (PLC) as the standard method to turn it on. On trailers built prior to 03/01/2001, verify trailer ABS system status via the required external warning light mounted on the trailer. The indicator light on the trailer should be amber and identified with the letters ABS.

For doubles or triples, the lamp does not distinguish between trailers. An ABS problem in any of the trailers will activate the Trailer ABS Warning Lamp.

If you change the intended service in any way (for example, number of axles, multiple trailers, add switchable trailer accessories, etc.) from the date the vehicle was manufactured, you should contact your trailer manufacturer, your trailer antilock brake manufacturer, or both to determine if the power available at the 7-way trailer light line is adequate. Failure to do so might result in insufficient power to the trailer ABS system, which may affect its operation.



WARNING

Make sure the center pin of the 7-way trailer light line does not accidentally turn on trailer equipment. It might result in insufficient power to the trailer ABS system, which may affect its operation. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Special Trailer ABS Without PLC (Option)

If a trailer does not have Power Line Communication (PLC), but it does have Anti-Lock Brake Systems (ABS) that is powered through an optional second trailer connector (ISO 3731) and that trailer ABS is designed to control the Trailer ABS Warning Lamp in the cab and the vehicle has been ordered with the option to turn on this lamp for these types of trailers, then this lamp will turn on when that trailer ABS has a system problem. This should be checked by a dealer as soon as possible. The Trailer ABS Warning Lamp will not turn on for the power-on test when connected to these types of trailers.

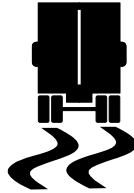
i NOTE

Very few trailers built before 03/01/2001 have this option. Trailers built after 03/01/2001 are built with PLC technology.

6.5 Advanced ABS With Stability Control

ADVANCED ABS WITH STABILITY CONTROL

Advanced ABS with Stability Control is a feature that reduces the risk of rollovers and other loss of control situations. For vehicles towing trailers, the feature can reduce the risk of a trailer jack-knifing. During operation, the system constantly compares performance models to the vehicle's actual movement. It uses the wheel speed sensors of the antilock brake system (ABS), and lateral, yaw, and steering angle sensors. If the vehicle begins to leave the appropriate travel path, the system intervenes to assist the driver.



Electronic Stability Control can reduce the vehicle speed automatically. To minimize unexpected deceleration and reduce the risk of a collision, the operator must:

- Avoid aggressive driving maneuvers, such as sharp turns or abrupt lane changes at high speeds, which can trigger the stability system.
- Always operate the vehicle safely. Drive defensively, anticipate obstacles and pay attention to road, weather, and traffic conditions. ABS, ATC, and ESC stability systems are no substitute for prudent, careful driving.

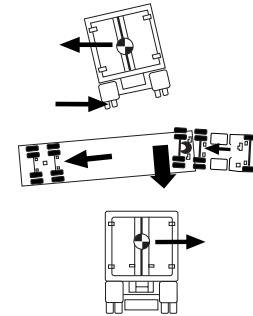
ROLL STABILITY

A REAL WORLD EXAMPLE OF HOW THE SYSTEM OPERATES

Excessive speed for road conditions creates forces that exceed the threshold at which a vehicle is likely to roll over on a

higher-friction surface. The system automatically reduces engine torque and applies the service brakes (based on the projected rollover risk) to reduce the vehicle speed, thereby reducing the tendency to roll over.

ROLL STABILITY EXAMPLE



YAW STABILITY

Yaw stability counteracts the tendency of a vehicle to spin about its vertical axis. During operation, if the friction between the road surface and the tires is not sufficient to oppose lateral (side) forces, one or more of the tires can slide, causing the truck/tractor to spin. These yaw events are referred to as either "under-steer" (where there is a lack of vehicle response to steering input

due to tire slide on the steer axle) or "over-steer" (where the tractor's rear end slides out due to tire slide on the rear axle) situation. Generally, shorter wheelbase vehicles (tractors, for instance) have less natural yaw stability, while longer wheelbase vehicles (straight trucks, for instance) have greater natural yaw stability. Factors that influence yaw stability are: wheelbase, suspension, steering geometry, weight distribution front to rear, and vehicle track width.

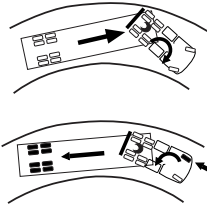
YAW CONTROL

Yaw Control responds to a wide range of low- to high-friction surface scenarios including rollover, jackknife and loss of control. In the case of vehicle slide (over-steer or understeer situations), the system will reduce the throttle and then brake one or more of the "four corners" of the vehicle (in addition to potentially applying the trailer brakes), thus applying a counter-force to better align the vehicle with an appropriate path of travel. For example, in an over-steer situation, the system applies the "outside" front brake; while in an under-steer condition, the "inside" rear brake is applied.

A REAL WORLD EXAMPLE OF HOW YAW CONTROL OPERATES

Excessive speed exceeds the threshold, creating a situation where a vehicle is likely to spin and, where applicable, jackknife. The system reduces engine throttle and selectively applies brakes to reduce the vehicle speed, thereby reducing the tendency to jackknife.

YAW CONTROL EXAMPLE



AUTOMATIC TRACTION CONTROL



Your truck/tractor ABS has an automatic traction control (ATC) feature. This feature is controlled by a switch. This feature is monitored by a warning lamp located on the switch. The Traction Control warning lamp will briefly illuminate and then go out when the ignition switch is first turned on. The traction control warning lamp will illuminate whenever the ATC system detects drive wheel spin. The lamp will remain illuminated as long as wheel spin is detected and the ATC system is applying the drive wheel brakes or reducing engine torque. Engine torque or vehicle speed should be reduced to eliminate wheel spin and prevent excessive application of the ATC system.

Except for checking for proper illumination of the ABS and traction control warning lamps when first starting the vehicle, and for monitoring these lamps while driving, no special operating procedures are required. For detailed system description, see literature for your specific ABS that was provided with your vehicle.

This feature helps improve traction when vehicles are on slippery surfaces or surfaces with poor traction (for example, mud or snow) by reducing drive wheel overspin. Automatic traction control works automatically in two different ways:

- If a drive wheel starts to spin,

Automatic Traction Control (ATC) applies air pressure to brake the wheel. This transfers engine torque to the wheels with better traction.

- If all drive wheels spin, reduces engine torque to provide improved traction.

turns itself ON and OFF. If drive wheels spin during acceleration, the warning lamp comes ON, indicating wheel spin control is active.

DEEP SNOW AND MUD SWITCH

A deep snow and mud switch is included with Automatic Traction Control (ATC). The Deep Snow and Mud feature is helpful during acceleration. This function increases available traction on extra soft surfaces like snow, mud, or gravel, by slightly increasing the permissible wheel spin. When this function is in use, the ATC Warning Lamp blinks continuously.

OFF-ROAD ABS FUNCTION SWITCH (OPTIONAL)

The vehicle can have a separate switch to activate an off-road ABS function. Do not use this function for on-highway driving. Its intended use is to improve stopping performance in off-highway conditions (for example, loose gravel and mud). The off-road

ABS function works by allowing a "wedge" of material to build-up in front of locked wheels.

- Changes the ABS control limits to allow for a more aggressive ABS function while off-road.
- Improves vehicle control and helps reduce stopping distances in off-road conditions. This feature also works on poor traction surfaces such as loose gravel, sand, and dirt.
- Allows retarders to function independently of the ABS function.
- If the vehicle does not have an engine retarder, the Off- road ABS switch functions the same.



WARNING

Off-road mode can improve vehicle control and shorten stopping distances. However, steering ability can suffer during its use on certain surfaces due to the momentary sliding of tires. Always operate the vehicle at safe operating speeds. Failure to do so can cause you to lose control of the vehicle. Failure to comply can result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



WARNING

Never drive the vehicle on paved roads and highways with the off-road ABS function switched on. When you drive the vehicle onto a paved road surface or highway, immediately turn off the off-road ABS switch. Failure to do so can cause the antilock brake system (ABS) to not function properly under 25 mph (40 km/h). Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

The ABS lamp flashes slowly during off-road mode engagement. This action is to alert you of a modification to the ABS control software. At speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h), the ABS controller operates in the normal on-highway mode. At speeds between 10 mph and 25 mph (16 km/h and 40 km/h), the ABS control software allows short periods (0.25 seconds) of locked-wheel cycles. At speeds below 10 mph (16 km/h), the ABS control software switches off to allow locked wheels. When the off-road ABS function is active, the Retarder Disable output switches off. This action leaves the engine retarders to function without ABS intervention. For additional information, see the Off-Road ABS pamphlet in the vehicle's glove box.

EFFECTIVENESS AND LIMITATIONS

ESC is designed and optimized for trucks and for tractors that tow single trailers. If a tractor equipped with ESC is used to power multiple trailer combinations (known as "doubles" or "triples") the effectiveness of the ESC system may be greatly reduced.



WARNING

Exercise extreme care when towing doubles or triples with a vehicle equipped with electronic stability control (ESC). Excessive speed and aggressive maneuvers, such as sharp turns, sudden steering inputs, and abrupt lane changes should all be avoided as they could cause a loss of vehicle control. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Additionally, the ESC stability system's effectiveness may be greatly reduced if:

- The load shifts due to improper retention, accident damage or the inherently mobile nature of some loads (for example, hanging meat, live animals or partially laden tankers).
- The vehicle has an unusually high or

offset center of gravity (CG).

- One side of the vehicle drops off the pavement at an angle that is too large to be counteracted by a reduction in speed.
- The vehicle is used to haul double or triple trailer combinations.
- Very rapidly winding steering inputs are inputted at high speeds.
- There are mechanical problems with suspension leveling of the tractor or trailer resulting in uneven loads.
- The vehicle is maneuvering on a high banked road creating either additional side forces due to the weight (mass) of the vehicle or a deviation between expected and actual yaw rates.
- Gusty winds are strong enough to cause significant side forces on the vehicle and any towed vehicles.

To maximize the effectiveness of ESC:

- Loads must be properly secured and evenly distributed at all times.
- Drivers need to exercise extreme caution at all times, and avoid sharp turns, sudden steering inputs or abrupt lane changes at high speeds, particularly if:
 - The vehicle hauls loads that could shift
 - The vehicle or load has a high or

offset center of gravity (CG) when loaded

- The vehicle tows doubles or triples

The ESC system was specifically calibrated and validated only for your vehicle's original factory-built configuration. If your vehicle's chassis components are altered (for example; a wheelbase extension or reduction, tag axle addition or removal, tractor to truck conversion or steering system component change) the ESC system must be disabled immediately by a qualified mechanic.



WARNING

Any modification to a vehicle with Electronic Stability Control (ESC) may result in a loss of vehicle control or non-compliance with Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards. Modifications include but are not limited to changes to the vehicle's axle weight ratings, number of axles, front and rear suspension, wheelbase length or frame, steering controls, or intended body type and size. A modified vehicle with ESC must be evaluated by a qualified technician before it can be operated. Contact your authorized dealer for evaluations. Failure to comply may result in death, personal

injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

For vehicles equipped with ESC (Electronic Stability Control) DO NOT replace the steering wheel with any model other than the one originally supplied. Use of an aftermarket wheel or wheel with a different part number could cause the ESC to malfunction, resulting in a loss of vehicle control. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Whenever maintenance or repair work is performed to the steering mechanism, linkage, gear, adjustment of the wheel track, or if the steering angle sensor is replaced or the steering wheel is changed or re-centered, the Steering Angle Sensor must be re-calibrated.

 **WARNING**

On chassis equipped with Electronic Stability Control (ESC), recalibrate the steering angle sensor when servicing, removing, or replacing any part of

the steering system. The steering system includes, but is not limited to the wheels, steering column, tie rods, steering rack, and the steering angle sensor itself. The sensor should also be recalibrated in the event of airbag deployment. An uncalibrated steering angle sensor could result in a loss of vehicle control. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

6.6 Towing Doubles or Triples Can Reduce the Effectiveness of Stability Systems

ESC works best for trucks, and for tractors that tow single trailers. If a tractor equipped with an ESC tows multiple trailer combinations (known as "doubles" or "triples"), it reduces the effectiveness of the ESC system.

 **WARNING**

Exercise extreme care when towing doubles or triples with a vehicle equipped with electronic stability control (ESC). Excessive speed and aggres-

sive maneuvers, such as sharp turns, sudden steering inputs, and abrupt lane changes should all be avoided as they could cause a loss of vehicle control. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Additionally, a significant reduction of the ESC effectiveness occurs if:

- The load shifts due to improper retention. Also, accident damage or the inherently mobile nature of some loads (for example, hanging meat, live animals or partially laden tankers).
- The vehicle has an unusually high or offset Center of Gravity (CG).
- One side of the vehicle drops off the pavement at an angle that speed reduction cannot compensate for.
- You use the vehicle to haul double or triple trailer combinations.
- If you apply rapidly changing steering inputs at high speeds
- There are mechanical problems with suspension leveling of the tractor or trailer resulting in uneven loads.
- If the vehicle maneuvers on a high-banked road, this action creates additional side forces due to the weight (mass) of the vehicle. It can also cause

a deviation between expected and actual yaw rates.

- Gusty winds are strong enough to cause significant side forces on the vehicle and any towed vehicles.

To maximize the effectiveness of ESC:

- Always properly secure, and evenly distribute the load.
- Drivers must exercise extreme caution always. Precautions must include: the avoidance of sharp turns, sudden steering inputs or abrupt lane changes at high speeds. This caution is important if:
 - The vehicle hauls loads that could shift
 - The vehicle or load has a high or offset Center of Gravity (CG) of when loaded
 - The vehicle tows doubles or triples

PACCAR tuned and validated the ESC system for the vehicle's original factory-built configuration only. It is possible to alter the vehicle's chassis components after purchase. Some examples include: a wheel-base extension or reduction, tag axle addition or removal, tractor to truck conversion or steering system change.

NOTE

If the vehicle configuration changes after purchase, the system calibration no longer applies. **The ESC system must be disabled immediately** by a qualified technician.

WARNING

Any modification to a vehicle with Electronic Stability Control (ESC) may result in a loss of vehicle control or non-compliance with Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards. Modifications include but are not limited to changes to the vehicle's axle weight ratings, number of axles, front and rear suspension, wheel-base length or frame, steering controls, or intended body type and size. A modified vehicle with ESC must be evaluated by a qualified technician before it can be operated. Contact your authorized dealer for evaluations. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

For vehicles equipped with ESC (Electronic Stability Control) DO NOT replace the steering wheel with any model other than the one originally supplied. Use of an aftermarket wheel or wheel with a different part number could cause the ESC to malfunction, resulting in a loss of vehicle control. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

When certain maintenance or repair work occurs, **the Steering Angle Sensor must be re calibrated**. Some maintenance actions that demand this are: adjustments of linkage, gear, or wheel track. Also when replacing the steering angle sensor, and when changing or re-centering the steering wheel.

WARNING

On chassis equipped with Electronic Stability Control (ESC), recalibrate the steering angle sensor when servicing, removing, or replacing any part of the steering system. The steering system includes, but is not limited to the wheels, steering column, tie rods, steer-

ing rack, and the steering angle sensor itself. The sensor should also be recalibrated in the event of airbag deployment. An uncalibrated steering angle sensor could result in a loss of vehicle control. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

6.7 Retarders

Various retarders are available, which function against the engine, driveline, or transmission. These are devices that use the engine's power to slow down the vehicle. They reduce brake wear and tear and the need for continuous brake use, which can lead to the service brakes overheating. Ideally, you must always slow the vehicle with the retarder (where permitted by law) and use the service brakes only for stopping completely. Operating this way prolongs the life of the brakes.

WARNING

The service brakes must be used in an emergency. Retarders alone (such as the engine brake, exhaust brake, transmission retarder, or regenerative braking) might not stop the vehicle fast

enough to prevent an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

DO NOT use a retarder (such as the engine brake, exhaust brake, transmission retarder, or regenerative braking) when operating on road surfaces with poor traction (such as wet, icy, or snow covered roads, or gravel). Retarders can cause the wheels to skid on a slippery surface. You could lose control of the vehicle or jackknife if the wheels begin to skid, resulting in an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

The intent of the retarder is NOT to use as the primary brake for the vehicle, nor is it an emergency brake. The retarder only helps the service brakes by using pressure to slow the drivetrain. Use the service brakes for quick stops. Do not use the retarder when operating on road surfaces with poor traction (such as wet, icy, or snow-covered roads or gravel). Retarders can cause the wheels to skid on a slippery surface.

PACCAR recommends not to use the engine retarder to slow down when you bobtail or pull an empty trailer.

WARNING

DO NOT use a retarder (such as the engine brake, exhaust brake, transmission retarder, or regenerative braking) when operating your vehicle bobtail or with an unloaded trailer. There may not be enough weight on the rear axle to provide traction, causing a loss of vehicle control, resulting in an accident. Make sure the engine brake is switched "OFF" when bobtailing or operating with an unloaded trailer. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

This vehicle can have a transmission retarder. Take your foot off the throttle. Then operate the retarder switch. When you do not need a full retarder effect, you can apply it intermittently (off and on) to cause gradual or partial slowing. Continuous application of the retarder causes the hydraulic fluid to get hotter. Intermittent application helps prevent overheating.



WARNING

DO NOT rely only on a retarder (such as the engine brake, exhaust brake, transmission retarder, or regenerative braking) to stop your vehicle. If your engine shuts down, the retarder will cease to operate. Always be ready to apply the service brakes. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

7 AXLE AND SUSPENSION

7.1 Differential Lock



The vehicle may be equipped with switches to lock either of the rear axle differentials. Depending on how the vehicle is specified, a combination of individual switches may be available that can lock the interaxle driveline and/or any combination of the forward

rear or rear-rear driving axles. The interaxle differential switch allows each axle to turn independently. In certain situations, engaging the interaxle differential lock relieves stress on the rear axles and reduces tire wear. Engaging this switch will also provide better traction in slippery or loose gravel conditions.

In the LOCK position, continuous operation on paved, dry surfaces, put stress on the axles, and can possibly damage the internal gears. The switch has a guard to prevent accidental operation of the switch. Locking the differentials is typically used during ice or snow conditions and without tire chains, unpaved roads that have loose sand, mud or uneven surfaces. Look ahead and predict when the differential needs to be locked. Stop the vehicle and lock the differentials before approaching.

While using the differential in the locked position, do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h). When disengaging the differential lock, reduce the throttle to prevent drivetrain damage.

WARNING

DO NOT put the differential lock in the LOCK position while the wheels are spinning freely (slipping). You could lose control of the vehicle or cause axle

damage. Switch to LOCK only when the wheels are not spinning. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

7.2 Dual Range (Two-Speed) Rear Axle

DUAL RANGE (TWO-SPEED) REAR AXLE



Your vehicle may be equipped with a two-speed or dual range axle (option). The low range provides maximum torque for hauling heavy loads or traveling over rough terrain. The high range is a faster ratio for highway speeds and general over-the-road conditions. A switch on the accessory switch panel controls the dual range rear axle. The switch has a guard to prevent accidental activation. Always park your vehicle with the range selector in LOW.

Important tips on operating a dual range axle with inter-axle differential:

- Shift the axle with the inter-axle differential in the unlocked position

only.

- When you are driving with poor traction, lock the differential. When you have the differential locked, drive with the axle in LOW range only.
- When you are driving on a surface with good traction, keep the inter-axle differential unlocked. You can drive with the axle in the LOW or HIGH range.
- Always UNLOCK the inter-axle differential before shifting the axle speed range.



WARNING

DO NOT shift the axle when moving downhill. Engine driveline disengagement may occur, eliminating engine retardation and allowing the wheels to spin faster than the current speed of the engine. This may require severe braking to slow the vehicle down and can result in an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.



CAUTION

Never shift the axle range with the differential locked. If you shift the axle range with the inter-axle differential in

LOCK, you could seriously damage the axles. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

Proper shifting of the axle depends on the synchronization of engine/driveline and wheel speed. When you shift the axle, the connection between the engine and wheels is momentarily disengaged while the gearing is synchronized. Normally when the axle shifts the speed of the engine, axle, and wheels adjust, allowing for proper gear engagement.

When the vehicle is going downhill, the wheels tend to speed up, which makes gear synchronization almost impossible. As a result, the axle is neither in HIGH nor LOW range and all engine/driveline retardation is lost. Without engine retardation, it is more difficult to slow the vehicle down and greater stress is put on the brake system.



CAUTION

Shift the axle at slower travel speeds until you are used to driving with a dual range axle to avoid damaging your vehicle's axles. The inter-axle differential must be in the unlocked position before shifting the axle speed range.

Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

HOW TO OPERATE TWO-SPEED AXLE - LOW TO HIGH

These steps should be used if operating a two-speed axle in LOW range on rough terrain and preparing to drive on an improved surface.

When you go from rough terrain to highway driving, shift the axle to the HIGH range following this procedure:

1. Be sure the differential is UNLOCKED.
2. Maintain your vehicle speed (accelerator depressed) and move the Range Selector lever to HIGH.
3. Keep driving with the accelerator depressed until you want the axle to shift.
4. To make the axle shift, release the accelerator until the axle shifts. You are now in the HIGH axle range for highway speeds. Shift the transmission normally to reach your desired cruising speed.

HOW TO OPERATE TWO-SPEED AXLE - HIGH TO LOW

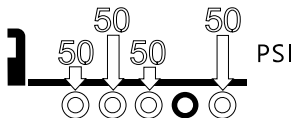
These steps should be used if operating a two-speed axle in HIGH range on improved roads and preparing to drive on rough terrain.

When you go from highway driving to rough terrain, shift the axle to the LOW range following this procedure:

1. Maintain vehicle speed (accelerator depressed) and move the Range Selector lever to LOW.
2. Keep driving with the accelerator depressed until you want the axle to downshift.
3. To make the axle downshift, release and depress the accelerator quickly to increase the engine rpm. The axle will shift to LOW range.
4. You are now in the LOW axle range for rough terrain and heavy loads. Shift the transmission normally to maintain the desired speed.

7.3 Auxiliary Axle

AUXILIARY AXLE



Adjustable auxiliary axles (commonly known as Pusher or Tag axles) can add to the productivity of the vehicle by increasing the load capabilities of the vehicle when they are in the deployed (down) position.

There are different configurations of axles with different functionality (liftable versus steerable). Some configurations are capable of showing a pressure and/or position graphic on the instrument cluster that looks like the picture above matched to the axles on the vehicle. Without the extra axle, the excessive weight can reduce the service life of vehicle components such as, but not limited to, the frame rail, axles, suspension and brakes.

Operation of the auxiliary axles includes the proper maintenance of the system and calibration of its controls. Operating the auxiliary axles will also require a firm understanding of the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) and the load that is being carried.

The vehicle will have switches on the dash to control the position of the auxiliary axles. In certain situations, however, the system will override the controls to protect the axle system. For Self Steering Lift Axles, the axle will raise when the park brakes are applied or if the vehicle is placed in reverse. For Non-Steer Lift Axles, the axle will only automatically raise if the park brakes are applied and there are no park brakes on the lift axle. Non-Steer Lift Axles do not automatically raise when the vehicle is placed in reverse.

Operating the auxiliary liftable axles must be performed in a manner that does not exceed the axle creep rating. Axle creep ratings are weight and speed limits that are allowed while the vehicle is fully loaded (in excess of the vehicle's standard GAWR) and the axle is in its up position. Axle creep ratings are assigned by the axle manufacturer and are based on axle model and intended service of the vehicle. Contact an authorized dealership if you are unable to identify the axle creep rating of this vehicle.

- Liftable/steerable (axle lift calibration required)
- Liftable/non-steerable (axle lift calibration required)
- Non-liftable (some suspensions require dump valve calibration)

**WARNING**

If the vehicle is unladen or being unloaded, DO NOT operate or park the vehicle with its auxiliary axles in the down or loaded position unless those axles are equipped with (and are using) parking brakes. This could result in a loss of vehicle control or roll-away. Raise auxiliary axles that lack park brakes prior to unloading the vehicle. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

ADJUSTABLE LIFT AXLES

Vehicles with liftable auxiliary (AUX) axles have knobs available to adjust the pressure in the AUX axle suspension. These knobs are in addition to the tag and pusher axle switches that control the axle position. Adding more pressure to the AUX axle increases the pressure the AUX axle pushes down. Increasing pressure decreases load on the drive axles and decreases traction. Decreasing pressure transfers more weight to the drive axles and results in more traction from the drive axles.

Deflate the AUX axle suspension before coupling or uncoupling a trailer. When initially coupled or uncoupled, increase pressure to balance traction and axle load requirements. Inflate air springs of the AUX axles to the desired pressure after coupling to a loaded trailer. Make sure that you maintain proper traction of the drive-axles. To obtain the desired traction, adjust the pressure regulator control knob to a lower pressure. By reducing air pressure at the pusher or tag axle, you can transfer the load to the drive axles. Do not overload drive axles.


Always deflate the air springs of the AUX axles before attempting to unload the vehicle. This action allows maximum traction of the driving axles to control the vehicle. Calibrations can change depending on the suspension. Contact an authorized dealer or axle/suspension manufacturer for specific calibration procedures. Some suspensions require dump valve calibration. For example, some dead axles do not lift. You can dump the air out of them to unload them when empty. You control air pressure via an adjustable regulator. Calibrate these axles for load. Contact an authorized dealer or axle/suspension manufacturer for dump valve calibration procedures.

AXLE CREEP RATING


Vehicles outfitted with auxiliary axles and full truck configuration will have an axle creep rating which defines how much load is allowed when the vehicle has a full load and maneuvering the vehicle, at very slow speeds, with auxiliary axles in the up position. In these situations, the load exceeds the gross axle weight rating of the axles. Operators using vehicles equipped with liftable auxiliary axles must consider creep ratings when any liftable axle is unloaded or in the raised position. Liftable auxiliary axles should only be raised (or unloaded) to improve maneuverability in an off-road use or when vehicle is unloaded.

**WARNING**


Always calibrate lift axles to the correct pressure to carry the load. An incorrectly calibrated lift axle can result in an overloaded frame, increased braking distances, or a loss of traction and stability. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **CAUTION**


DO NOT exceed Axle Creep ratings. Exceeding the creep ratings can damage the frame, suspension, and axles by overloading them. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

 **CAUTION**

Always lower the axles as soon as possible after receiving a load. Never exceed 5 mph (8 km/h) when driving with a load with the auxiliary axle(s) raised/unloaded. Not lowering the axle(s) can overload the frame and remaining axles. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

 **CAUTION**

DO NOT modify the air system or control functionality on a factory installed auxiliary axle. Modifying the factory-intended operation of a pusher axle or tag axle will void the warranty and can cause damage. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

 **CAUTION**

Repeat suspension calibration procedures when installing tires with a different loaded radius from tires on the other drive, steer, or auxiliary axles. Installing tires with a different loaded radius can affect the load received by other axles. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

Contact your dealer or axle manufacturer to determine what the creep rating is for your particular axle(s) and configuration. Creep ratings are generally limited to the following:

- Tandem rear axles only
- Straight trucks only
- Maximum spring mount centers per axle manufacturers specifications
- Maximum tire static loaded radius (SLR) per axle manufacturers specifications

PUSHER OR TAG SUSPENSION CALIBRATION

Perform this procedure at or near a weight scale. Procedure can be performed while parked on the weight scale if scale is available. To obtain the desired axle load distribution, you must correlate the suspension

air gauge pressure to the actual axle load by scaling the axle weight(s) and adjusting the pressure to obtain the desired load. Once the desired load or load range is achieved, document the pressure-to-load ratio or setting for future use.

 **NOTE**

This procedure must be performed prior to placing the vehicle into service.

Setting the Pressure-to-Load Ratio To obtain the desired axle load distribution, you must correlate the suspension air gauge pressure to the actual axle load by scaling the axle weight(s) and adjusting the pressure to obtain the desired load. Once the desired load or load range is achieved, document the pressure-to-load ratio or setting for future use.

These instructions are general in nature. For more specific instructions, review the pusher or tag suspension manufacturer's maintenance manual or contact the nearest authorized dealer.

1. Park the loaded vehicle on a level surface with the wheels blocked.
2. Release vehicles spring brakes. (Do not release the Lifiable/Non-Steerable pusher or tag axles.)
3. Lower the pusher/tag axles with the **Axle Lift Control** flip valve. (For

some non-liftable axles, inflate air suspension.)

- Adjust the amount of load on each axle by turning the **Pressure Regulator** clockwise to increase the load, or counterclockwise to decrease the load. (The suspension manufacturer may publish pre-established Pressure-to-Load Ratio Pressure Settings to assist you in achieving an estimated ground load.)
- After setting the pressure to obtain the desired axle load, verify proper ground loading with the weight scale.

i **NOTE**

Exceeding local, state, or federal weight limits may result in citations. Contact your local commercial weight enforcement office for limits in your area.

i **NOTE**

Steerable-pusher and/or tag axle(s) will raise when the transmission is shifted into reverse or when the parking brake is applied.

7.4 Air Suspension Ride Height

AIR SUSPENSION RIDE HEIGHT

Vehicles equipped with rear or front air suspensions have their ride height and axle (pinion) angle(s) preset at the factory. These are precision settings and should not be altered. Incorrectly adjusted ride height may result in improper interaxle U-joint working angles. This can result in premature driveline wear and driveline vibration.

If it becomes necessary to reset the ride height, you may temporarily set it by following the next procedure. Proper ride height measurement and values are shown in the illustration and table below.

⚠ CAUTION

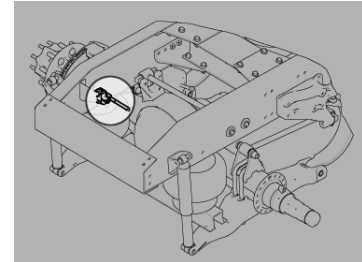
To avoid drive-line damage, adjust the suspension ride height only when improper inter-axle u-joint angles exist and immediately drive to the nearest authorized dealer or repair facility. The ride height and pinion angle should be reset using the proper technique and equipment. Failure to comply may result

in equipment damage or property damage.

i **NOTE**

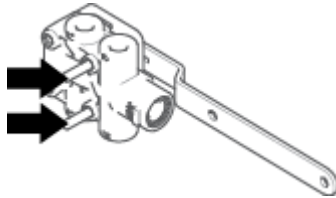
Suitable wheel chocks are at a minimum 18 in. (46 cm) long 4x4.

- Park the vehicle, engage the parking brake and chock the wheels.
- Locate the air suspension ride height valve.

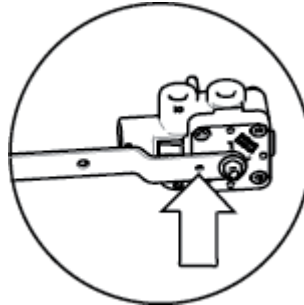


- Ensure that the tractor is fully laden during this procedure. Do not use these procedures on a vehicle that is not laden (bobtail).
- Ensure the air supply and delivery plumbing of the height control valve is consistent with the following illustrations.
- Loosen the fasteners mounting the

height control valve to its bracket.



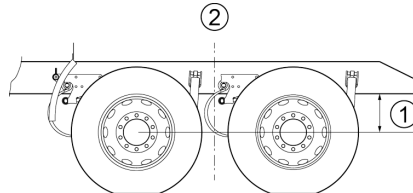
6. Rotate the valve either clockwise or counterclockwise until air pressure in the air springs provides the ride height specified for that suspension. Measure the ride height from the bottom of the frame rail to the approximate centerline of the rearmost drive axle hub:
 - For tandem axles, make the vertical measurement at the centerline of the suspension.
 - For a single axle, make the measurement in front of the axle, in the area forward of the tires but not past the suspension bracket.
7. When at the correct ride height (Refer to Air Ride Height Data), place the height control valve lever in the neutral position, and install either the built-in alignment pin or a 1/8 in. (3 mm) dowel.



8. Torque the mounting fasteners to 55-75 lb-in. (6.2-8.5 N·m).
9. Remove the alignment pin or dowel.
10. Repeat Steps 2 through 6 above for the right-hand valve on vehicles with a dual-valve system.

AIR RIDE HEIGHT DATA

These are factory settings for ride height of the rear air suspension.



1. Ride height
2. Centerline of suspension

Single Axle	Laden Ride Height -in. (mm)
Air Trac	11.00 (279)
Low Air Leaf	6.50 (165)

Single Axle	Unladen Ride Height -in. (mm)
Air Trac	11.39 (289)
Low Air Leaf	6.75 (171)

Tandem Axle	Laden Ride Height -in. (mm)
Air Leaf	11.70 (297)
Air Trac	11.00 (279)
Low Air Leaf	8.50 (216)
Low Low Air Leaf	6.50 (165)
FLEX Air	8.50 (216)

Tandem Axle	Unladen Ride Height -in. (mm)
Air Leaf	12.0 (305)
Air Trac	11.38 (289)
Low Air Leaf	8.75 (222)
Low Low Air Leaf	6.75 (171)
FLEX Air	8.75 (222)

7.5 What to do if an Air Spring Ruptures

If an air spring has ruptured, drive the vehicle to a safe stop off the highway to investigate the problem.

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT drive a vehicle with ruptured air springs. The air loss can cause the spring brakes to apply, dragging the brakes and burning up the linings. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT drive the vehicle if the air pressure is less than 100 psi (6.89 bar/689 kPa). Driving the vehicle with less than 100 psi (6.89 bar/689 kPa) could make the brakes unsafe to use which could result in an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

⚠ CAUTION

Operating a vehicle with air suspension bags either overinflated or underinflated may cause damage to driveline components. If a vehicle must be operated under such conditions, DO NOT exceed 5 mph (8 km/h). Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

You can get to a repair facility by removing the height control link connected to the axle and to the suspension air valve control arm. This will cause the air valve control arm to center in the closed position. Removing the link will allow the air system of the vehicle to operate normally so that the vehicle can be driven to a service center.

7.6 Suspension Air Pressure Gauge & Switch



Your vehicle may have an air suspension and a deflation switch which allows the air in the suspension to be exhausted from a switch on the dash. The normal purpose of

this feature is to lower the vehicle for loading. A guard on the switch prevents accidental deflation of the suspension. The Suspension Air Pressure gauge (optional) indicates the amount of air pressure in the air suspension springs in pounds per square inch (psi). Air pressure in the spring is related to the rear axle load. The greater the rear axle load, the greater the air pressure in the air bags. Therefore, the air pressure displayed will vary, depending upon the rear axle load.

8 TRAILER OPERATIONS

8.1 How to Lock the Kingpin

Ensure that the fifth wheel lock is in the unlocked position.

⚠ WARNING

Always inspect the fifth wheel for proper locking after coupling the tractor to a trailer. Ensure the kingpin is engaged in a closed and locked jaw and that there is no gap between the fifth wheel top plate and the trailer upper-coupler plate. If these requirements are not met, the trailer may separate and cause an accident. Failure to comply may result in

death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

To lock the fifth wheel around the kingpin:

1. Ensure trailer brakes are locked and the landing gear is down.
2. Back the tractor fifth wheel into the trailer kingpin to engage and lock.

Figure 31: JOST Fifth Wheel Indication (Optional Indicator)



If equipped with JOST fifth wheel

3. Pull the tractor forward to ensure the kingpin has been locked in place.
4. Set the tractor parking brake.
5. Connect the tractor brake air and electric lines to the trailer.

Conduct a pre-trip inspection prior to releasing the brakes, raising the landing gear, and driving the vehicle.

8.2 Releasing the Kingpin Remotely (option)

CAUTION

DO NOT deflate the rear suspension before unlocking the fifth wheel. Deflating the rear suspension before unlocking the fifth wheel could cause difficulty during uncoupling and result in damage to the fifth wheel and kingpin. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

1. Set both the vehicle and trailer parking brakes.
2. Lower the landing gear.
3. Disconnect the tractor brake air and electric lines from the trailer.
4. Flip up cover, then press and hold the **Kingpin Release** switch for 3 seconds. A countdown timer notification will appear on the display, and the unlock symbol on the **Kingpin Release** switch will illuminate.
The notification will inform the operator when to release the switch.

Figure 32: JOST Fifth Wheel Indication (option)



If equipped with JOST Fifth Wheel

NOTE

The fifth wheel will not unlock unless the vehicle is stopped and the parking brake is set. In this situation, a red-colored notification appears, informing the operator that kingpin release is not available and to set the parking brake. This will require restarting this procedure.

5. Release the switch.
The unlock symbol on the **Kingpin Release** switch will turn off.
6. Ease tractor forward enough for the kingpin to clear the fifth wheel (about 12 to 18 inches).

i NOTE

DO NOT drive tractor free of trailer.

- If the tractor has a rear air suspension, deflate (dump) the rear suspension enough so that the fifth wheel will smoothly separate from the trailer.

Figure 33: Suspension Dump Symbol



- Ease tractor forward, clearing the trailer.
- If the rear suspension was deflated, return rear suspension to its normal height.

8.3 Releasing the Kingpin Manually

▲ CAUTION

DO NOT deflate the rear suspension before unlocking the fifth wheel. Deflating the rear suspension before unlock-

ing the fifth wheel could cause difficulty during uncoupling and result in damage to the fifth wheel and kingpin. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

i NOTE

The specific method required to operate the fifth wheel release handle will depend on the fifth wheel manufacturer and model. The operator should be familiar with this method prior to attempting this procedure.

To release the kingpin and separate tractor from trailer

- Position the tractor and trailer in a straight line on firm, level ground.
- Set both the tractor and trailer parking brakes.
- Exit cab and lower the trailer landing gear.
- Disconnect brake air and electric lines from trailer, and secure lines.
- Unlock the fifth wheel release handle if necessary, then unlock the fifth wheel.

i NOTE

Operating the release handle and unlocking the fifth wheel will depend on the fifth wheel manufacturer.

- Return to cab and release tractor parking brake.
- Ease tractor forward enough for the kingpin to clear the fifth wheel (about 12 to 18 inches).

i NOTE

DO NOT drive tractor free of trailer.

- If the tractor has a rear air suspension, deflate (dump) the rear suspension enough so that the fifth wheel will smoothly separate from the trailer.

Figure 34: Suspension Dump Symbol



- Ease tractor forward, clearing the trailer.

10. If the rear suspension was deflated, return rear suspension to its normal height.

8.4 Air-Controlled Sliding Fifth Wheel

AIR-CONTROLLED SLIDING FIFTH WHEEL



The Air-Controlled Sliding Fifth Wheel is an optional feature for these vehicles. These vehicles have a fifth wheel slider lock controlled by a switch on the accessory switch panel. To operate this type of lock, move the switch to the appropriate position. By placing the switch in the UNLOCK position, you can slide the fifth wheel to various positions to adjust weight distribution. There is a guard on this switch to protect you against accidentally activating or releasing the lock.

WARNING

DO NOT move the fifth wheel while the tractor-trailer is in motion. Your load could shift suddenly, causing you to lose control of the vehicle. Never operate the vehicle with the switch in the UNLOCK position. Always inspect the fifth wheel after you lock the switch to be sure the fifth wheel slide lock is engaged. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

HOW TO SLIDE THE FIFTH WHEEL

WARNING

DO NOT move the fifth wheel while the tractor-trailer is in motion. Your load could shift suddenly, causing you to lose control of the vehicle. Never operate the vehicle with the switch in the UNLOCK position. Always inspect the fifth wheel after you lock the switch to be sure the fifth wheel slide lock is engaged. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

DO NOT attempt to slide the fifth wheel until all persons and obstacles are clear of the vehicle. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

NOTE

This procedure assumes a connected trailer. The trailer kingpin must be locked within the fifth wheel when changing slide positions.

1. Position the tractor and trailer in a straight line on firm, level ground.
2. Place the tractor in neutral, and set the tractor and trailer parking brakes.

CAUTION

Ensure the tractor and trailer brakes are engaged prior to sliding the fifth wheel. Not engaging the brakes could result in uncontrolled sliding of the fifth wheel and damage the tractor or trailer. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

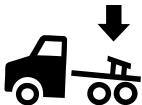
Unlock the slide by repositioning the Fifth Wheel Slide switch.

Figure 35: Fifth Wheel Slide Symbol



- 4. Inspect and verify that locking plungers have fully withdrawn from the fifth wheel slide tracks.
 - a. If locking plungers did not fully withdraw, move tractor slightly to reposition plungers and reinspect.
 - b. If plungers are still not fully withdrawn, lower the landing gear and deflate the rear suspension (if available) to lessen pressure on the slide.

Figure 36: Suspension Dump Symbol



- 5. Release the tractor parking brake, but keep the trailer brake engaged.
- 6. Slowly ease tractor forward or backward, and stop at the desired position.

- 7. Lock the slide by returning the Fifth Wheel Slide switch to its previous position.
- 8. Inspect and verify that the locking plungers are fully inserted into the fifth wheel slide tracks.

a.

	WARNING
<p>DO NOT operate the vehicle unless the locking plungers are fully inserted into the fifth wheel slide track. Operating the vehicle while the plungers are not fully inserted could lead to the slide moving unexpectedly, resulting in a loss of vehicle control. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.</p>	

If the locking plungers are not fully inserted in the track, move the tractor slightly to reposition plungers and reinspect.

- 9. If the landing gear was lowered, raise the landing gear.
- 10. If the rear suspension was deflated, return rear suspension to its normal height.

CHAPTER 5: MAINTENANCE

1	New Vehicle Maintenance Schedule.....	178
2	Maintenance Schedule.....	181
3	Air System.....	208
4	Air Gauges and Air Leaks.....	209
5	Air Compressor.....	211
6	Air Dryer Maintenance.....	211
7	Air Tanks.....	213
8	Air Tank Maintenance.....	213
9	Dual Air System Function Test.....	213
10	Greenhouse Gas Certified Configuration.....	214
11	Brake System.....	221
12	Cab Maintenance.....	223
13	Cooling System Maintenance.....	228
14	Driveline.....	233
15	Electrical System.....	233
16	Engine Maintenance.....	242
17	Frame.....	249
18	Fuel System.....	250
19	Heater and Air Conditioner Maintenance.....	251
20	Lighting.....	253
21	Lubricants.....	256

22	Noise and Emission Control.....	257
23	Seating and Restraints.....	261
24	Steering System.....	262
25	Tires.....	265
26	Transmission Maintenance.....	268
27	Wheels.....	268
28	Windshield Wiper/Washer.....	270
29	Specification Reference Charts.....	271
30	Over-the-Air (OTA) Software Updates.....	281

1 NEW VEHICLE MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

1.1 First Day

First Day
Perform a total vehicle alignment once a body is installed on the truck chassis.
Steering U-joint Pinch Bolt <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to Steering Shaft Bolt Torque Specifications on page 264 for maintenance instructions.
Front Suspension - U-bolts <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the general condition and the tightness of the nuts. Tighten the U-bolts using a calibrated torque wrench to the specified torque value. (Refer to Suspension U-Bolts, Grade 8 on page 276 for maintenance instructions.)
Front Suspension - SOFTEK™ NXT (Hendrickson) - Shock Absorbers <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Hendrickson manual provided with your vehicle for more information.
Front Suspension - SOFTEK™ NXT (Hendrickson) - Spring Pins and Shackles <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Hendrickson manual provided with your vehicle for more information.
Front Suspension - SOFTEK™ NXT (Hendrickson) - Ride Height <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Hendrickson manual provided with your vehicle.
Front Axle - SOFTEK™ NXT (Hendrickson) - Axle Clamp Through Bolts <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Hendrickson manual provided with your vehicle.

1.2 First 50-100 mi / 80-160 km

First 50-100 mi / 80-160 km¹
Wheel Mounting <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to Wheels on page 268 for maintenance instructions.

¹ Ensure that all maintenance intervals leading up to this point are repeated during this interval prior to the completion of those listed here.

1.3 First 500 mi / 800 km

First 500 mi / 800 km¹
<p>Front Axle U-Bolt Torque</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to Suspension U-Bolts, Grade 8 on page 276 for maintenance instructions.
<p>Charge Air Cooler and Air Intake Pipe Clamps</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Retorque fasteners. Refer to Pipe and Hose Clamp Torque Values on page 245 for maintenance instructions.

¹ Ensure that all maintenance intervals leading up to this point are repeated during this interval prior to the completion of those listed here.

1.4 First 2,000 mi / 3,218 km

First 2,000 mi / 3,218 km¹
<p>Rear Suspension Fasteners</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to Rear Axle and Suspension on page 218 for maintenance instructions.

¹ Ensure that all maintenance intervals leading up to this point are repeated during this interval prior to the completion of those listed here.

1.5 First 3,000-5,000 mi / 4,800-8,000 km

First 3,000-5,000 mi / 4,800-8,000 km¹
<p>Transmission Lubrication</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to Transmission Operator's Manual for maintenance instructions.
<p>Axle Lubrication.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For Meritor axle, refer to the Meritor manual provided with your vehicle for maintenance instructions. For Eaton/Dana axle, refer to the Eaton/Dana manual provided with your vehicle for maintenance instructions.

¹ Ensure that all maintenance intervals leading up to this point are repeated during this interval prior to the completion of those listed here.

2 MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

2.1 Maintenance Schedule

Preventive maintenance program begins with the daily and weekly routine checks Daily Checks on page 25. Routine vehicle checks can help avoid many large, expensive, and time consuming repairs. The vehicle will operate better, be safer, and last longer. Neglect of recommended maintenance can void your vehicle's warranty. Some maintenance operations demand skills and equipment you may not have. For such situations, please take your vehicle to an authorized Service Center.



WARNING

Turn off the vehicle and allow it to cool before working near engine or exhaust components. Hot vehicle fluids and components can burn skin on contact. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



WARNING

If the engine must be running to inspect, be alert and cautious around the engine at all times. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



WARNING

If work must be done with the engine running, always:

- Ensure that the transmission is in neutral (**N**) or park (**P**)
- Set the parking brake
- Block the wheels

Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



WARNING

DO NOT wear loose-fitting or torn clothing, jewelry or accessories, or loose hairstyles. Loose or dangling materials can get caught in fan blades or other moving parts. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



WARNING

Always support the vehicle with appropriate safety stands if it is necessary to work underneath the vehicle. A jack is not adequate for this purpose. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



WARNING

When working underneath the vehicle with the wheels on the ground (not supported), make sure that:

- The vehicle is on hard, level ground.
- The parking brake is applied.
- All wheels are blocked (front and rear).
- The start switch key is removed to prevent the vehicle from starting.

Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage or property damage.



WARNING

Never start or let the engine run in an enclosed, unventilated area. Engine

exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas. Carbon monoxide can be fatal if inhaled. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

Disconnect the battery ground cable whenever you work on the fuel system or the electrical system. When you work around fuel, DO NOT smoke or work near heaters or other fire hazards. Keep an approved fire extinguisher near to you. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

The following pages contain a table of maintenance tasks with the related intervals for each task on the right side of the table. The top of the table displays a guide to a maintenance interval and its schedule. Some tasks are dependent on the vehicle application. These tasks will be shown as separate tasks and will have the words "ON HIGHWAY", "CITY DELIVERY" or "OFF-HIGHWAY" after the description. These tasks are differentiated because they are dependent on the vehicle's operating environment. On highway is defined for applica-

tions where the vehicle is NOT used off of a paved road during normal operation. City Delivery is defined for applications where frequent start and stopping is required during normal operation and the highway is used infrequently and for short periods of time.

Off highway is defined for applications where the vehicle may be driven off the pavement on a regular basis, even if it is an infrequent basis and/or for a brief time period. Please contact an authorized service dealership if there are questions regarding which interval to follow. Consult the supplier for specific recommendations where discrepancies develop between these recommendations in this table and component supplier recommendations.

- Engine lubricating oil change intervals are not listed here. Refer to your engine's operating manual for recommendations. For specific information on maintenance procedures consult your vehicle maintenance manual.
- The initial fill of drive axle lubricant must be changed before the end of the first scheduled maintenance interval. See the axle manufacturer's operator's manual for recommended lubrication specifications and service intervals.
- The initial fill of lubricant in manual

transmissions must be changed before the end of the first maintenance interval. See the transmission manufacturer's operator's manual for recommended lubrication specifications and service intervals.

- If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission, consult the owner's manual for it that came with your vehicle to obtain lubricant check and change intervals.

2.2 At first 15,000 mi / 24,000 km or at first PM

At first 15,000 mi / 24,000 km or at first PM ¹
<p>Front Suspension U-bolts</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (ON HIGHWAY) Check the general condition and the tightness of the nuts. Tighten the nuts to the specified torque value as required; (Refer to Suspension U-Bolts, Grade 8 <u>on page 276</u> for maintenance instructions.) (VOCATIONAL) Check the general condition and the tightness of the nuts. Tighten the U- bolts after the first day or two of operation. Then tighten the nuts to the specified torque value as required; (Refer to Suspension U-Bolts, Grade 8 <u>on page 276</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Drive Axle (SISU) - Axle Housing</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the SISU manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Rear Suspension - U-bolts</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the torque. Tighten to specified torque value as required.(Refer to Suspension U-Bolts, Grade 8 <u>on page 276</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Rear Suspension - Mounting Brackets and Fasteners</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the condition and the fastener torque. Tighten to the specified torque value as required; (Refer to Rear Axle and Suspension <u>on page 218</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Main and Auxiliary Transmission - Main and Auxiliary Transmission and Transfer Case</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect for visible damage, signs of overheating, and leaks. (Refer to Transmission Maintenance <u>on page 268</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Main and Auxiliary Transmission - Main and Auxiliary Transmission (OFF HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drain lubricant while warm. Flush each unit with clean flushing oil. (Refer to Transmission Maintenance <u>on page 268</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Auxiliary Transmission - Cotta Transfer Case TR2205 Fabco Transfer Case TC142/TC143/ TC170/ TC270 Marmon-Harrington Transfer Case MVG2000/ MVG2000SD</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Cotta, Fabco, or Marmon-Harrington manual provided with your vehicle.

At first 15,000 mi / 24,000 km or at first PM¹
<p>Cooling - Hoses</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the radiator and heater hoses for leaks. (Refer to Cooling System Maintenance <u>on page 228</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Cooling - Fan Clutch</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check for air leaks. Check the fan drive bearings (turn the sheave in both directions to check for worn hub bearings.)(Refer to Engine Fan <u>on page 246</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Cooling - Solenoid Valve</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the fan drive for proper engagement and disengagement. (Refer to Engine Fan <u>on page 246</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Power Steering - Reservoir (ON HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Drain, replace the filter, and refill; (Refer to Check Power Steering Fluid Level <u>on page 263</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Power Steering - Reservoir (OFF HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Drain, replace the filter, and refill. (Refer to Check Power Steering Fluid Level <u>on page 263</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Steering Components - Drag link Castle Nut and Ball Stud</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the torque: tighten to specified torque value as required. (Refer to Steering System <u>on page 262</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Steering Components - Pitman Arm Clamp Bolt and Nut</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the torque: tighten to specified torque value as required. (Refer to Steering System <u>on page 262</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Steering Components - Steering Intermediate Shaft</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the torque on the pinch bolt and nut. (Refer to Steering Shaft Bolt Torque Specifications <u>on page 264</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Steering Components - Steering Intermediate Shaft U-joints (ON HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lubricate [Chevron Delo EP NLGI-2 grease or equivalent]. (Refer to Steering System <u>on page 262</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Steering Components - Steering Intermediate Shaft U-joints (OFF HIGHWAY or CITY DELIVERY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lubricate [Chevron Delo EP NLGI-2 grease or equivalent]. (Refer to Steering System <u>on page 262</u> for maintenance instructions.)

At first 15,000 mi / 24,000 km or at first PM¹
Steering Components - Drag Link and Tie Rod Arm Ball Sockets (ON HIGHWAY, OFF HIGHWAY or CITY DELIVERY) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lubricate (Chevron Delo EP NLGI-2 grease or equivalent.) (Refer to Steering System on page 262 for maintenance instructions.)
Fuel and Tanks - Fuel Tank Straps <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the strap tightness: tighten to proper torque value as required; aluminum tank - 30 lb-ft (41 N·m) cylindrical steel tank - 8 lb-ft (11 N·m.) (Refer to Fuel Tank on page 251 for maintenance instructions.)
Driveshafts - Models SPL-90, 1710 and 1810 Slip Member and U-joints <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lubricate*
Driveshafts - Models SPL- 140/140HD/170/170HD/250/250HD Slip Members and U- joints (OFF HIGHWAY) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lubricate*
Electrical and Lights - Fuel and Diesel Exhaust Fluid Tank Sending Unit <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the mounting screws and electrical connections for worn or damaged wires and connectors.

¹ Ensure that all maintenance intervals leading up to this point are repeated during this interval prior to the completion of those listed here.

² Use only Spicer Driveshaft approved lubricants when greasing Spicer U-joints.

2.3 Component Specific Intervals

These maintenance tasks should be reviewed at each maintenance interval. They are not specific to one interval.

Component Specific Intervals¹
Drive Axle (Dana) - Axle Housing <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Dana manual provided with your vehicle.
Drive Axle (Meritor Line Haul / ON HIGHWAY) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Meritor manual provided with your vehicle.

Component Specific Intervals¹
<p>Drive Axle (Meritor City Delivery / OFF HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Meritor manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Front Axle - Vocational (PACCAR) - Kingpin Bushings, Thrust Bearings, and Tie Rod Ball Ends (OFF-HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lubricate with approved grease. Weekly regardless of mileage. (Refer to Front Axle and Suspension <u>on page 217</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Front Axle - Vocational (PACCAR) - Steering Knuckle Spindles, Thrust Bearings, Kingpins, Drawkeys, Tie Rod Ends, Steering Stops, and Bushings (OFF-HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect for wear and damage and for endplay. Shim or replace as required. Weekly regardless of mileage. (Refer to Front Axle and Suspension <u>on page 217</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>PACCAR TX-12/TX-18 transmission series (Only) - Lubrication (OFF-HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Perform maintenance on the air dryer. (Refer to Air Dryer Maintenance <u>on page 211</u> for maintenance instructions.) Drain lubricant while warm. Flush each unit with clean flushing oil. (Refer to Transmission Maintenance <u>on page 268</u> for maintenance information.) <p>Refer to the Eaton manual provided with your vehicle.</p>
<p>Eaton Endurant Transmission (Only) - Lubrication (OFF-HIGHWAY)</p> <p>Refer to the Eaton manual provided with your vehicle.</p>
<p>Air Intake - Air filter</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace the engine intake air filter element. Every 12 months or when required by air restriction indicator or required by the engine manufacturers operator manual. (Refer to Air Intake System <u>on page 247</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Tires and Wheels - Tires</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check inflation pressure. Weekly "cold" using calibrated gauge. (Refer to Tires <u>on page 265</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Driveshafts - Models SPL-90, 1710 and 1810 slip member and U-joints</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect. U-joint inspections should be performed every time a vehicle comes in for scheduled maintenance.

Component Specific Intervals¹
<p>Driveshafts - Models SPL-100 slip member and U-joints</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect. U-joint inspections should be performed every time a vehicle comes in for scheduled maintenance.
<p>Driveshafts - Models SPL-140/140HD/170/170HD/250/250HD slip members and U-joints (ON HIGHWAY and LINEHAUL)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect. U-joint inspections should be performed every time a vehicle comes in for scheduled maintenance.
<p>Driveshafts - Models SPL-140XL/170XL/250XL slip members and U-joints (OFF HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lubricate (use only Spicer Driveshaft approved lubricants when greasing Spicer U-joints). 350,000 mi (560,000 km) 1st interval and then every 100,000 mi (160,00 km) after that.
<p>Driveshafts - Models SPL-140XL/170XL/250XL slip members and U-joints (ON HIGHWAY and LINE HAUL)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect. U-joint inspections should be performed every time a vehicle comes in for scheduled maintenance.
<p>Driveshafts - Models SPL-140XL/170XL/ 250XL slip members and U-joints (OFF HIGHWAY and CITY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect. U-joint inspections should be performed every time a vehicle comes in for scheduled maintenance.
<p>Aftertreatment System - Diesel particulate filter</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clean filter. Refer to the Engine Maintenance Manual.
<p>Aftertreatment System - Diesel exhaust fluid supply module</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace filter. Refer to the Engine Maintenance Manual.
<p>Air - Air dryer (ON HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 360,000 miles/576,000 km (Refer to Air Dryer Maintenance <u>on page 211</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Engine - Basic Engine Maintenance and service interval recommendations are detailed in the engine manufacturer's Operations and Maintenance Manual included with the vehicle. The engine manufacturer's recommendations vary depending engine model. Information is also available from authorized dealers, the engine manufacturer's authorized service centers, and the engine manufacturer's web site.</p>
<p>Safety - Three-point Safety Belt System</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect. 20,000 miles/32,000km If the vehicle is exposed to severe environmental or working conditions, more frequent inspections may be necessary. (Refer to Safety Restraint System - Inspection <u>on page 261</u> for maintenance instructions.)

¹ Ensure that all maintenance intervals leading up to this point are repeated during this interval prior to the completion of those listed here.

2.4 Every 15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Monthly

Every 15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Monthly ¹
<p>Frame - Fifth Wheel</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the kingpin lock and plate for wear and function: lubricate (NLGI #2 grease.) (Refer to Fifth Wheel Monthly Maintenance <u>on page 250</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Front Axle - SOFTEK™ NXT (Hendrickson) - Kingpin Bearings (OFF HIGHWAY or CITY DELIVERY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refer to the Hendrickson manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Front Suspension - Spring Pins</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check for proper function. (Refer to Front Axle and Suspension <u>on page 217</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Front Suspension - U-bolts (OFF HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the general condition and the tightness of the nuts. Tighten the U- bolts after the first day or two of operation. Then tighten the nuts to the specified torque value as required. (Refer to Suspension U-Bolts, Grade 8 <u>on page 276</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Front Suspension - SOFTEK™ NXT (Hendrickson) - Leaf Spring Bushing Threaded (optional) (LINE HAUL, CITY DELIVERY and OFF HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refer to the Hendrickson manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Drive Axle - Vocational (PACCAR) - Axle Assembly</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check oil level • Visually inspect for damage or leaks.
<p>Drive Axle - Vocational (PACCAR) - Breather</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the operation. If the cap doesn't rotate freely, replace.
<p>Drive Axle (Meritor City Delivery / OFF HIGHWAY) - Axle Housing</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refer to the Meritor manual provided with your vehicle.

Every 15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Monthly¹
<p>Drive Axle (Meritor City Delivery / OFF HIGHWAY) - Breather</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Meritor manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Drum Brakes (All) - Slack Adjusters</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the push rod travel and check the control arm for cracks. Adjust at reline. (Refer to Auto Slack Adjuster <u>on page 223</u> for maintenance instructions.) Lubricate (NLGI #2 grease.)
<p>Drum Brakes (All) - Brake Air System</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check air lines and fittings for leaks. Adjust routing as required to prevent chafing. Check tank mounting and condition. (Refer to How to Check the Compressed Air System for Leaks <u>on page 210</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Hub, Drum, and Hubcap - Hubcaps</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clean the sight window. Check the center plug, mounting flange, and fill plug for leaks and for proper installation. Replace broken or damaged parts. Check the lubricant level and add as required. (Refer to Wheels <u>on page 268</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Main and auxiliary Transmission - General (ON-HIGHWAY and CITY DELIVERY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect exterior for leaks. Check the oil level: refill as required (See Transmission Maintenance <u>on page 268</u> for maintenance instructions). Inspect exterior seals for damage, and replace as necessary.
<p>Auxiliary Transmission - Cotta Transfer Case TR2205 Fabco Transfer Case TC142/TC143/ TC170/ TC270</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to Cotta or Fabco manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Marmon-Harrington Transfer Case MVG2000/ MVG2000SD</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Marmon-Harrington manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Air Intake - Pre-Cleaner</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect for cuts, irregular wear, missing lugs, sidewall damage, etc. (Refer to Air Intake System <u>on page 247</u> for maintenance instructions.)

Every 15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Monthly¹
<p>Tires and Wheels - Tires</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect the wheel disc for any cracks or surface irregularities. Inspect the rim edge and bead seat area for damage. Replace any damaged wheels - DO NOT ATTEMPT TO REPAIR. (Refer to Tires <u>on page 265</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Tires and Wheels - Disc Wheels</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect the mounting ring, rim gutter, side ring, and lock ring for damage: replace as required. (Refer to Wheels <u>on page 268</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Tires and Wheels - Demountable Rims</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the tightness of the fasteners and tighten the fasteners to the specified torque as required. (Refer to Wheels <u>on page 268</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Tires and Wheels - Wheel Nuts and Studs</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect for damaged hex corners, stripped or damaged threads, and excessive corrosion: clean or replace as required. (Refer to Wheels <u>on page 268</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Power Steering - Reservoir</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the fluid level. (Refer to Check Power Steering Fluid Level <u>on page 263</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Power Steering - Power Assist Cylinder</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lubricate (Chevron Delo EP NLGI-2 grease or equivalent.) (Refer to Steering System <u>on page 262</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Steering Components - Drag link and Tie Rod Arm Ball Sockets (OFF HIGHWAY or CITY DELIVERY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lubricate (Chevron Delo EP NLGI-2 grease or equivalent). (Refer to Steering System <u>on page 262</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Fuel and Tanks - Fuel Tank Steps</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check for snug fit of side plates against tank and tank straps. Check for damaged or broken steps, missing bolts, and missing grommet between tank and side plate. Replace missing or damaged parts and adjust for fit as required. (Refer to Fuel Tank <u>on page 251</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Driveshafts - Models SPL-90, 1710 and 1810 Slip Member and U-joints</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lubricate²

Every 15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Monthly¹
<p>Driveshafts - Model SPL-100 Slip Member and U-joints</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the condition of the cables, cushion clamps, nylon tie straps, and routing. Replace a cushion clamp if the rubber has deteriorated. Repair or tighten terminals, and secure cables to prevent chafing. Replace damaged cables (cuts, cracks, or excessive wear.) (Refer to Batteries <u>on page 237</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Battery Boxes, Tool Boxes, and Steps - Battery Cables Battery Boxes, Tool Boxes, and Steps - Batteries (OFF-HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check for cracks and damage, electrolyte level, condition of terminals, and tightness of hold downs. (Refer to Batteries <u>on page 237</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Battery Boxes, Tool Boxes, and Steps - Battery Box and Tray (OFF-HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the box integrity. Clean the drain tube and check for acid leaks. Check condition of all equipment mounted under the box. (Refer to Batteries <u>on page 237</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Battery Boxes, Tool Boxes, and Steps - Battery Cable Fasteners</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check battery cable fasteners and tighten as necessary to 10-15 lb-ft (13.6-20.3 N·m) as specified on the battery label. (Refer to Batteries <u>on page 237</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Electrical and Lights - Warning Lights in Light Bar</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check at the ignition start position to verify bulb check and systems check function. (Refer to Bulb Check <u>on page 52</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Electrical and Lights - Turn, Stop, Reverse Lights and Signals</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Visual check. (Refer to Daily Checks <u>on page 25</u>).
<p>Electrical and Lights - Power Supply Harnesses (engine, transmission, etc.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check for worn or damaged insulation, corroded terminals, frayed wires, and oil or fluid leaks on the connectors or wiring. (Refer to Electrical System <u>on page 233</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Heating and Air Conditioning - Air Conditioner</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Operate the system. (Refer to Heater and Air Conditioner Maintenance <u>on page 251</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Heating and Air Conditioning - Cabin Fresh Air Filter (ON HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inspect and clean, replace if necessary. (Refer to How to Replace Air Conditioner Filter <u>on page 253</u> for maintenance instructions.)

Every 15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Monthly¹
<p>Heating and Air Conditioning - Cabin Fresh Air Filter (OFF-HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect and clean, replace if necessary. (Refer to How to Replace Air Conditioner Filter on page 253 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Aftertreatment System - System</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check for leaks and proper support. (Refer to Noise and Emission Control on page 257 for maintenance instructions.)

¹ Ensure that all maintenance intervals leading up to this point are repeated during this interval prior to the completion of those listed here.

² Use only Spicer Driveshaft approved lubricants when greasing Spicer U-joints.

2.5 Every 25,000 mi / 40,000 km / 6 Months

Every 25,000 mi / 40,000 km / 6 Months
<p>Front Axle - Linehaul (PACCAR) - Kingpin Joint Grease/Tie Rod Ends</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Heavy-Duty Multipurpose Lithium Based: #1 or #2 Grade. (Refer to Front Axle and Suspension on page 217 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Front Suspension - SOFTEK NXT (Hendrickson) - Shock Absorbers</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Hendrickson manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Front Suspension - SOFTEK NXT (Hendrickson) - Spring Pins and Shackles</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Hendrickson manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Front Suspension - SOFTEK NXT (Hendrickson) - U-bolts</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Hendrickson manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Front Axle - SOFTEK™ NXT (Hendrickson) - Axle Clamp Through Bolts</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Hendrickson manual provided with your vehicle.

2.6 Every 30,000 mi / 48,000 km

Every 30,000 mi / 48,000 km ¹
<p>Front Suspension - Spring Pins</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lubricate with approved grease. (Refer to Front Axle and Suspension on page 217 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Drive Axle - Linehaul (PACCAR) - Axle Assembly</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check oil level and inspect for leaks. Visually inspect for damage or leaks.
<p>Drive Axle - Linehaul (PACCAR) - Breather</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the operation. If the cap doesn't rotate freely, replace.
<p>Drive Axle - Vocational (PACCAR) - Axle Assembly</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drain and replace MINERAL BASE lubricant. Drive Axle (Meritor Line Haul / ON HIGHWAY) - Axle Housing Check the "cold" fill level at the differential carrier plug for a pinion angle of less than 7 degrees, or at the axle bowl plug for a pinion angle of greater than 7 degrees. Tighten the plug to 35-50 lb-ft (47-68 N·m.) Refer to the Meritor manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Drive Axle (Meritor Line Haul / ON HIGHWAY) - Breather</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Meritor manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Drum Brakes (All) - Brake Treadle Valve</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clean the area around the treadle, boot, and mounting plate. Check the pivot and mounting plate for integrity. Check the plunger boot for cracks. Lubricate roller pin, pivot pin, and plunger (NLGI #2 grease.) (Refer to Drum Brake Inspection on page 223 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Drum Brakes (All) - Brake Lining</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect: replace as required. (Refer to Drum Brake Inspection on page 223 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Hub, Drum, and Hubcap - Hubs (non-LMS)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the bearing endplay and adjust as required. (Refer to Wheels on page 268 for maintenance instructions.)

Every 30,000 mi / 48,000 km¹
<p>Hub, Drum, and Hubcap - Hub Seals (all)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check for leaks: replace as required. (Refer to Wheels on page 268 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Hub, Drum, and Hubcap - Brake Drums</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inspect for visible cracks, heat checking, galling or scoring of the braking surface, and for severe corrosion on the outside surface. Check for out-of-round or oversize condition [0.080 in. (2 mm) more than the original diameter]. Replace as required. (Refer to Brake System on page 221 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Main and Auxiliary Transmission (PACCAR TX-12/TX-18 transmission series) - Main and Auxiliary Transmission</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the oil level: refill as required. (Refer to Transmission Maintenance on page 268 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Main and Auxiliary Transmission (PACCAR TX-12/TX-18 transmission series) - Main and Auxiliary Transmission and Transfer Case</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the drain plugs for tightness. (Refer to Transmission Maintenance on page 268 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Main and Auxiliary Transmission (Eaton Endurant Transmission) - Main and Auxiliary Transmission</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refer to the Eaton manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Main and Auxiliary Transmission (Eaton Endurant Transmission) - Main and Auxiliary Transmission and Transfer Case</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refer to the Eaton manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Cooling - Extended Life Coolant (ELC)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check coolant/antifreeze condition. (Refer to Cooling System Maintenance on page 228 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Steering Components - Steering Intermediate Shaft U-joints (OFF HIGHWAY or CITY DELIVERY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lubricate [Chevron Delo EP NLGI-2 grease or equivalent]. (Refer to Steering System on page 262 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Steering Components - Drag link and Tie Rod Arm Ball Sockets (ON HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lubricate (Chevron Delo EP NLGI-2 grease or equivalent) (Refer to Steering System on page 262 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Fuel and Tanks - Fuel Tank Straps Fuel Tank on page 251</p>
<p>Electrical and Lights - Fuel and Diesel Exhaust Fluid Tank Sending Unit</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the mounting screws and electrical connections for worn or damaged wires and connectors.

Every 30,000 mi / 48,000 km¹
<p>Heating and Air Conditioning - Heater and Air Conditioner</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Perform the checks per Heater and Air Conditioner Maintenance on page 251
<p>Air - Air Lines</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check condition and routing to prevent chafing (See Air Compressor on page 211 for maintenance instructions).
<p>Air - Air Dryer</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Perform the checks listed; (Refer to Air Dryer Maintenance on page 211 for maintenance instructions.)

¹ Ensure that all maintenance intervals leading up to this point are repeated during this interval prior to the completion of those listed here.

2.7 Every 60,000 mi / 96,000 km / 6 Months

Every 60,000 mi / 96,000 km / 6 Months¹
<p>Frame - Fifth Wheel</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect fifth wheel operation. (Refer to Fifth Wheel Monthly Maintenance on page 250 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Frame - Engine Mounting</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inspect engine mounts every 60,000 miles (96,000 km.) (Refer to Engine Mounting on page 248 for maintenance instructions.) Contact an authorized vehicle OEM dealership if engine mounts need servicing.
<p>Front Axle - Vocational (PACCAR) - Steer Axle Wheel Ends: Oil Bath (Adjusted)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Synthetic SAE 75W-140, SAE 50. Mineral Oil SAE 75W, 75W-90, 75W-140, 80W-90, 85W-140. (Refer to Front Axle and Suspension on page 217 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Front Axle - Vocational (PACCAR) - Steer Axle Semi-fluid (Adjusted)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Semi-Fluid Synthetic Grease: Delo SF, Mobil SCH 007. (Refer to Front Axle and Suspension on page 217 for maintenance instructions.)

Every 60,000 mi / 96,000 km / 6 Months¹
<p>Front Axle - Vocational (PACCAR) - Steer Axle Grease Pack (Adjusted)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Heavy-Duty Multipurpose Lithium Base: #2 Grade. (Refer to Front Axle and Suspension on page 217 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Front Axle - SOFTEK™ NXT (Hendrickson) - Kingpin Bearings and Tie Rod Ends (LINE HAUL)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refer to the Hendrickson manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Front Axle - SOFTEK™ NXT (Hendrickson) - Axle Clamp Through Bolts</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refer to the Hendrickson manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Front Suspension - Front Spring</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inspect for cracked leaves, worn bushings, and excessive corrosion. (Refer to Front Axle and Suspension on page 217 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Front Suspension - Spring Pins and Shackles</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inspect for worn parts and excessive joint clearance. Shim or replace as required. (Refer to Front Axle and Suspension on page 217 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Front Suspension - Shock Absorbers</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inspect for leaking, body damage, and damaged or worn bushings. Replace as required. Check the shock mounting stud torque. (Refer to Front Axle and Suspension on page 217 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Front Suspension U-bolts - U-bolts (ON HIGHWAY and VOCATIONAL)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the general condition and the tightness of the nuts. Tighten the U-bolts using a calibrated torque wrench to the specified torque value. (Refer to Suspension U-Bolts, Grade 8 on page 276 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Front Suspension - SOFTEK™ NXT (Hendrickson) - Ride Height</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refer to the Hendrickson manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Drive Axle - Linehaul (PACCAR) - Axle Assembly</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Drain and replace MINERAL BASE lubricant.

Every 60,000 mi / 96,000 km / 6 Months¹
<p>Drive Axle (Dana) - Axle Housing</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Dana manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Drive Axle (Dana) - Air Shift Unit</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Dana manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Drive Axle (Dana) - Lube Pump (OFF HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Dana manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Drive Axle (Dana) - Lube Filter (OFF HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Dana manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Drive Axle (Dana) - Magnetic Drain Plug and Breather (OFF HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Dana manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Drive Axle (SISU)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the SISU manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Rear Suspension - U-bolts</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the torque. Tighten to specified torque value as required. (Refer to Suspension U-Bolts, Grade 8 <u>on page 276</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Drum Brakes (All) - Brake Camshaft Bearing</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check for excessive camshaft play in the axial and radial directions. Max allowable play is 0.003 in. Lubricate (NLGI #2 grease.) (Refer to Drum Brake Inspection <u>on page 223</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Drum Brakes (All) - Brake Air System</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clean or replace the inline filters. (Refer to Air System <u>on page 208</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Disc Brakes (Bendix™) - Brake Pads</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Bendix manual provided with your vehicle.

Every 60,000 mi / 96,000 km / 6 Months¹
<p>Disc Brakes (Bendix™) - Brake Disc/rotor</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Bendix manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Disc Brakes (Bendix®) - Caliper Sliding Function</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Bendix manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Disc Brakes (Bendix®) - Caliper Slide Pins</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Bendix manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Disc Brakes (Bendix®) - System Operation</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Bendix manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Hub, Drum, and Hubcap - LMS Hubs (Dana)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Dana manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Main and Auxiliary Transmission - Mounting Brackets and Fasteners</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the condition of the fasteners and their torque. Tighten to the specified torque value as required. Refer to Frame Fastener Torque Requirements <u>on page 273</u> for maintenance instructions.
<p>Main and auxiliary Transmission - Oil Cooler</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clean the fins (air-to-oil type) and body. Check the hose condition and for leaks: replace as required (See Cooling System Maintenance <u>on page 228</u>).
<p>Main and Auxiliary Transmission (PACCAR TX-12/TX-18 transmission series) - Main and Auxiliary Transmission (OFF HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drain lubricant while warm. Flush each unit with clean flushing oil. (Refer to Transmission Maintenance <u>on page 268</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Main and Auxiliary Transmission (Eaton Endurant Transmission) - Main and Auxiliary Transmission (OFF HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Eaton manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Auxiliary Transmission - Cotta Transfer Case TR2205 Fabco Transfer Case TC142/TC143/ TC170/ TC270 Marmon-Harrington Transfer Case MVG2000/ MVG2000SD</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Cotta, Fabco, or Marmon-Harrington manual provided with your vehicle.

Every 60,000 mi / 96,000 km / 6 Months ¹
<p>Air Intake - Air Intake Piping, Mounting, and Charge Air Cooler</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the system for broken pipes, leaks, joint integrity, cleanliness, and proper support. (Refer to Air Intake System <u>on page 247</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Cooling - Hoses</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the radiator and heater hoses for leaks. (Refer to Cooling System Maintenance <u>on page 228</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Cooling - Fan Clutch</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check for air leaks. Check the fan drive bearings (turn the sheave in both directions to check for worn hub bearings.) (Refer to Engine Fan <u>on page 246</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Cooling - Solenoid Valve</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the fan drive for proper engagement and disengagement. (Refer to Engine Fan <u>on page 246</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Power Steering - Reservoir (OFF HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Drain, replace the filter, and refill. (Refer to Check Power Steering Fluid Level <u>on page 263</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Power Steering - Steering Gear</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the lash of the sector shaft: adjust as required. (Refer to Steering System <u>on page 262</u> for maintenance instructions.) • Grease the trunion bearing (Chevron Delo EP NLGI-2 grease or equivalent.) (Refer to Steering System <u>on page 262</u> for maintenance instructions.) • Grease the input shaft seal (Chevron Delo EP NLGI-2 grease or equivalent.) (Refer to Steering System <u>on page 262</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Power Steering - Hoses and Tubes</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check for leaks and chafing. (Refer to Steering System <u>on page 262</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Steering Components - Drag link Tube Clamp and Ball Socket</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the torque: tighten to specified torque value as required. (Refer to Steering System <u>on page 262</u> for maintenance instructions.)

Every 60,000 mi / 96,000 km / 6 Months¹
<p>Steering Components - Pitman Arm Clamp Bolt and Nut</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the torque: tighten to specified torque value as required. (Refer to Steering System on page 262 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Steering Components - Steering Intermediate Shaft</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the torque on the pinch bolt and nut. (Refer to Steering Shaft Bolt Torque Specifications on page 264 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Steering Components - Steering Intermediate Shaft U-joints (ON HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lubricate [Chevron Delo EP NLGI-2 grease or equivalent]. (Refer to Steering System on page 262 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Fuel and Tanks - Fuel Tanks</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inspect tanks, brackets, hoses, and fittings for correct location, tightness, abrasion damage, and leaks: repair or replace as required. (Refer to Fuel Tank on page 251 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Driveshafts - Models SPL- 140/140HD/170/170HD/250/250HD Slip Members and U- joints (ON HIGHWAY and LINEHAUL)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lubricate²
<p>Battery Boxes, Tool Boxes, and Steps - Batteries (ON HIGHWAY and LINE HAUL)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check for cracks and damage, electrolyte level, condition of terminals, and tightness of hold downs. Refer to Batteries on page 237 for maintenance instructions.
<p>Battery Boxes, Tool Boxes, and Steps - Battery Box and Tray (ON HIGHWAY and LINE HAUL)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the box integrity. Clean the drain tube and check for acid leaks. Check condition of all equipment mounted under the box. Check the drain tube and check for acid leaks. Check condition of all equipment mounted under the box. (Refer to Batteries on page 237 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Electrical and Lights - Alternator</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check operation and output. (Refer to Alternator on page 241 for maintenance instructions.) • Check tightness of the pulley nut. (Refer to Install Engine Belt on page 246 for maintenance instructions.) • Check the tension of the drive belt. (Refer to Install Engine Belt on page 246 for maintenance instructions.) • Check tightness of the terminal hex nuts. (Refer to Install Engine Belt on page 246 for maintenance instructions.)

Every 60,000 mi / 96,000 km / 6 Months ¹
<p>Electrical and Lights - Starter</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check torque on hex nuts. (Refer to Electrical System <u>on page 233</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Electrical and Lights - ECM Connector</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the tightness of the ECM connector. (Refer to Electrical System <u>on page 233</u> for maintenance instructions.) for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Electrical and Lights - Wheel Sensors</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check for damaged sensors and connectors, and worn or frayed wires. (Refer to Electrical System <u>on page 233</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Electrical and Lights - Power Supply Harnesses (engine, Transmission, etc.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check for worn or damaged insulation, corroded terminals, frayed. Wash to remove excess grease. (Refer to Electrical System <u>on page 233</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Cab Structure, Doors and Hoods - Body and Cab Hold down Bolts, Cab Structure, Doors and Hoods <u>on page 228</u></p>
<p>For Cab Structure, Doors, Hoods – Hinges and Latch (EXCLUDING door hinges)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lubricate with silicone spray. (Refer to Cab Structure, Doors and Hoods <u>on page 228</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Heating and Air Conditioning - Condenser</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clear any debris from the front of the condenser. (Refer to Heater and Air Conditioner Maintenance <u>on page 251</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Air - System</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lubricate. (Refer to Air System <u>on page 208</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Air - Inline Filters</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace elements or clean with solvent. (Refer to Replace Engine Air Filter for maintenance instructions.)

¹ Ensure that all maintenance intervals leading up to this point are repeated during this interval prior to the completion of those listed here.

² Use only Spicer Driveshaft approved lubricants when greasing Spicer U-joints.

2.8 Every 120,000 mi / 192,000 km / Annually

Every 120,000 mi / 192,000 km / Annually ¹
<p>Frame - Frame Fasteners</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check for tightness: tighten to the specified torque value as required. (Refer to Frame Fastener Torque Requirements on page 273 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Frame - Crossmembers and Mounting Brackets</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inspect for cracks and loose fasteners. Replace or tighten to the specified torque value as required. (Refer to Frame Fastener Torque Requirements on page 273 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Front Axle - Linehaul (PACCAR) - Steer Axle Wheel Ends: Oil Bath (Adjusted)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Synthetic SAE 75W-140, SAE 50W. (Refer to Front Axle and Suspension on page 217 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Front Axle - Linehaul (PACCAR) - Steer Axle Wheel Ends: Oil Bath (Adjusted)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mineral Oil SAE 75W, 75W-90, 75W-140, 80W-90, 85W-140. (Refer to Front Axle and Suspension on page 217 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Front Axle - Linehaul (PACCAR) - Steer Axle Semi-fluid (Adjusted)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Semi-Fluid Synthetic Grease: Delo SF, Mobil SCH 007. (Refer to Front Axle and Suspension on page 217 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Front Axle - Linehaul (PACCAR) - Steer Axle Grease Pack (Adjusted)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Heavy-Duty Multipurpose Lithium Base: #2 Grade. (Refer to Front Axle and Suspension on page 217 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Front Axle - Vocational (PACCAR) - Steer Axle Wheel Ends: Oil Bath LMS</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Synthetic SAE 75W-90. (Refer to Front Axle and Suspension on page 217 for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Drive Axle - Linehaul (PACCAR) - Axle Shaft</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tighten the rear axle flange nuts to the specified torque value.
<p>Drive Axle - Vocational (PACCAR) - Axle Shaft</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tighten the rear axle flange nuts to the specified torque value.

Every 120,000 mi / 192,000 km / Annually¹
Drive Axle (Dana) - Air Shift Unit <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Dana manual provided with your vehicle.
Drive Axle (Dana) - Breather <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Dana manual provided with your vehicle.
Drive Axle (Dana) - Lube Pump (ON HIGHWAY) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Dana manual provided with your vehicle.
Drive Axle (Dana) - Lube Filter (ON HIGHWAY) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Dana manual provided with your vehicle.
Drive Axle (Dana) - Magnetic Drain Plug and Breather (ON HIGHWAY) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Dana manual provided with your vehicle.
Drive Axle (Meritor Line Haul / ON HIGHWAY) - Lubricant Filter <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Meritor manual provided with your vehicle.
Drive Axle (Meritor Line Haul / ON HIGHWAY) - Input Shaft and Pinion Shaft <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Meritor manual provided with your vehicle.
Drive Axle (Meritor Line Haul / ON HIGHWAY) - Axle Shaft <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Meritor manual provided with your vehicle.
Drive Axle (Meritor Line Haul / ON HIGHWAY) - Interaxle Differential <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Meritor manual provided with your vehicle.
Drive Axle (Meritor City Delivery / OFF HIGHWAY) - Lubricant Filter <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Meritor manual provided with your vehicle.
Drive Axle (Meritor City Delivery / OFF HIGHWAY) - Input Shaft and Pinion Shaft <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Meritor manual provided with your vehicle.

Every 120,000 mi / 192,000 km / Annually¹
<p>Drive Axle (Meritor City Delivery / OFF HIGHWAY) - Axle Shaft</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Meritor manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Drive Axle (Meritor City Delivery / OFF HIGHWAY) - Interaxle Differential</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Meritor manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Drive Axle (SISU)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the SISU manual provided with your vehicle.
<p>Rear Suspension - Frame and Crossmembers Bolts</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the torque. Tighten to specified torque value as required. (Refer to Rear Axle and Suspension <u>on page 218</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Rear Suspension - Mounting Brackets and Fasteners</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the condition and the fastener torque. Tighten to the specified torque value as required. (Refer to Suspension U-Bolts, Grade 8 <u>on page 276</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Hub, Drum, and Hubcap - Hubs (non-LMS) with Standard Seals</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clean the components and check for excessive wear or damage. Change the oil and seal. (Refer to Wheels <u>on page 268</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Cooling - Extended Life Coolant (ELC)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Perform lab analysis. If lab analysis shows coolant is unsuitable for continued use: Flush, drain, and refill. Add ELC Extender. (Contact your authorized PACCAR dealer to schedule a maintenance appointment.)
<p>Power Steering - Reservoir (ON HIGHWAY)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drain, replace the filter, and refill. (Refer to Check Power Steering Fluid Level <u>on page 263</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Steering Components - Steering Linkage</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check all joints for excessive lash: replace as required. (Refer to Steering System <u>on page 262</u> for maintenance instructions.)
<p>Fuel and Tanks - Fuel Tank Breathers</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check for proper function: clean the drain hoses. (Refer to Fuel Tank <u>on page 251</u> for maintenance instructions.)

Every 120,000 mi / 192,000 km / Annually¹
Driveshafts - Models SPL-140XL/ 170XL/250XL Slip Members and U- joints (OFF HIGHWAY and CITY) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lubricate²
Cab Structure, Doors and Hoods - Body and Cab Hold down Bolts, Cab Structure, Doors and Hoods <u>on page 228</u>
Heating and Air Conditioning - Heater and Air Conditioner <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Full operational and diagnostic check. (Refer to Heater and Air Conditioner Maintenance <u>on page 251</u> for maintenance instructions.)
Heating and Air Conditioning - Recirculation Cab Air Filter (ON HIGHWAY) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Please contact an authorized dealer when the service interval is required to inspect the cabin recirculation air filter. (Refer to Replace the Recirculation Air Filter <u>on page 253</u> for maintenance instructions.)
Heating and Air Conditioning - Recirculation Cab Air Filter (OFF-HIGHWAY) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Please contact an authorized dealer when the service interval is required to inspect the cabin recirculation air filter. (Refer to Replace the Recirculation Air Filter <u>on page 253</u> for maintenance instructions.)
Air - Air Dryer <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace cartridge (See). Replace purge valve.

¹ Ensure that all maintenance intervals leading up to this point are repeated during this interval prior to the completion of those listed here.

² Use only Spicer Driveshaft approved lubricants when greasing Spicer U-joints.

2.9 Every 240,000 mi / 384,000 km

Every 240,000 mi / 384,000 km ¹
Drive Axle - Vocational (PACCAR) - Axle Assembly <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Drain and replace SYNTHETIC BASE lubricant.
Hub, Drum, and Hubcap - Hubs (non-LMS) with Outrunner Seals <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clean the components and check for excessive wear or damage. Change the oil and seal. (Refer to Wheels on page 268 for maintenance instructions.)

¹ Ensure that all maintenance intervals leading up to this point are repeated during this interval prior to the completion of those listed here.

2.10 Every 300,000 mi / 480,000 km / 6,750 Hours / 3 Years

Every 300,000 mi / 480,000 km / 6,750 Hours / 3 Years ¹
Cooling - Delo® Extended Life Coolant (ELC) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace blank water filter, if applicable. (Refer to Cooling System Maintenance on page 228 for maintenance instructions.)
Hub, Drum, and Hubcap - LMS Hubs (Dana) with Mineral Lubricant <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refer to the Dana manual provided with your vehicle.

¹ Ensure that all maintenance intervals leading up to this point are repeated during this interval prior to the completion of those listed here.

2.11 Every 500,000 mi / 800,000 km / 5 years

Every 500,000 mi / 800,000 km / 5 years ¹
Front Axle - Linehaul (PACCAR) - Steer Axle Wheel Ends: Oil Bath LMS <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Synthetic SAE 75W-90. (Refer to Front Axle and Suspension on page 217 for maintenance instructions.)
Drive Axle - Linehaul (PACCAR) - Axle Assembly <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drain and replace SYNTHETIC BASE lubricant.
Hub, Drum, and Hubcap - LMS Hubs (Dana) with Synthetic Lubricant <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Dana manual provided with your vehicle.

¹ Ensure that all maintenance intervals leading up to this point are repeated during this interval prior to the completion of those listed here.

2.12 Every 750,000 mi / 1,200,000 km/ 24,000 Hours / 8 years

Every 750,000 mi / 1,200,000 km/ 24,000 Hours / 8 years ¹
Cooling - Delo® Extended Life Coolant (ELC) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Flush, drain, and refill with new coolant. (Refer to Cooling System Maintenance on page 228 for maintenance instructions.)
Main and Auxiliary Transmission (including PACCAR TX-12/TX-18 transmission series) - Main and Auxiliary Transmission (ON HIGHWAY) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drain lubricant while warm. Flush each unit with clean flushing oil. (Refer to Transmission Maintenance on page 268 for maintenance instructions.)
Main and Auxiliary Transmission (including Eaton Endurant Transmission) - Main and Auxiliary Transmission (ON HIGHWAY) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to the Eaton manual provided with your vehicle.

¹ Ensure that all maintenance intervals leading up to this point are repeated during this interval prior to the completion of those listed here.

3 AIR SYSTEM

The operation of the vehicle's braking system and many vehicle accessories depends on the storage and application of a high-pressure air supply.

 **WARNING**

DO NOT modify, alter, repair, or disconnect any air system component. Repairs or modifications to the air system, other than preventive maintenance, should only be performed by an authorized dealer. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

Prior to the removal of any air system component, block and hold the vehicle by a secure means other than the vehicle brake. Depleting air system pressure may cause the vehicle to roll unexpectedly resulting in an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

 **WARNING**

After completing any repairs to the air system, always test for air leaks, and check the brakes for safe operation before putting the vehicle in service. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

Never connect or disconnect a hose or line containing air pressure. It may whip as air escapes. Never remove a component or pipe plug unless you are certain all system pressure has been depleted. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**


Always wear safety glasses when working with pressurized air. DO NOT exceed the recommended air pressure limits, look into the air jets, or direct the air jets towards yourself or another individual. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**


Never attempt to install, remove, disassemble, or assemble a component until you have read and understood the recommended procedures. Some components contain powerful springs, and injury can result if not properly disassembled. Use only proper tools, and observe all precautions pertaining to use of those tools. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

If it is necessary to temporarily bypass an air dryer, always adhere to the procedure provided by the manufacturer. Completely bypassing an air dryer will bypass the system pressure protection valves, which could lead to a loss of air pressure or damage the vehicle air system. A loss of vehicle air could unexpectedly engage the emergency brakes, resulting in an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

DO NOT install an air dryer brand or model different from the original without a full system review to ensure continued FMVSS 121 compliance. Incompatibility may impair air system performance and vehicle control. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

If the air tanks are not drained at the recommended frequency, water could enter the air lines and valves. This could cause corrosion or blockage and compromise brake system performance, which could lead to an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Your vehicle's compressor takes outside air and compresses it, usually to 100 to 120 psi (6.89 to 8.27 bar/689 to 827 kPa). The compressed air then goes to the reservoirs to be stored until needed. When you operate your air brakes, the stored compressed air flows into the chambers where it is used to apply your truck and trailer brakes. That

is why, when you push down on your brake pedal, you don't feel the same amount of pressure on the pedal that you do when you apply the brake on your car. All you are doing on your truck is opening an air valve to allow air to flow into the brake chambers. Contamination of the air supply system is the major cause of problems in air-operated components such as brake valves, and suspension height control valves. To keep contaminants to the lowest possible level, follow these maintenance procedures.

Daily Checks

- Drain moisture from the supply and service air tanks.
- Operate air devices to circulate lubricant within the unit.

Periodically


- Clean filter screens ahead of the valves by removing the screens and soaking them in solvent. Blow dry with pressurized air before reinstalling them.

Twice a Year

- Maintain the air compressor to prevent excessive oil bypass. See your maintenance manual for details.
- Replace worn seals in valves and air motors as needed.

4 AIR GAUGES AND AIR LEAKS

4.1 Air Gauges and Air Leaks

 **WARNING**

DO NOT operate the vehicle if leakage in the air system is detected. Contact an authorized dealer (or any other properly equipped service center) if a leak is detected. Failure to check the brakes or follow these procedures could cause a system failure, increasing the risk of an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

If your vehicle is equipped with air brakes, it has two separate, additional air systems: Primary and Secondary. Each air system is monitored by a gauge indicating system pressure in either pounds per square inch (psi), and/or bar (bar).

The Primary gauge indicates pressure in the rear braking system:

Figure 37: Primary Air Pressure Gauge



The Secondary gauge indicates pressure in the front braking system:

Figure 38: Secondary Air Pressure Gauge



The Primary and Secondary Air Pressure gauges are shown in the Primary Gauges View on the Digital Display. Low cab forward right-hand stand-up model uses additional physical gauges for Primary and Secondary Air Pressure.

At start-up, the Primary and Secondary Air Pressure gauges may indicate red, and the Low Air System Pressure alarm may sound until the minimum operational pressure setpoint of 65 psi (4.48 bar) is reached.

i NOTE

Low cab forward right-hand stand-up model also indicates low air pressure using a warning light in the physical gauges.

i NOTE

The Low Air System Pressure alarm is not active when the engine is off.

If the tanks are empty, this can take up to two minutes. If these gauges

- Remain red
- Turn red
- Indicate below 65 psi (4.48 bar)

Or the Low Air System Pressure Alarm

- Turns on
- Does not turn off

Do not attempt to drive the vehicle until the problem is found and fixed: system pressure is too low for normal brake operation.

i NOTE

Park brakes lock up at 60 psi (4.14 bar), the audible alarm will sound at 65 psi (4.48 bar).

4.2 How to Check the Compressed Air System for Leaks

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT operate the vehicle if leakage in the air system is detected. Contact an authorized dealer (or any other properly equipped service center) if a leak is detected. Failure to check the brakes or

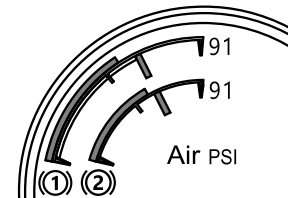
follow these procedures could cause a system failure, increasing the risk of an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Check the compressed air system for leaks:

- After maintenance
- When an air system component is replaced
- When a leak is suspected
- Periodically, to ensure system integrity

To check for Air System leaks

1. Start the engine if not already running.
2. **Scroll** to either the Basic or Enhanced View to monitor Primary and Secondary Air Pressures:



3. Build up air pressure in the system until the system cutout setpoint or until 120 psi (8.27 bar/827 kPa) is reached.

4. Turn the start switch to OFF (stopping the engine) and then back to the ON position, but don't start the engine.
The Basic or Enhanced View will appear.
5. Release the service brakes, and observe the rate of air pressure drop. This rate should not exceed 2 psi (0.14 bar/14 kPa) per minute.
6. Start the engine and build up air pressure again.
7. Turn the start switch to OFF (stopping the engine) and then back to the ON position, but don't start the engine.
8. Apply the brake fully, holding the pedal down for five minutes. The pressure drop should not exceed 3 psi (0.21 bar/21 kPa) per minute.
9. If you detect excessive leakage (air pressure loss greater than 3 psi (0.21 bar/21 kPa) after five minutes of brake application), a leakage test should be made at the air line connections and at all air brake control units. These tests should determine where air is escaping.

5 AIR COMPRESSOR

All compressors, regardless of make or model, run continuously while the engine is running. System pressure is controlled by the governor. The governor acts in conjunction with the unloading mechanism in the compressor cylinder block to start and stop compression of air. The compressor is unloaded when the system pressure reaches 130 psi (8.96 bar/896 kPa), and compression is reestablished when system pressure falls to 110 psi (7.58 bar/758 kPa).

Preventive Maintenance

The following service checks are provided for informational purposes, and should only be performed by a certified technician. Contact your dealer or the engine manufacturer's maintenance manual for further information on servicing air compressors. After completing any repairs to the air system, always test for air leaks, and check the brakes for safe operation before putting the vehicle in service. Below is a list of areas to maintain for the air compressor:

- Inspect compressor air filter element, if equipped, and replace element if clogged. Check compressor mounting and drive for alignment and belt

tension. Adjust if necessary.

- Remove compressor discharge valve cap nuts and check for presence of excessive carbon. If excessive carbon is found, clean or replace the compressor cylinder head. Also, check compressor discharge line for carbon, and clean or replace the discharge line if necessary.
- Disassemble compressor and thoroughly clean and inspect all parts. Repair or replace all worn or damaged parts, or replace compressor with a factory exchange unit.

6 AIR DRYER MAINTENANCE

6.1 Air Dryer Maintenance

NOTE

Because no two vehicles operate under identical conditions, maintenance and maintenance intervals will vary. Experience is a valuable guide in determining the best maintenance interval for any one particular operation.

i NOTE

A small amount of oil in the system may be normal and should not, in itself, be considered a reason to replace the desiccant cartridge. Oil stained desiccant can function adequately.

Every 900 operating hours, 25,000 miles (40,000 km), or every 3 months check for moisture in the air brake system by opening air tanks, drain cocks, or valves and checking for presence of water. A tablespoon of water found in the air tank would point to the need for a desiccant cartridge change. However, the following conditions can also cause water accumulation and should be considered before replacing the desiccant cartridge.

- Air usage is exceptionally high and not normal for a highway vehicle. This may be due to accessory air demands or some unusual air requirement that does not allow the compressor to load and unload (compressing and non-compressing cycle) in a normal fashion or it may be due to excessive leaks in the air system.
- In areas where more than a 30°F (17°C) range of temperature occurs in one day, small amounts of water can accumulate in the air brake

system due to condensation. Under these conditions, the presence of small amounts of moisture is normal and should not be considered as an indication that the dryer is not performing properly.

- An outside air source has been used to charge the air system. This air did not pass through the drying bed.

i NOTE

Review the warranty policy before performing any maintenance procedures. An extended warranty may be voided if unauthorized maintenance is performed during this period.

i NOTE

Each time the oil-coalescing desiccant cartridge is changed, the air dryer purge valve should be changed.

6.2 Bendix® AD-HF Series Air Dryer

Your vehicle may be equipped with a Bendix® AD-HF series air dryer. Any air dryer replacement should be made with an identical component.

Refer to the Bendix manual provided with your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT install an air dryer brand or model different from the original without a full system review to ensure continued FMVSS 121 compliance. Incompatibility may impair air system performance and vehicle control. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

The AD-HF Series air dryer has incorporated into its design various components that have typically been installed separately on the vehicle (see below for components/ areas affected):

- Pressure protection valves
- Safety valve
- Solenoid valves and plumbing
- Plumbing of the front and rear service air tanks
- Plumbing to accessory systems

These components are required to meet the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS 121 - Air Brake Systems). As the Warning above states, any other type of air dryer installed in the place of an AD-HF Series will require changes, modifi-

cations, and/or additions to your vehicle's air system to maintain compliance with FMVSS 121.

6.3 Air Dryer Oil-Coalescing Cartridge

This vehicle's air system is equipped with an oil-coalescing air dryer. The air dryer's oil-coalescing cartridge must be replaced semi-annually, regardless of mileage.

CAUTION

Replace the oil-coalescing desiccant air dryer cartridge semi-annually, regardless of mileage. Use of a non-oil-coalescing cartridge or missing a maintenance interval can damage vehicle components and may void warranty coverage. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

7 AIR TANKS

WARNING

If the air tanks are not drained at the recommended frequency, water could enter the air lines and valves. This could cause corrosion or blockage

and compromise brake system performance, which could lead to an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

CAUTION

If your vehicle is equipped with an air-actuated transmission, drain the transmission side of the air tank daily. Air-actuated transmissions will have two separate air supplies: vehicle air and transmission air. If the transmission air tank is not drained, transmission damage could occur. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

CAUTION

DO NOT use penetrating oil, alcohol, brake fluid, or wax-based oils in the air system. These fluids may cause severe damage to air system components. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

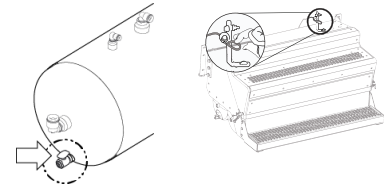
The air tanks must be drained daily. Operate air devices daily to circulate lubricants within the unit.

8 AIR TANK MAINTENANCE

Moisture builds up in the air tanks. The air tanks must be drained daily.

Moisture Ejection Valve

Pull Cord



1. Turn the moisture ejection valve, or pull on the optional pull cord, until moisture comes out the valve.
2. Continue holding the knob, or the optional pull cord, until all moisture is released.

9 DUAL AIR SYSTEM FUNCTION TEST

Conduct this test at least every 3 months or if there is any indication of a potential problem.

Park the vehicle on level ground and block the wheels. Have an assistant open drain valves and, where required, observe

brake action at the wheels. If a malfunction occurs during this test, do not move the vehicle until the problem has been corrected. Engine should be Off with the key switch to the ON or RUN position.

i NOTE

Tractor air system must be connected to trailer.

10 GREENHOUSE GAS CERTIFIED CONFIGURATION

This vehicle includes Greenhouse Gas (GHG) regulated parameters and technologies. A Vehicle Emission Control Information label is located on the driver's door with codes that partially identify the vehicle's GHG certified configuration. In addition to the Vehicle Emission Control Information label, other technologies that reduce GHG emissions and regulated parameters included in the vehicle's GHG certified configuration are described in this section.

i NOTE

Modifying a vehicle's certified configuration without good engineering judgment or PACCAR's approval may be a violation of the Clean Air Act and subject to fines and penalties. Please contact the vehicle manufacturer for further information about this vehicle's certified configuration.

Vehicle Emission Control Information Label Descriptions

Label Identifiers	Label Identifier Descriptions
Family Name	Describes the vehicle's certified manufacturer, regulatory category, and regulatory subcategory
Emission Controls	Describes regulated emission control devices installed on the vehicle

Compliance Statement	Describes the vehicle's compliance standards
Regulatory Subcategory	Describes the vehicle's certified regulatory subcategory

Emission Controls	Emission Control Descriptions
ARF	Aerodynamic roof fairing
ARFR	Adjustable height aerodynamic roof fairing
ATS	Aerodynamic side skirt and/or fuel tank fairing
AFF	Aerodynamic front fairing
AREF	Aerodynamic rear fairing
TGR	Gap reducing fairing
LRRR	Low rolling resistance tires (all)
LRRD	Low rolling resistance tires (drive)

LRRS	Low rolling resistance tires (steer)
VSL	Vehicle speed limiter
VSLS	Soft-top vehicle speed limiter
VSLE	Expiring vehicle speed limiter
VSLD	Vehicle speed limiter with both soft-top and expiration
IRT	Engine shutoff system
IRT5	Engine shutoff after 5 minutes or less of idling
IRTE	Expiring engine shutoff
ADVH	Vehicle includes advanced hybrid technology components
ADVO	Vehicle includes other advanced-technology components

INV	Vehicle includes innovative (off-cycle) technology
ATI	Automatic tire inflation system
TPMS	Tire pressure monitoring system

GHG Regulated Technology Not On the Vehicle Emission Control Information Label

Technology	Compliance Requirements
Wheel-Related Weight Reduction	Wheel-related weight reduction benefits may be included in this vehicle's certified configuration. Changing aluminum wheels to steel wheels may be a violation of the Clean Air Act and subject to fines and penalties.

Non wheel-Related Weight Reduction	Non wheel-related weight reduction benefits may be included in this vehicle's certified configuration. Changing aluminum material to steel material may be a violation of the Clean Air Act and subject to fines and penalties.
------------------------------------	---

Other Technologies This vehicle may be equipped with factory installed automatic engine shut-down (AES), neutral idle, start-stop systems, intelligent controls (Predictive Cruise Control and Neutral Coast), or extended idle reduction systems (Engine Idle Shut-down Timer, Engine Auto Start, Sleeper APUs, Fuel-Fired Sleeper Heater System). Disabling or modifying any GHG regulated technology may be a violation of the Clean Air Act and subject to fines and penalties.

GHG Regulated Powertrain Parameters Not On the Vehicle Emission Control Information Label

Powertrain Components	Regulated Parameters
Engine	Engine idle speed, torque, horsepower, and governed RPM
Transmission	Lock up gear, number of gears, and torque converter
Axle	Configuration and drive axle ratio

GHG Regulated Aerodynamic Performance

The vehicle needs to stay in as-built aerodynamic performance unless good engineering judgment shows that the modification will improve safety or will not increase greenhouse gases.

GHG Regulated Certified Tires

i NOTE
The tires installed on this vehicle at the factory as original equipment are certified for Greenhouse Gas and Fuel Efficiency regulations. Replacement tires

must be of an equal or larger loaded drive tire size and an equal or lower rolling resistance level (TRRL or Crr). Consult with your tire supplier(s) for appropriate replacement tires.

In order to limit the rolling resistance of the tires and optimize fuel economy, the maintenance procedures specified by the tire manufacturer must be followed. Please see Vehicle Emissions Limited Express Warranty for warranty on greenhouse gas certified tires.

GHG Regulated Air Conditioning Leakage Standards

Loss of refrigerant from the air conditioning systems may not exceed a total leakage rate of 11.0 grams per year or a percent leakage rate of 1.50 percent per year, whichever is greater. This vehicle was built to meet these air conditioning leakage standards. Any modification of the air conditioning system must comply with leakage rates defined in SAE J2727.

i NOTE
Modifying a vehicle's certified configuration without good engineering judgment or PACCAR's approval may be a violation of the Clean Air Act and subject to

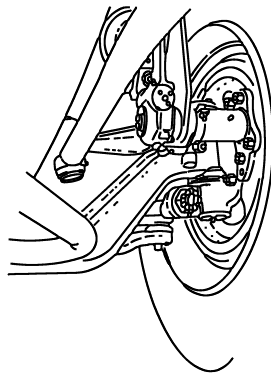
ines and penalties. Please contact the vehicle manufacturer for further information about this vehicle's certified configuration.

10.1 Front Axle and Suspension

Axle Lubrication

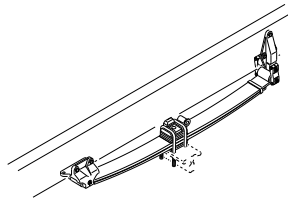
Refer to the axle manufacturer's operator's manual for lubrication specifications and service intervals.

Front Axle Knuckle Lubrication



Lubricate with approved lubricant. Lubricate knuckle thrust bearings, knuckle pins, and tie rod ends. Lack of lubrication causes premature wear and hard steering. Lubrication schedule may be shortened if necessary.

Suspension Lubrication



Each standard spring anchor pin has a grease fitting. Pressure lubricate spring pins as specified. At regular intervals, the spring leaves may be lubricated with a rust-inhibiting oil applied with a spray gun or brush. Depending on your suspension, lubricate all spring pins until grease flows out of both ends of the bushing. Look for signs of rust or water in the flushed grease. If a pin will not accept grease, it should be removed, cleaned, and inspected.

CAUTION

DO NOT spray the suspension with chemical products or mineral oil; it can cause damage to the bushings. Failure

to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

Inspection

For all vehicles, mandatory maintenance procedures include retightening all U-bolts and inspecting the suspension for loose, damaged, or abnormally worn fasteners. Visually inspect the shock absorbers, the rubber bushings, the leaf springs, and that the suspension is aligned and functioning properly. Mono leaf spring suspensions should also have their rear shackle brackets checked for proper alignment.

Even with proper maintenance, however, the service life of leaf springs are affected by many factors: fatigue, vehicle gross weight, type of load, road conditions, and vehicle speed. Check for cracks, wear marks, splits, or other defects on the surface of the spring. Defective parts must be replaced. Because repaired springs cannot be fully restored to their original service life, replace the complete assembly if cracks or other defects are detected.

Wheel Alignment

For driving safety and comfort, and to prolong the life of your vehicle, it is important to have wheels correctly aligned. Check tire wear frequently. Uneven tire wear is a sign that the wheels may be misaligned. If

you see uneven wear, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer familiar with aligning wheels on your vehicle.

Suspension U-Bolts

It is important that U-bolts remain tight. Severe use of your vehicle will cause them to loosen faster, and all vehicles need to have their U-bolts checked and tightened regularly. Be sure someone with the proper training and the right tools checks and tightens the U-bolts on your vehicle. New springs can settle in after service, relieving the tension on the U-bolts. Loose U-bolts can cause leaf spring breakage, axle misalignment, hard steering, and abnormal tire wear. All vehicles should have suspension U-bolts tightened after the first 500 miles (800 km) of operation. Re-torque the front spring pinch bolts and shackle pinch bolts.

 **WARNING**

DO NOT operate the vehicle if the suspension U-bolts are not properly tightened. Improperly tightened (loose) suspension U-bolts can lead to an unsafe vehicle condition, including hard steering, axle misalignment, spring breakage, or abnormal tire wear. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

U-bolts are difficult to tighten unless you have the right equipment. If you cannot tighten them correctly yourself, be sure to have them checked and tightened regularly by an authorized technician. Tighten U-bolt nuts to the specified torque value with the vehicle loaded to its normal gross weight. See Suspension U-Bolts, Grade 8 on page 276 specifications for torque values applying to U-bolts and nuts.

 **WARNING**

DO NOT replace U-bolts and nuts with common U-bolts or standard nuts. These parts are critical to vehicle safety. If the wrong U-bolts or nuts are used, the axle could loosen or separate from the vehicle and cause a serious accident. Use only PACCAR replacement parts. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

10.2 Rear Axle and Suspension

REAR AXLE AND SUSPENSION

The vehicle's suspension, by design, requires a minimal amount of maintenance. However, suspensions in over-the-road operations require periodic inspection to ensure trouble-free performance.

 **WARNING**

Prior to performing maintenance, do the following to prevent uncontrolled vehicle movement:

- Park the vehicle on a hard and level surface.
- Chock forward and rear wheels securely.

Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.


 **WARNING**

DO NOT operate the vehicle if the suspension U-bolts are not properly tightened. Improperly tightened (loose) suspension U-bolts can lead to an unsafe

vehicle condition, including hard steering, axle misalignment, spring breakage, or abnormal tire wear. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

Failure to maintain the specified torque values or to replace worn parts can cause component failure, possibly resulting in an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **CAUTION**

DO NOT spray the suspension with chemical products or mineral oil; it can cause damage to the bushings. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

 **NOTE**

Failure to follow these recommendations could void warranty.

Visual Inspection

For all vehicles, mandatory maintenance procedures include retightening of U-bolts and complete inspection. Even with proper maintenance, however, many factors affect the service life of springs and suspension components: fatigue, vehicle gross weight, type of load, road conditions, and vehicle speed. All vehicles must have their U-bolts checked and tightened regularly. Severe use of the vehicle can cause them to loosen faster. It is important that U-bolts remain tight. Make sure that a technician with proper training and the right tools checks and tightens the U-bolts on the vehicle. After the first 500 miles (mi) (800 km) of operation, periodically inspect the suspension as noted below:

- Visually check for loose or missing fasteners, cracks in hanger, or axle connection brackets
- Check for centered springs in hangers that are in good condition
- Check for cracks, wear marks, splits, or other defects on the surface of the spring
- Replace defective parts. It is impossible to restore springs to their original service life. Replace the complete assembly if cracks or other defects are detected
- After replacement of any part or

discovery of loose components, check the torque of all fasteners

- New springs settle-in after the vehicle's initial service, causing the U-bolts to become loose

Rear Suspension Fasteners

To maintain the performance of the air suspension, check fastener torque values after the first 2,000 miles (mi) (3,200 km) of service and every 60,000 miles (mi) (96,000 km) after. Torque recommendations apply to fasteners supplied and installed by vehicle manufacture. The values listed at the back of this chapter (See Suspension U-Bolts, Grade 8 on page 276 and Frame Fastener Torque Requirements on page 273), are for cadmium plated or phosphate and oil fasteners only.

Rear Suspension U-bolts

U-bolts are difficult to tighten unless you have the right equipment. If you cannot tighten them correctly yourself, make sure to have them checked and tightened regularly by an authorized technician.


 **WARNING**

DO NOT operate the vehicle if the suspension U-bolts are not properly tightened. Improperly tightened (loose) suspension U-bolts can lead to an unsafe

vehicle condition, including hard steering, axle misalignment, spring breakage, or abnormal tire wear. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **NOTE**

To ensure an accurate torque reading, use properly maintained and calibrated torque wrenches. Clean the nut and bolt. No dirt, grit, or rust should be present.

 **NOTE**

Whenever possible, torque all frame fasteners on the nut end, not the bolt head.

Load the vehicle to its normal gross weight before tightening the U-bolts. Loading the vehicle ensures proper adjustment of the U-bolt and spring assembly.

 **WARNING**

DO NOT replace U-bolts and nuts with common U-bolts or standard nuts. These parts are critical to vehicle safety.

If the wrong U-bolts or nuts are used, the axle could loosen or separate from the vehicle and cause a serious accident. Use only PACCAR replacement parts. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

REAR AXLE LUBRICATION

See the axle manufacturer's operator's manual for lubrication specifications and service intervals.

Check oil level with the vehicle parked on level ground and the fluid warm. The level should be even with the bottom of the filler hole.

REAR AXLE ALIGNMENT

Continual road shock and load stresses may force the rear axles out of alignment. If you detect rapid tire wear on the rear axles, you may have misaligned axles. If you suspect rapid tire wear, have your rear axle alignment checked and adjusted by an authorized dealer.

Suspension alignment should be checked when any one of the following conditions exist:

- Total vehicle alignment required after a body has been installed on truck chassis.

- Discovery of loose suspension fasteners (loose defined as any torque below the recommended torque value)
- Discovery of elongated holes in a suspension component
- Bushing replacement
- Excessive or abnormal tire wear
- Immediately after post body installation (See First Day in the Maintenance Chapter)

DRIVE AXLE - DANA

Refer to the Dana manual provided with your vehicle.

EATON/DANA AXLE LUBRICATION

Refer to the Eaton or Dana manual provided with your vehicle.

DRIVE AXLE - MERITOR

Refer to the Meritor manual provided with your vehicle.

MERITOR AXLE LUBRICATION

Refer to the Meritor manual provided with your vehicle.

DRIVE AXLE - SISU BREATHER AND BRAKES

Refer to the SISU manual provided with your vehicle.

DRIVE AXLE (SISU) INSPECTION

Refer to the SISU manual provided with your vehicle.

DRIVE AXLE (SISU) OIL SERVICING

Refer to the SISU manual provided with your vehicle.

DRIVE AXLE - (SISU) LUBE FILTER

Refer to the SISU manual provided with your vehicle.

11 BRAKE SYSTEM

11.1 Brake System

To learn more about brakes, see the Index, under Brakes.



WARNING

DO NOT work on the brake system if the vehicle is not securely on a lift or jack stand, with the wheels and tires removed. If the vehicle is not properly secured to prevent movement, it could move unintentionally. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



WARNING

DO NOT use brake linings with a thickness below the specified minimum. Such linings will have lining rivets exposed that can damage the brake drum and reduce brake efficiency. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



WARNING

DO NOT use any replacement part in the brake system unless it conforms exactly to original specifications. A nonconforming part in the vehicle's brake system could cause a malfunction resulting in a loss of vehicle control,

leading to an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



WARNING

The air brake system of this vehicle was configured for ONE of the following operations: tractor or truck, and complies with the respective portions of FMVSS 121. A tractor shall not be operated or configured as a truck, nor shall a truck be operated or configured as a tractor, without significant modifications to the air brake system in order to retain compliance with FMVSS 121. Contact your dealer for more information. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Brake adjustment and brake balance must be set carefully to make the most efficient use of the forces available for braking and to allow equal stopping forces at all wheels. Once a brake system is set to specifications, changing any one of its components or any combination of components may cause the system to not work as well. All parts have to work together to perform as they should. Any replacement com-

ponents in your brake system should be exactly equal to the original components. Any changes from the original specifications can affect the whole system. All of the following areas are interrelated and must conform to original specifications:

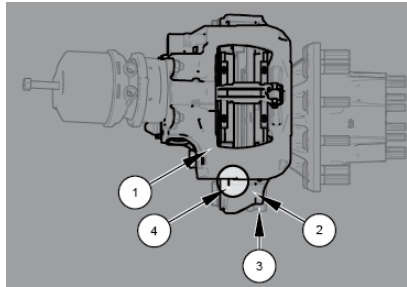
- Tire size
- Drum brakes
- Cam radius
- Wedge angle
- Drum radius
- Brake linings
- Brake chambers
- Slack adjusters
- Disc brakes
- Disc rotors

All vehicle operators should check their brakes regularly.

11.2 Air Disc Brakes

AIR DISC BRAKES

This vehicle may have disc brakes instead of drum brakes.



1. Brake caliper
2. Caliper mounting flange
3. Brake rotor
4. Inspection notches

HOW TO INSPECT BRAKE PADS ON DISC BRAKES

To inspect the brake pads:

1. Park on level ground and chock the wheels.
2. Temporarily release the parking brake.
3. Looking from the ground up at the bottom of the caliper and rotor, compare the relative position of two notches; one located on the caliper and the other on the carrier.
4. Take a measurement from between these two notches and compare them to the specifications to

determine if the pads need to be replaced.

Have a qualified mechanic perform a detailed inspection if the notches are not found. The pads and rotors should be measured and compared against the manufacturer's specifications located in the brake manufacturer's service manual.

INSPECT DISC BRAKE CALIPER FOR RUNNING CLEARANCE

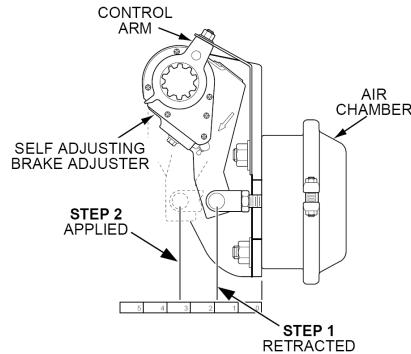
Regularly inspect caliper for Running Clearance:

1. Stop the vehicle on level ground and let the brakes cool down. Hot brake calipers can burn skin on contact.
2. Chock the wheels.
3. Temporarily release the parking brake.
4. Grab the caliper and move it. This movement is Running Clearance.
5. Proper Running Clearance is 0.08 in. (2 mm) of movement of the brake caliper (approximately the thickness of a nickel) in the inboard/outboard direction.

Have a qualified mechanic provide further inspection if the caliper does not move or appears to move more than the specified clearance

11.3 Auto Slack Adjuster

The auto slack adjuster is a mechanism to maintain the correct amount of space between the braking surface and the friction material.



1. Retracted position, no brake pedal applied
2. Applied position, brake pedal engaged

11.4 Drum Brake Inspection

DRUM BRAKE INSPECTION

Have brake drum linings inspected by a qualified technician for wear at regular intervals according to the maintenance schedule. In severe service or off-highway applications inspect the linings more frequently. In addition, periodically check the brake chamber stroke. Replace the slack adjuster if proper stroke cannot be maintained.

Operational checks of automatic slack adjusters

1. Start the vehicle and get the air system up to normal operating pressure. Do not apply the parking brake.
2. Apply pressure to the brake pedal and measure the distance the air chamber pushrod traveled.
3. Compare the results to the specification to determine if the automatic slack adjusters need replacing.

AUTOMATIC SLACK ADJUSTER STROKE SPECIFICATION

Chamber Type	Stroke
36 (rear brakes)	1.5-2.5 in. (38-63 mm)
30 (rear brakes)	1.5-2 in. (38-51 mm)
16, 20 and 24 (front brakes)	1-1.75 in. (25.4-44.4 mm)

12 CAB MAINTENANCE

12.1 Cab Maintenance

Cab exterior, interior, frame, and engine compartment components need maintenance to ensure longevity and safe operations. A clean vehicle also allows leaks to be detected easier.

WARNING

Always allow hot surfaces to cool down before attempting to work near them. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



WARNING

Handle cleaning agents carefully. Cleaning agents may be poisonous. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



WARNING

DO NOT use gasoline, kerosene, naphtha, nail polish remover, or other volatile cleaning fluids. They may be toxic, flammable, or hazardous in other ways. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



WARNING

DO NOT clean the underside of chassis, fenders, wheel covers, etc. without protecting your hands and arms. You may cut yourself on sharp edged metal parts. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



WARNING

Moisture, ice, and road salt on brakes may affect braking efficiency. Test the brakes carefully after each vehicle wash. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Vehicle Cleaning

- Observe all caution labels
- Always read directions on the container before using any product
- Do not use any solution that can damage the body paint
- Most chemical cleaners are concentrates that require dilution
- Only use spot removing fluids in well ventilated areas
- Any vehicle is subjected to deterioration from multiple causes (i.e. industrial fumes, ice, snow, corrosive road salt, etc.)

Exterior and Engine Compartment

Corrosive materials used to remove ice, snow, and dust from the road can collect on the entire vehicle with concentrated accumulations throughout the underbody and engine compartment. If these materials are not removed, accelerated corrosion (rust)

can occur on underbody parts such as fuel lines, frame rails, floor pan, electrical and exhaust system, even though they have been provided with corrosion protection. At least every spring, flush these materials from the entire vehicle, including the underbody and engine compartment, with plain water using light water pressure. On vehicles used in applications and/or areas that experience high usage of, or exposure to, corrosive materials, cleaning of the entire vehicle should be done more frequently. If desired, your dealer can do this service for you.



WARNING

DO NOT direct high pressure water onto electrical components, plug connectors, seals, or flexible hoses. High pressure water is more likely to affect components or be introduced into closed systems. This can accelerate corrosion, degrade electrical components, or contaminate system lubricants and fluids. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

To prevent rust, keep chromed parts clean and protected with wax at all times, especially in winter conditions when the roads are salted.

- If necessary, use a commercial chrome cleaner to remove light rust.
- Chrome surfaces are best cleaned with fresh water. Wipe dry to preserve their luster. A commercial chrome cleaner will remove light rust. After cleaning, wax flat surfaces and apply a thin coat of rust preventive lubricant around bolts or other fasteners.
- Clean aluminum wheels and bumpers with cool water. Tar-remover will get rid of heavy deposits of road grime. To prevent spotting, wipe aluminum surfaces dry after washing.
- Under corrosive conditions, such as driving on salted roads, clean aluminum parts with steam or high-pressure water from a hose. A mild automotive soap solution will help. Rinse thoroughly.

To maintain the tailpipe's quality finish, wash the tailpipe with a soft cloth, mild automotive soap, and water or glass cleaner. A non-abrasive chrome polish can be used sparingly on hard-to-clean areas. DO NOT clean your high-heat chrome

using scouring pads, abrasive chrome polish, highly acidic chemical cleaners or any other abrasive cleaners.

Even high quality stainless steel parts can rust under prolonged exposure to salt water, especially when the salt-laden moisture is held against the metal surface by road grime. It is important to frequently clean salty moisture and grime from stainless steel surfaces.

- If surface rust is encountered, wash the surface and use a commercial polishing compound to clean off the rust, followed by a coating of wax.
- Never use steel wool when cleaning stainless steel. Minute particles of the steel wool can become embedded in the surface of the stainless steel part and cause rust staining.

Weather Stripping

Frequent washing of the vehicle is required to remove road grime and contaminants that can stain and oxidize paint and accelerate corrosion of plated and polished metal surfaces. Waxing offers added protection against staining and oxidation. Do not apply wax in the hot sun and do not friction burn the paint with a buffing machine. Occasionally spray weather-stripping on doors and windows with silicone compound to help preserve resiliency. This

is especially useful in freezing weather to prevent doors and windows from sticking shut with ice.

i NOTE

To allow enough time for your vehicle's finish to cure, wait at least thirty days after the date of manufacture before waxing.

Cleaning Interior Vinyl and Upholstery

i NOTE

Strong cleaning agents such as hand sanitizer, solvents, paint thinners, window cleaner and gasoline/ diesel fuel must never be used on your vehicle's interior. Repeated exposure to chemicals such as sunscreen, insect repellents containing DEET, or brake fluid may cause accelerated wear, tackiness, or discoloration of interior surfaces.

Wipe vinyl upholstery and lining with a good commercial upholstery cleaner. Do not use acetone or lacquer thinner. Clean fabric upholstery with upholstery shampoo specially formulated for this purpose.

- First remove loose dirt, dust, or debris with a vacuum cleaner.

- Use a soft brush to loosen caked-on dirt before vacuuming it away.
- Wipe the fabric surface with a slightly damp cloth and dry the seat fabric thoroughly. If the fabric is still dirty, wipe using a mixture of mild soap and lukewarm water, then dry thoroughly.
- If the stain does not come out use an upholstery shampoo specially formulated for this purpose. Test the cleaner on a hidden place to make sure it does not harm the fabric. Follow the instructions on the container.

Other interior surfaces may be cleaned using a mixture of mild soap and lukewarm water, or an automotive interior cleaner, used on its intended surface (i.e. use leather conditioner on leather surfaces, etc.).

Avoid frequent or repeated use of the following products on interior surfaces:

- Alcohol-based cleaners (including hand sanitizer)
- Methanol-based cleaners
- Bleach
- Acetone
- Any other strong solvent
- Abrasive cleaners
- Sunscreen

12.2 How to Wash the Exterior of the Vehicle

Your dealer has a number of vehicle care products and can advise you on which ones to use for cleaning the exterior and interior of your vehicle.

WARNING

Handle cleaning agents carefully. Cleaning agents may be poisonous. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

DO NOT use gasoline, kerosene, naphtha, nail polish remover, or other volatile cleaning fluids. They may be toxic, flammable, or hazardous in other ways. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

DO NOT clean the underside of chassis, fenders, wheel covers, etc. without

protecting your hands and arms. You may cut yourself on sharp edged metal parts. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

Moisture, ice, and road salt on brakes may affect braking efficiency. Test the brakes carefully after each vehicle wash. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

DO NOT aim the water jet directly at a door lock or latch and tape over the key holes to prevent water from entering. An occupant could become trapped in the vehicle if water seeps into the lock cylinder and freezes. Prevent locks from freezing in the winter by squirting glycerin or lock deicer into the lock cylinders. If water should seep in, remove it with compressed air. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

**WARNING**

DO NOT direct high pressure water onto electrical components, plug connectors, seals, or flexible hoses. High pressure water is more likely to affect components or be introduced into closed systems. This can accelerate corrosion, degrade electrical components, or contaminate system lubricants and fluids. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

**NOTE**

To allow enough time for your vehicle's finish to cure, wait at least thirty days after the date of manufacture before waxing.

1. Begin by spraying water over the dry surface to remove all loose dirt before applying the car wash solution.
 - Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunshine.
 - Do not spray water directly into the cab vents.
2. Using soapy water, wash the vehicle with a clean soft cloth or a soft brush

made for automotive cleaning.

- Use cool water and a mild, automotive-type soap. Strong industrial detergents, cleaning agents and household-type soaps are not recommended and may damage the vehicle's paint.
 - Do not use stiff brushes, paper towels, steel wool, or abrasive cleaning compounds because they will scratch painted, plated, and polished metal surfaces.
3. Rinse painted surfaces with gentle water pressure frequently while washing to flush away dirt that might scratch the finishes during the washing operation.
 4. Hose dirt and grime from the entire chassis.
 5. Wipe everything dry with a chamois to avoid water spots. To prevent water spotting, dry off the cosmetic surfaces with a clean cloth or chamois.
 6. Remove road tar with an automotive-type tar remover or mineral spirits.
 7. After cleaning and drying the entire vehicle, apply a quality automotive wax to protect the vehicle's finish.

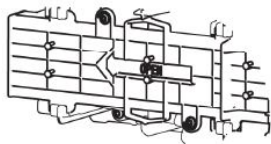
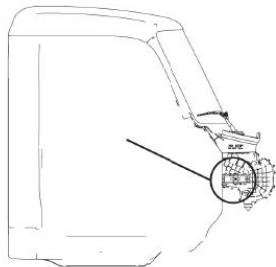
12.3 Cab HVAC Fresh Air Filter Replacement

The fresh air filter for the cab HVAC is located in the air intake housing that is mounted to the firewall in the passenger side rear corner of the engine compartment. The filter can be replaced without using any tools.

1. Tilt the hood open.
2. Locate the air intake housing at the passenger side rear corner of the engine bay, below the rain tray.
3. Locate the filter cover labeled "OPEN" with an arrow pointing towards the rear of the vehicle. Slide the filter cover towards the rear of the vehicle, until you are able to remove the cover.
4. Remove and inspect the filter, referring to the maintenance interval schedule.
5. Install the new air filter into its housing, taking care to align the airflow direction indicated on the filter element with the airflow direction that's marked on the air intake housing.
6. Replace the filter cover on the air intake housing and slide the cover toward the front of the vehicle. An audible "snap" sound can be heard when the cover is correctly installed. If the snap feature is damaged there are

two screw features that may be used to secure the cover.

7. Close and secure the vehicle's hood.



12.4 Cleaning Screen



CAUTION

DO NOT spray water or cleaning solution directly onto the screen. Liquid dripping or permeating through the edges of the screen can cause a short cir-

cuit, component breakdown, and lead to screen malfunction. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage



CAUTION

DO NOT use cleaners that contain alcohol or ammonia. These can strip protective coatings from the screen and cause cracking or yellowing. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

To clean the screen, dampen a clean, soft, and lint-free cloth with water only. A mild glass cleaner that does not contain alcohol or ammonia may also be used. Cleaners that contain alcohol or ammonia will eventually dry out, crack, and "yellow" the screen. Wipe the screen back and forth gently. You can also use a commercial cleaner specially designed for LCD screens.

12.5 Cab Structure, Doors and Hoods

Lubricate the lower hood pivot (only if lube fittings are present.)

13 COOLING SYSTEM MAINTENANCE

13.1 Cooling System Maintenance

The cooling system in your vehicle was factory filled with extended life coolant that meets or exceeds ASTM D6210, Cummins Engineering Standard 14603 for ISX and PX series engines, and MAT74002 Standard when equipped with an MX series engine. PACCAR recommends only using a 50/50 mixture of distilled water and ELC when cooling system service is required. A 50/50 mixture of ELC and distilled water will provide freeze protection down to -34°F (-36.7°C), which is adequate for most locations in North America. For extremely cold operating conditions, a 60/40 mixture (coolant/water ratio) can be used to provide freeze protection down to -62°F (-52.2°C). Unless otherwise optioned, factory fill coolant is an ethylene glycol, nitrated organic acid technology (NOAT) extended life coolant (ELC) formulation at a 50:50 coolant-to-distilled water mixture. The factory fill meets or exceeds ASTM D6210 and Cummins Engineering Standard 14603 for ISX and PX engines, and MAT74002 for PACCAR MX-11 and MX-13 engine

requirements. Maintaining coolant chemistry and freeze protection is critical to engine and cooling system component health and longevity. Unless otherwise optioned, factory fill coolant is an ethylene glycol, nitrated organic acid technology (NOAT) extended life coolant (ELC) formulation at a 50:50 coolant-to-distilled water mixture. The factory fill meets or exceeds ASTM D6210 and Cummins Engineering Standard 14603 for ISX and PX engines, and MAT74002 for PACCAR MX series engine requirements. Maintaining coolant chemistry and freeze protection is critical to engine and cooling system component health and longevity.

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT touch, inhale, or consume antifreeze or coolant. If antifreeze/coolant comes into contact with eyes, rinse thoroughly with water for 15 minutes. If there is prolonged or repeated contact with skin, immediately wash skin with soap and water. If antifreeze/coolant is consumed, seek immediate medical attention. DO NOT induce vomiting. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

⚠ CAUTION

The engine cooling system has very specific maintenance and inspection requirements. Failure to follow requirements can damage the engine. Engine damage can include but is not limited to freezing, boiling, corrosion, pitted cylinder liners. This information is found in the engine manufacturer's owner's manual. It is the owner's responsibility to follow all requirements listed in the engine manufacturer's owner's manual. Failure to comply may result in engine damage.

⚠ CAUTION

The engine cooling system has specific maintenance and inspection requirements. Failure to follow these can cause engine damage, including freezing, boiling, corrosion, and pitted cylinder liners. Refer to the engine manufacturer's owner's manual for details. It is the owner's responsibility to follow all listed requirements to avoid engine damage. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

⚠ CAUTION

Always use a genuine PACCAR coolant filter. Genuine PACCAR filters comply with component specifications and will optimize coolant system operation. Use of non-genuine PACCAR coolant filter can cause severe damage to vehicle components. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

i NOTE

Coolant is harmful to the environment. Unused coolant must be stored as a toxic hazardous material in leak-proof containers. Used coolant must be processed as industrial chemical waste. Please follow HAZMAT guidelines with both used and unused coolants.

Concentration

Check the level of freeze/boil-over protection, which is determined by the glycol concentration. Use a glycol refractometer to determine glycol level. Add coolant to obtain the coolant/water ratio required to provide the protection you need. A 50:50 mix of coolant and water is adequate for

most applications. For extremely cold operating conditions, the ratio can be adjusted to a higher concentration of coolant.

i NOTE
Maximum recommended ELC concentration is 60% ELC and 40% water by volume (a 60/40 coolant mixture). The minimum recommended concentration is 40% ELC and 60% water by volume (a 40/60 coolant mixture).

Table 9: Glycol Concentration Level

Level	Desired Coolant/Water Ratio	Freeze Point °F (°C)
Recommended Levels	40%	-12 (-24)
	45%	-23 (-31)
	50%	-34 (-37)
	55%	-50 (-46)
	60%	-62 (-52)

Condition

Perform a visual inspection of the coolant. It should have no cloudiness or floating debris. Determine the chemical inhibitor concentration level by using an ELC spe-

cific test kit or test strips. Inhibitor concentration level determines corrosion protection. If you are concerned about possible coolant quality, contamination, or mechanical problems, submit a coolant sample for analysis. Improper maintenance may cause coolant degradation and could result in damage to the cooling system and engine components. Consult your dealer or the coolant manufacturer's representative for recommended ELC test kits, test strips, and laboratory sample procedures.

Coolant Extender

Add ELC extender, if necessary, according to the corrosion inhibitor concentration required. DO NOT add coolant extender to nitrite-free coolant.

Checking Coolant Level

Check the coolant level daily. When adding coolant, avoid mixing different brands and formulations. If the coolant is mixed with more than 25% of a different formulation, engine corrosion damage can occur. If mixing exceeds 25% of total system volume, it is recommended to flush and refill the system completely with one type of coolant.

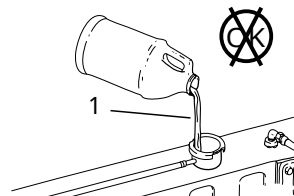
Coolant Filter

Your engine may be equipped with a coolant filter. It is a "blank filter" and does not contain chemicals or time-release additives. Replace it only with a blank fil-

ter at the interval specified in your engine's operator's manual. Never use filters that contain supplemental coolant additives (SCAs) in an ELC-filled system. Consult your engine operator's manual for information on the coolant filter and service procedures.

⚠ CAUTION
Always use a genuine PACCAR coolant filter. Genuine PACCAR filters comply with component specifications and will optimize coolant system operation. Use of non-genuine PACCAR coolant filter can cause severe damage to vehicle components. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

Cooling System Sealing Additives and Soluble Oils



- Do not use soluble oils or sealing additives.

CAUTION

The use of sealing additives or soluble oils in the cooling system can cause damage to the engine. These additives can plug various areas of the radiator, EGR system, and oil cooler. Plugging the cooling system can prevent or slow heat transfers, causing internal engine damage. **DO NOT** use sealing additives or soluble oils in the cooling system. The use of sealing additives can

- Build up in coolant low-flow areas
- Plug the radiator and oil cooler
- Damage the water pump seal
- Damage heat transfer surfaces
- Damage seals and hoses
- Corrode brass and copper

Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

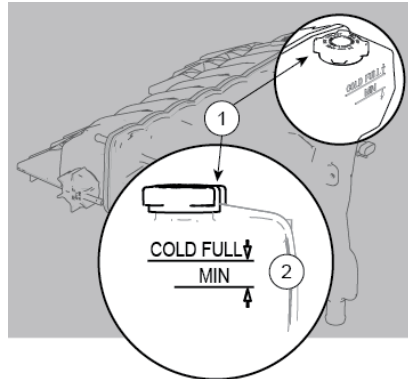
NOTE

Octane engines require a specific organic acid technology (OAT) coolant (green color) compared to the nitrated organic technology (NOAT) coolant (red color) for natural gas and diesel engines.

13.2 Inspect Coolant Level

Inspect the vehicle's coolant surge tank for proper coolant level. Add coolant if the level in the tank is below the line marked **MIN**.

The minimum fluid level is determined by the line on the surge tank indicated by the letters "MIN." This indicator is located below the fill cap. The cooling system will need to be filled if the level is not above the "MIN" line, regardless of engine temperature.



1. Fill location
2. Fill line

13.3 Radiator Hoses Inspection

Perform this procedure for radiator hoses inspection.

1. Check the following radiator hose conditions:
 - Deterioration/signs of leaking
 - Hose clamp torque

13.4 How to Add Coolant to the Cooling System

WARNING

DO NOT remove the radiator fill cap while the engine is hot. Scalding steam and fluid under pressure may escape. You could be badly burned. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

Only use the fill port to fill the surge tank. **DO NOT** attempt to fill the tank using the pressure port. Scalding steam and fluid under pressure may escape

and cause serious personal injuries. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

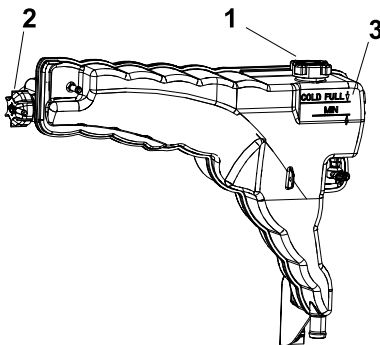
CAUTION

DO NOT overfill the cooling system. Excess coolant may overflow or result in loss of antifreeze and reduced corrosion protection. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

NOTE

If frequent topping off is necessary and there are no visible signs of coolant leaks when the engine is cold, check for leaks with the engine operating at normal temperature.

Use a solution of half ethylene glycol antifreeze and half water for best heater performance. Do not use more than 60 percent concentration of antifreeze, as a shortened heater life will result.



1. Fill cap (service point)
2. Pressure cap (never to be removed)
3. Fill line

1. Turn off the engine and let it cool for a minimum of 20 minutes.
2. If your cooling system is built with an air bleed valve in the upper engine coolant pipe, open the air bleed valve before filling the surge tank.
3. Close any open coolant drain valves in the lower engine coolant pipe.

CAUTION

Turning the key to ON allows the electric coolant pump for the 48V generator to run, purging air from

the generator. Failure to comply may result in damage to the engine or 48V generator system

If equipped with MX-13 CARB Emission engine, set key to ON position.

5. **CAUTION**

Turning the key to ON allows the electric coolant pump for the 48V generator to run, purging air from the generator. Failure to comply may result in damage to the engine or 48V generator system

6. Remove the surge tank fill cap (1). DO NOT remove the surge tank pressure cap.
7. Fill the system with premixed coolant through the surge tank fill port. Pour coolant at a steady rate until it reaches the lower of the two lines indicated by either "COLD MIN" or "MIN" on the surge tank. Wait for one minute after adding coolant. If the coolant level drops, add coolant until it returns to the lower line.
8. Close the air bleed valve if opened earlier in this procedure.

i NOTE
 If equipped with MX-13 CARB Emission Engine, confirm no stop lamp is illuminated on dash due to coolant pump fault. If a stop lamp is illuminated, stop the procedure and call service.

9. Start the engine and maintain an idle at low rpm.
10. While the engine is idling air will purge from the cooling system via the surge tank's coolant fill port, which will lower the coolant level in the surge tank. Continue to fill the surge tank until the coolant level remains approximately 1/2 in. (13 mm) above the "MIN" line. This may take up to 2 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.
11. Maintain a low idle until the thermostat opens and the operating temperature stabilizes. A sign that the thermostat has opened is when the upper coolant pipe gets hot on the bottom side indicating hot coolant is now running through it.
12. Add coolant to the surge tank until the coolant remains 1/2 in. (13 mm) above the "MIN" level.

13. Operate the engine at high idle for 10 minutes. Afterward, add coolant to the surge tank until the coolant remains 1/2 in. (13 mm) above the "COLD FULL" line.

14. Reinstall the surge tank fill cap. Check the coolant level before and after each trip. Add coolant as necessary. Coolant may not immediately appear at the correct level after the radiator has been filled. Air may be trapped in the cooling system, which will affect the coolant level until the air is purged. After servicing the cooling system, continue monitoring it for 3-5 days. The coolant level in the surge tank will lower when air trapped in the cooling system is purged. During each pre-trip inspection you should inspect recently serviced components of the cooling system for signs of coolant leaks.

i NOTE
 If the coolant frequently needs topping-up or there are any signs of coolant leakage, consult a PACCAR Service dealer.

14 DRIVELINE

See the driveshaft manufacturer's operator manual for lubrication specifications and service intervals.

! WARNING
 Improper lubrication of U-joints can cause them to fail prematurely. The driveshaft could separate from the vehicle and result in an accident. Make sure lubricant is purged at all four ends of each U-joint and loosen caps if necessary. Also, regularly inspect U-joints for excessive wear or movement, and repair or replace as necessary. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

15 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM


15.1 Electrical System

! WARNING
 Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and repro-

ductive harm. Wash hands after handling. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

Remove all jewelry before working on the batteries or electrical system. If jewelry or other metal comes into contact with an electrical circuit, a dangerous short circuit may occur. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **CAUTION**

DO NOT modify or attempt to repair the vehicle electrical system or power distribution box. All electrical repairs should be performed at an authorized dealership. Improper repair or modifications will void your warranty and/or cause serious damage to your vehicle. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

15.2 FLC-25 Camera

- Inspect and keep the camera clean to

ensure a clear view of the road ahead.


- Protect the camera lens whenever the inside of the windshield is cleaned. Within the viewing area of the camera the windshield has to be free of visible scratches and injuries.

15.3 FLC-25 Radar Sensor

- Inspect and keep the radar front and windshield clean and free of obstructions.
- Inspect for damage to the bumper and radar to ensure that the alignment has not been compromised. **Never use the radar unit as a step.**

 **WARNING**

In cases where the bumper, radar and/or windshield have sustained any damage, are misaligned, or if the device is suspect for tampering, DO NOT use the active cruise control until the vehicle has been repaired and the radar realigned. In addition, an indicator on the dash typically will illuminate if the system detects any of these conditions. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.


 **CAUTION**

The installation of aftermarket deer guards, bumper guards, snow plows, or similar potential obstructions is not recommended and could impair the operation of the radar. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

15.4 ECU - Bendix SDP5

- Refer to the Bendix manual provided with your vehicle.
- Protect the processor from damage and displacement from its set location in the overhead compartment.

15.5 Engine Aftertreatment System Power Requirements

 **CAUTION**

DO NOT disconnect battery power until at least 20 minutes have passed since turning the start switch OFF (emergencies are an exception). The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) system recirculates fluid to DEF injector to prevent overheating or heat damage. Failure

to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

CAUTION

DO NOT use the 48 V cables or coolant lines attached to the 48 V generator as a support to perform an inspection or work under the vehicle. This will damage the cable connectors or coolant lines. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

For situations where the battery will be disconnected (for example, service or maintenance of the vehicle), please wait 20 minutes before disconnecting battery power.

15.6 Low Voltage Disconnect (LVD) (Option)

The Low Voltage Disconnect (LVD) may extend battery life and prevent the battery from being drained below the charge required to start the engine. It does this by shutting off non-vital battery loads. When battery voltage drops below the LVD setting, LVD starts a two-minute countdown. If battery voltage remains below the LVD setting and the engine is not started, when the countdown ends, all non-vital bat-

tery loads (hotel loads) will be shut off. The LVD setting is adjusted in the Settings sub-menu of the Digital Display. When battery voltage drops below the LVD setting

1. An amber LVD notification occurs, accompanied by an audible warning. This starts the two-minute countdown.
2. Thirty seconds before the countdown ends, the Battery Voltage indicator is replaced by the amber (or red) LVD telltale (on the 15 inch display, LVD telltale color depends on the severity of battery depletion). The LVD notification will turn red and will be accompanied by a continuous audible warning.
3. When the two-minute countdown has ended, the LVD "Hotel Loads Disconnected" notification appears, and LVD shuts off all loads connected through the LVD system.

Figure 39: Battery Voltage Indicator



The LVD condition will not clear until battery voltage increases above the LVD setting or the engine is started. Electrical loads shut off by LVD

- Cab dome lamps
- Cab accessories

- Spare LVD wiring for customer added accessories

WARNING

DO NOT use the Spare Battery A and B circuits or other circuits that are controlled by the low voltage disconnect (LVD) to power electronic engine controls, ABS circuits, or safety/work related lighting. Before adding any device to the vehicle's electrical system, consult your nearest authorized dealer or read the contents of TMC RP136. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

NOTE

The determination of what circuits/loads that were connected to the LVD was based upon the recommendation from Technology and Maintenance Council (TMC) of the American Trucking Association. To review the recommended practice, see TMC RP-136.

i NOTE

All LVD circuits are color-coded blue on the central electrical panel cover label.

15.7 Fuses, Circuit Breakers and Relays

Fuses, circuit breakers, and relays are located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC) to the left of the steering column, behind the clutch pedal. Additional fuses are located in the engine compartment (driver's side firewall) and also in the sleeper (driver's side of vehicle) under the bunk storage compartment. Refer to the fuse labels affixed at each fuse panel location (generally under the fuse panel cover) for information about the location and amp ratings of each circuit.

15.8 Altering the Electrical System

Refer to a wiring diagram for your chassis before adding electrical options to ensure proper electrical system performance.

⚠ WARNING

Only replace a fuse with one of the correct size and amperage rating. Installing a fuse of the wrong rating may cause serious electrical damage or result in a thermal event. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

⚠ WARNING

Never install a circuit breaker/polyswitch in a location indicated for "fuse only." Using a polyswitch (circuit breaker) in a fuse-only circuit may cause the circuit to overheat in the event of a short. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

⚠ CAUTION

Follow all manufacturers' circuit protection recommendations for added wires or components. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

i NOTE

If you are unfamiliar with proper electrical repair practices and procedures, see your authorized dealer for assistance.

15.9 Vehicle CAN Bus

Your vehicle is equipped with a CAN bus electrical system. Because of how the electrical system is designed it is important that any accessories added after the vehicle is built are installed only on the K-CAN or the S-CAN. These dedicated CANs are provided on the driver's side of the cab, near to the interior fuse panel. Access to the K-CAN and S-CANs is provided by two RP1226 connectors. DO NOT tap into, connect to, tamper with, or splice into any CAN network other than the K-CAN or the S-CAN. Connecting to an unapproved CAN network may trigger CAN fault codes.

⚠ CAUTION

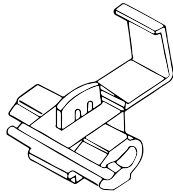
Connecting to an unapproved CAN network may trigger CAN fault codes. The manufacturer will not warrant failures or damage caused to CAN network components when the failure or damage is a result of improper connections to the

CAN network. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

CAUTION

The use of scotch locks, scraped off insulation, or electrical tape are not approved CAN connection techniques. These are the sources of numerous CAN faults, short circuits, wiring failures, and malfunctioning connections. Failure to comply may result in equipment damage or property damage.

Figure 40: Scotch locks



15.10 Batteries

Regular attention to the charging system helps prolong the service life of the batteries.

WARNING

DO NOT ignore any safety procedure as the battery can overheat and catch fire or explode. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

Never remove or tamper with battery caps. Ignoring this could allow battery acid to contact eyes, skin, fabrics, or painted surfaces. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

CAUTION

DO NOT store items (such as tools or equipment) in the battery box. Storing items in the battery box could damage the batteries or vehicle. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

CAUTION

When reinstalling batteries, ensure the new battery cable routings are free from

chafing, and DO NOT overtighten the battery tie-downs. Always replace the battery cover. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

CAUTION

DO NOT disconnect battery power until at least 20 minutes have passed since turning the start switch OFF (emergencies are an exception). The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) system recirculates fluid to DEF injector to prevent overheating or heat damage. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

Here are some common causes of battery failure:

- **Overcharge:** this condition results from improper voltage regulator adjustment. It results in overheating of the battery, warped plates, and the evaporation of electrolyte.
- **Undercharge:** the voltage regulator is malfunctioning, the drive belt is slipping, or your vehicle has undergone long periods of idling or short distance driving. These conditions result in the battery plates becoming covered with a

hard coating.

- Vibration: loose battery hold-downs may cause battery plate failure.
- Short Circuits: these discharge the battery by draining electricity.
- Dirty or Loose Connections: improper connections may stop the flow of electrical power to and from the battery.

Battery Charging



WARNING

Batteries can injure you severely. They contain acid, produce poisonous and explosive gases, and supply levels of electric current high enough to cause burns. A spark or flame near a battery on charge may cause it to explode with great force. Never remove or tamper with the battery caps. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage or property damage.

Only trickle charge the batteries to maintain battery condition. Have the batteries fully deep-charged by a qualified service facility. To help reduce the risk of personal injuries, follow these guidelines carefully when recharging a battery:

- Before attempting any service in the electrical installation, disconnect the

battery negative cable.

- Allow no sparks or open flame anywhere near the charging area.
- Trickle charge a battery only in a well-ventilated area such as outdoors or in a fully open garage. No open flames, including pilot lights can be present. Allow explosive gases generated during the charging process to escape.
- Always make sure that the battery charger is OFF before connecting or disconnecting the cable clamps.
- Never store or rest metal tools like jumper cables close to the battery. Metal must not come in contact with the positive battery terminal while also touching any other metal on the vehicle. The vehicle's body and frame are the electrical systems ground. Accidentally connecting the positive terminal directly to the frame or body could cause a short circuit and possibly an explosion.

Charging Reminders

- Use protective eyewear
- Keep all batteries away from children
- Never reverse battery poles
- Never attempt to place the vehicle in motion, or run the engine with the batteries disconnected
- Keep the battery clean and dry

- Look for any signs of damage
- Battery terminals must not be coated with improper grease. Use a commercially available, noncorrosive, non-conductive terminal coating, or petroleum jelly.
- Never use a fast charger as a booster to start the engine. This can seriously damage sensitive electronic components such as the relays, the radio, and battery charger. Fast charging a battery is dangerous and must only be attempted by a qualified technician with the proper equipment.

15.11 In Cab Battery Access

Your vehicle may be equipped with Absorbed Glass Mat (AGM) batteries located in the cab under the passenger's seat. The glass mat in AGM batteries are designed to absorb the battery acid inside the battery that can leak or spill out in conventional batteries. This design feature allows batteries to be positioned in any orientation without risk of leaking.

To access the batteries:

1. Enter the cab.
2. Remove six fasteners securing the passenger side seat base to the

- battery box assembly.
- Remove the seat and seat base as one unit to gain access to the batteries.
 - Installation is the reverse of removal.

15.12 Cranking Battery Specification

Category	Specification
Group	31
Stud Type	Threaded
Cold Crank Amps	650
Voltage	12 V
Reserve Capacity	160 minutes
General	Maintenance free

15.13 Removing Batteries

After accessing the batteries, follow these steps to remove them from the vehicle.

CAUTION

DO NOT disconnect battery power until at least 20 minutes have passed since turning the start switch OFF (emergencies are an exception). The Diesel

Exhaust Fluid (DEF) system recirculates fluid to DEF injector to prevent overheating or heat damage. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

- Be sure all switches on the vehicle are turned OFF
- Wait 20 minutes after turning ignition off before disconnecting the batteries
- Disconnect negative (-) ground cable first
- Disconnect positive (+) cable
- Unscrew the holding plate bolts with an open end wrench

NOTE

Always dispose of automotive batteries in a safe and responsible manner. Contact your authorized dealer for disposal standards. Call your local authorized recycling center for information on recycling automotive batteries.

Follow the procedures below to reinstall batteries on the vehicle and replace parts removed for access.

15.14 Installing Batteries

Follow the procedure below to reinstall main batteries on the vehicle:

CAUTION

When reinstalling batteries, ensure the new battery cable routings are free from chafing, and DO NOT overtighten the battery tie-downs. Always replace the battery cover. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

NOTE

Always dispose of automotive batteries in a safe and responsible manner. Contact your authorized dealer for disposal standards. Call your local authorized recycling center for information on recycling automotive batteries.

NOTE

Make sure to reconnect the ground (negative) cable last.

- Place batteries in vehicle and tighten bolt of holding plate

2. Reconnect positive cable
3. Reconnect ground (negative) ground cable

15.15 Replace Battery Box Cover

WARNING

Always reinstall steps before entering the cab or accessing the deck plate. Without steps you could slip and fall. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

Fairings not installed properly could come loose and cause other motorists to have an injury accident. It is important that fairings be installed properly. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

1. Replace battery cover.
2. Install two bolts in step strut. Torque to 24-32 lb-ft (33-43 N·m).
3. Install fairing and install four bolts. Torque to 6-7 lb-ft (8-9 N·m).

4. Install steps by installing two bolts in each step. Torque to 24-32 lb-ft (33-43 N·m).

15.16 Slow Battery Charging

WARNING

Always connect the cables from positive to positive (+ to +) and negative to negative (- to -). Improperly attaching the cables could cause the battery to explode. Failure to comply may result death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

Always make sure the battery charger is OFF before connecting or disconnecting the cable clamps to reduce the danger of explosions and resulting death or personal injury. DO NOT connect or disconnect charger cables while the charger is operating. Damage to the charging system may occur. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

NOTE

Some vehicles may have an ultra capacitor mounted in the battery box. These devices have a similar shape to a battery but have two positive posts and one negative post. Do not attach battery chargers to these devices to recharge the vehicles batteries. Connect directly to the conventional two post charging batteries to charge them.

NOTE

Follow the instructions that come with your battery charger.

1. Access the battery terminals.
2. Make sure that the battery charger is off.
3. Disconnect the battery cables.
4. Connect charger cables. Make sure that you connect positive to positive (+ to +) and negative to negative (- to -).
5. Start charging the battery at a rate not over 6 A. Normally, 10% of a battery rated capacity is the maximum for charging.
6. After charging, turn off the charger and disconnect the charger cables.

15.17 Alternator

Take the following precautions to avoid burning out alternator diodes:

- DO NOT start the engine with alternator disconnected (connections removed) from the circuit.
- Before welding, disconnect all electronic connections to the vehicle batteries.
- Remove battery power cable and insulate it from the vehicle.
- DO NOT run the engine with the batteries disconnected.
- DO NOT disconnect the battery cables or alternator connection cables with the engine running
- Never turn the start key switch from the ON position to the START position with the engine running.
- When charging the battery (installed in the vehicle) disconnect the battery cables.
- DO NOT reverse the cables of the alternator, starter motor, or battery.
- DO NOT polarize the alternator. The alternator should not be polarized like a generator. To ensure correct polarity, use a test lamp or a voltmeter.

15.18 Remote Keyless Entry

REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY

The system will lock or unlock cab doors with the key fob. The system will alert you with parking lights when the selected doors are locked or unlocked. There are two key fobs provided with the system which provide secure rolling code technology that prevents someone from recording the entry signal.

If you have issues with a key fob, replace the battery and reprogram the key fob. In some situations, the key fob may need to be replaced and in others, a fuse may have failed that could render both key fobs inoperative. Contact your dealer for help if a key fob does not work and it is not because of a bad battery.

The key fob uses one CR2032, 3V battery. Batteries should last approximately three years, depending on use. Consistently reduced range is an indicator that the battery needs replacement. Batteries are available at most discount, hardware, and drug stores. The battery can be accessed by removing the cover of the key fob. After a new battery is installed, the key fob may need to be reprogrammed to pair with the vehicle.

Quantity	Type
1	CR2032

HOW TO REPLACE KEY FOB BATTERY

If the key fob will not unlock the doors, replace the battery.

1. Remove the cover of the key fob.
2. Replace the battery and dispose of the old battery.
3. Check to see if the key fob is still paired to the vehicle. If not, reprogram the key fob.

PROGRAMMING KEY FOBBS

The key fob may need to be paired with the truck when the battery is replaced or when the key fob has not been used for an extended period of time.

1. Turn the start key switch to the ON position.
2. Open the driver and passenger doors.
3. Press and hold the passenger door's unlock button for 5 seconds, then release the button.
4. Within 3 seconds press and hold the passenger door's lock button for 5 seconds, then release the button.

At this time you should hear the vehicle cycle the locking system by unlocking, then relocking the doors. (This indicates that the door module has entered "learning mode.")

5. Within the next 10 seconds, press and hold the key fob's lock button for 5 seconds, (you should hear the vehicle lock the doors) then press and release the unlock button.
6. Once programming is complete (or the 10 seconds from Step 5 has passed), the vehicle will cycle the locking system twice (unlock, lock, unlock, lock). This process should be repeated for each fob to be paired with the module. A maximum of five key fobs may be paired to a single module.

16 ENGINE MAINTENANCE

16.1 Engine Maintenance

These topics relate to the operator maintenance tasks for the engine. Information provided here is in addition to information contained in the Engine Operator Manual supplied with the vehicle.



WARNING

DO NOT breathe engine exhaust. Engine exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless, odorless gas. Exhaust fumes can enter the cab from a poorly maintained exhaust system or from nearby vehicles. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



WARNING

Never start or let the engine run in an enclosed, unventilated area. Engine exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas. Carbon monoxide can be fatal if inhaled. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



WARNING

Never idle your vehicle for prolonged periods of time if you sense that exhaust fumes are entering the cabin. Investigate the cause of the fumes and correct it as soon as possible. If the vehicle must be driven under these con-

ditions, drive only with the windows open. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



WARNING

Routinely inspect and maintain your vehicle exhaust system. A poorly maintained, damaged, or corroded exhaust system can allow exhaust fumes to enter the cab. Engine exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless, odorless gas. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



NOTE

The crankcase ventilation (CCV) module of the engine is maintenance-free. Refer to your Engine Operator's Manual for more details.



NOTE

Keep the engine exhaust system and the vehicle's cab ventilation system properly maintained. It is recommended

that the vehicle's exhaust system and cab be inspected (1) By a competent technician every 15,000 miles (24,140 km); (2) Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system; or (3) Whenever the exhaust system, underbody, or cab is damaged.

16.2 Check Engine Oil Level



WARNING

DO NOT change hot engine oil as you could be burned. Let the engine cool down before changing the engine oil. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



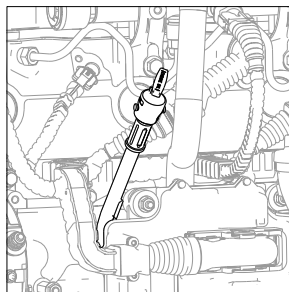
NOTE

It takes approximately 15 minutes for all the oil to run into the sump when the engine is warm. If the level is checked immediately after switching off the engine, the dipstick will show a low oil level.

1. Make sure that the vehicle frame

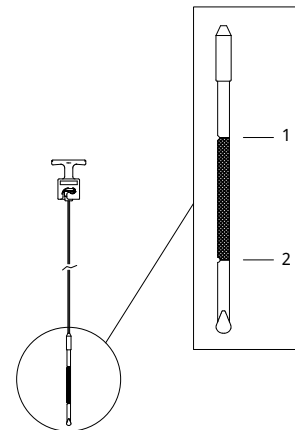
rail is standing on a flat and level surface.

2. Make sure that the vehicle is horizontal, both lengthwise and crosswise. Check this carefully on a vehicle with air suspension. Note that the engine may be inclined up to 4 degrees, depending on the vehicle model and wheelbase.
3. Twist the dipstick handle to unlock it, then pull the dipstick out of the holder.



4. Wipe the dipstick clean with a lint-free cloth.
5. Place the dipstick back into the holder.
6. Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level. The oil level should always be between the two marks on the dipstick.

Engine Oil Dip Stick Markings

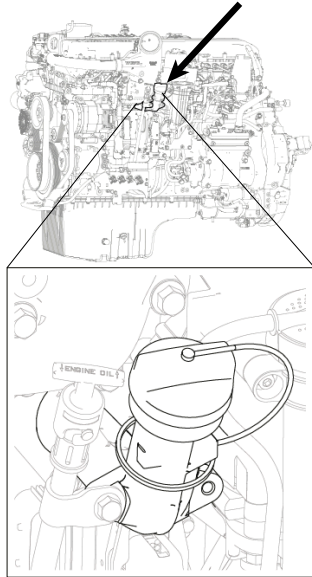


1. High Oil Level
2. Low Oil Level

7. Reinstall the dipstick and twist to lock it in place.

16.3 Topping Up the Engine Oil

The images below may not appear like the configuration of the vehicle. The procedure is still the same.



1. Top up with oil, if necessary, via the filler opening. Use the correct grade in the correct quantity. For oil replacement, please see engine Operator's Manual included with this chassis.
2. After topping up, wait 1 minute and check the oil level again.
3. Reinstall the oil fill cap and twist to lock it in place.

16.4 Pipe and Hose Clamp Torque Values

Torque specifications for engine parts.

Application	Type of Clamp	lb-in.	N•m
Radiator and heat exchanger hoses	Constant torque CT-L	90-110	10.2-12.5
Heater hoses	Constant tension	Not required	Not required
Air intake pipes	HI torque HTM-L	100-125	11.3-14.2
Plastic air intake pipes	Constant torque CT-L	88	10.0
Charge air intake hoses	Flex Seal™	70-100	7.9-11.3
	B9296	50-60	6-7
Fuel, oil and water heat exchangers (for hoses less than 9/16 in. diameter).	Miniature 3600L	10-15	1.1-1.7

16.5 Install Engine Belt

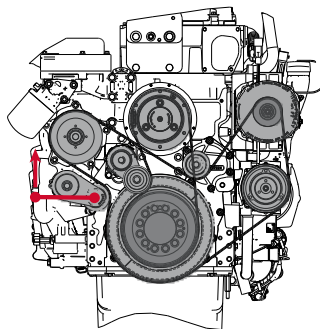
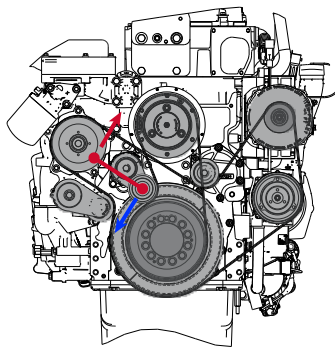
You can extend the reliability and service life of your vehicle's drive belts with proper attention to installation and maintenance. Neglect could cause belt failure. The result could be the loss of the electrical or air system as well as possible engine damage from overheating.

i NOTE

See the engine manufacturer's operator's manual for further information on replacing engine drive belts.

The images below may not appear like the configuration of the vehicle. The procedure is still the same. Follow this procedure to install an accessory drive belt:

1. Route the new belt around the pulleys, and then rotate the automatic tensioner so that the idler pulley swings toward the belt routing. The following figure shows an example of the rotation direction to release the tensioner.



2. Slip the belt around the idler pulley attached to the automatic tensioner.
3. Release the automatic tensioner.
4. Check the belt alignment on each pulley. The belt must fall between the

flanges of each pulley.

16.6 Engine Fan

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT work on or near the engine fan while the engine is running. The fan can start at any time without warning, and anyone near the fan when it turns on could be injured. If the manual fan switch is set to MANUAL, the fan will turn on when the start key switch is turned to the ON position. If the switch is set to AUTO, it could engage suddenly at any time without warning. Before starting the engine or switching the manual fan switch from AUTO to MANUAL, make sure no one is near the fan. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage or property damage.

Follow these guidelines to check your engine fan:

- With the engine shut off, check the fan hub bearings for looseness, loss of lubricant, and any abnormal conditions (e.g. fan belt misaligned or excessive wear/damage, etc.).
- With the engine idling and the hood open, stand at the front of the vehicle.

Listen for any noises coming from the fan hub. Bearings that have lost lubricant and are dry will typically emit a squeal or a growl when the engine is at operating temperature and the fan clutch is engaged. If noise is detected, have the fan bearings inspected by an authorized dealership.

Engine Fan Blade

Verify that there is enough fan blade clearance with the fan shroud. The recommended distance around the fan shroud is 1 in. (25 mm) from front edge of any fan blade-to-radiator side member. Minimum clearance is 3/4 in. (19 mm).

- Rear edge of any blade must be no closer than 3/8 in. (9 mm) to the nearest engine component. If this cannot be obtained, the fan spacer or fan is incorrectly placed.
- The leading edge of any fan blade must be 1 in. (25 mm) from the inside edge of the shroud.

16.7 Air Intake System

Engine heat, vibration, and age combine to loosen air intake connections and cause cracks in the tubing and elbows. Leaks in the intake system allow abrasive dust to enter the engine and quickly cause

expensive damage. During your daily walk-around inspection, carefully check all tubing, elbows, clamps, supports, and fasteners for condition and tightness. Check the charge-air-cooler for air leaks annually. The air leaks can be caused by cracked tubes or header. For service see your authorized dealer.

CAUTION

DO NOT use air intake pipes and connections as a step or to pull yourself up. This could loosen the connections and open the system to unfiltered air which could damage the engine. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

16.8 Turbocharger

WARNING

DO NOT operate engine with turbocharger intake piping disconnected. A suction is created when the engine is running. This suction could draw your hand or anything else near it into the impeller fan. You could be injured. Always keep the intake piping connected when you will be running the

engine. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

When servicing the air intake and exhaust systems on a turbocharged engine, check the items listed below:

Lubricating System

Check the oil lines, housing, and connections. Look for leaks, damage, or deterioration. Leaks could mean you have damaged oil lines or oil seals.

Manifold

With the engine operating, check for leaking manifold or flange gaskets.

High Frequency Vibration

Vibration may indicate turbo rotor imbalance. Have your dealer investigate this immediately. If you detect any deficiencies, take the vehicle to an authorized dealer for servicing. Delay could lead to severe and expensive damage to your vehicle.

16.9 How to Replace the Engine Air Filter



CAUTION

Use only PACCAR-branded (Donaldson) engine air filters when replacement is needed. Using a non-genuine PACCAR air filter decreases sealing strength and impacts correct alignment. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

Engine air filter replacement should be performed with the vehicle parked, the ignition **OFF**, and the parking brake set.

1. Open the hood to access the engine air cleaner, located on top of the engine.
2. Using a wrench, loosen to disengage the (4) bolts securing the filter housing cap to the filter housing.
3. Pull the air filter housing cap away from the main enclosure to access the filter.
4. Visually inspect the filter housing, enclosure, and hardware for damage.
If damaged, replace the air cleaner.
5. Gently, pull filter directly out of the filter housing, taking care to not drop or tap filter on housing during removal.

- Loose dirt and dust trapped in the filter can fall into the cleaner, which can lead to engine damage.
6. Inspect, and if necessary (and using **ONLY** a clean, damp cloth) clean out any debris inside the filter housing. Be careful to not push any contaminate into the engine inlet.
 7. Visually inspect the new filter prior to installation. There should not be any damage to the filter media or gaskets, such as dents, dings, cracks, or holes.
 8. Install new filter element, then inspect element for a good seal and proper alignment.
 9. Install the filter housing cap and tighten the bolts to 88 in-lb (10 n·m) max. **DO NOT** use the housing cap to drive the filter into position.
 10. Verify housing cap is secure.
- Close and secure hood.

16.10 Digital Restriction Sensor

The engine air cleaner is equipped with a Digital Restriction Sensor that monitors the status of the air filter element. If the air restriction gauge is present in the digi-

tal display the gauge will turn red at 95% capacity, indicating it is time to change the filter element.

16.11 Exhaust System

The exhaust system is part of the noise and emission control system. Periodically check the exhaust system for wear, exhaust leaks, and loose or missing parts. For details on how to maintain the emissions components in the exhaust system, see "Noise and Emission Control" in your vehicle operator's manual. Please refer to the engine operator's manual for more details on how to maintain the emissions components in the exhaust system. If your vehicle is equipped with a 48 V generator, please refer to Engine Aftertreatment System Operator's Manual for more details.

16.12 Engine Mounting



CAUTION

DO NOT retorque or reuse existing flange head bolts. These bolts are factory set to the specified torque. If bolts are loose or damaged, they must be replaced with new bolts. Failure to com-


ply may result in equipment or property damage.

injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Periodic Inspection: Inspect engine mounts every 60,000 miles (96,000 km).

Check for the following:

- Inspect both mount and leg fasteners. Check for loose or broken bolts. Replace as necessary.
- Check mount and leg for fractures, breaks or deformation. Replace as necessary.
- Check for complete insertion of motor mount. Replace as necessary.
- New leg to mount flange head bolts should be torqued to 210-230 lb-ft (284-311 N·m).

 **WARNING**


Frame welding is NOT recommended. The high heat of welding nullifies the special heat treatment of the rails, greatly reducing the tensile strength of the frame rail. If a frame member becomes cracked from overloading, fatigue, surface damage, or a collision, the only permanent repair is to replace the damaged frame member with a new part. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

In the event of emergency welding of a frame rail and when welding any other part of your truck or any component attached to your truck, observe the following precautions before welding:

- Disconnect all electronic devices. It is not possible to list all of the electronics that could be affected, but a few examples include the following: alternator, engine Electronic Control Unit (ECU), transmission ECU, ABS ECU, navigation devices, diagnostic devices, and monitoring devices.
- Disconnect battery cables and insulate them from the vehicle.
- Do not use the ECU or engine ground stud for the ground of the welding probe.
- Ensure that the ground connection for the welder is as close to the weld point as possible. This ensures maximum weld current and minimum risk to damage of electrical components on the vehicle.

17 FRAME

17.1 Frame

 **WARNING**

DO NOT cut, splice, weld, or drill frame rails through the top or bottom frame rail flanges. These actions could affect frame rail strength, leading to its failure, and resulting in an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal

Emergency Welding

In an emergency, a temporary repair may be performed. Observe the following precautions to protect electronic systems during welding operations. Emergency welding procedures are further explained in the maintenance manuals. Please refer to the ordering information on the back cover to obtain a maintenance manual.

Painting

Do not electrostatically paint your truck or any component on your truck without first removing all of the electronic components from the truck. It is not possible to list all of the electronics that could be affected, but a few examples include the alternator, engine

Electronic Control Unit (ECU), transmission ECU, ABS ECU, navigation devices, diagnostic devices, and monitoring devices.

17.2 Fifth Wheel Monthly Maintenance

- Refer to specific manufacturer's literature for any special instructions.
- Steam clean the fifth wheel.
- Check lock guard operation using a commercial lock tester.
- Clean and oil all moving parts.
- Lubricate the lock mechanism with a lithium-base grease.
- All grease fittings (especially those which grease the top surface of the fifth wheel).

17.3 Fifth Wheel Bi-Annual Maintenance

NOTE

Whenever possible, torque all frame fasteners on the nut end, not the bolt head.

- Refer to specific manufacturer's literature for any special instructions.

- Remove fifth wheel from vehicle. Refer to the Shop Manual, "Fifth Wheel Removal."
- Steam clean the fifth wheel and mounting brackets.
- Check all moving parts for excessive wear or damage. Replace all worn or broken parts.
- Complete two-month service procedure.
- Install fifth wheel. Refer to the Shop Manual, "Fifth Wheel Installation."

Tighten all frame fasteners with a torque wrench. See Frame Fastener Torque Requirements [on page 273](#).

17.4 Sliding Fifth Wheels

Lubricate bearing surface of support bracket through the grease fittings on the side of the fifth wheel plate. Use a water resistant lithium-base grease.

NOTE

The plate must be lifted up slightly to relieve the weight of the bracket while applying grease.

18 FUEL SYSTEM

18.1 Fuel System

Location of Fuel Shut-off Valves

Fuel shut-off valves for the fuel crossover line are on the bottom of the secondary fuel tank, at the crossover line connection. They are optional on the primary fuel tank.


Specification

Use only diesel fuel as recommended by engine manufacturers.



WARNING

DO NOT remove a fuel tank cap near sparks, flames, or smoking materials. Fuel in the presence of an ignition source could cause an explosion. A mixture of gasoline or alcohol with diesel fuel increases this risk of explosion. Use only the fuel or additives recommended for your engine. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **CAUTION**

If the wrong fuel type is introduced into the fuel tank, drain the entire fuel system. Operating the vehicle will damage the fuel pump and engine. DO NOT try to dilute the gasoline by adding diesel fuel. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

Fuel Filters

See Engine Manufacturer's Operator Manual provided with this chassis.

18.2 Fuel Tank

Check the strap tightness. Tighten to proper torque value as required:

- Aluminum tank - 30 lb-ft (41 N·m)

19 HEATER AND AIR CONDITIONER MAINTENANCE

19.1 Heater and Air Conditioner Maintenance

The combination heater-air conditioner provides comfort for those in the cab through accurate control of the cab environment

in all weather conditions. Regular attention to the items below will help you keep the heater-air conditioner unit running well. Keep the vehicle's ventilation system, engine exhaust system, and cab joints properly maintained. It is recommended that the vehicle's exhaust system and cab be serviced by a competent technician as follows:

- Inspected every 15,000 miles
- Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system
- Whenever the exhaust system, vehicle underbody, or cab is damaged

To allow for proper operation of the vehicle ventilation system, proceed as follows:

- Keep the inlet grille at the base of the windshield clear of snow, ice, leaves, and other obstructions at all times.
- Keep the exhaust pipe area clear to help reduce the buildup of exhaust gas under the vehicle.
- Check the drain tube of the fresh air inlet for trapped water before assuming that there is a leak in the heating system.

Special Precautions

 **WARNING**

Never weld, solder, steam clean, or use a blow torch near any part of the air conditioning system. Excessive heat may cause the pressurized components of the air conditioning system to explode. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage or property damage.

 **WARNING**

Always wear personal protective equipment (PPE) when working with refrigerant, this includes safety goggles, a face shield, and nitrile gloves. Gas could escape from containers, hoses, or fittings, and exposure to R134a or R134aUV can result in frostbite or eye damage. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

R134a refrigerant is combustible. Store in a cool, well-ventilated area away from heat sources and direct sunlight to pre-


vent fire or explosion. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

Never allow large quantities of R134a refrigerant (concentrations higher than 1000 parts per million) to escape in a small, unventilated space. R134a is toxic and will also displace nearby oxygen, which can lead to asphyxiation. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

If a refrigerant leak develops in the presence of excessive heat or an open flame, hazardous gases may be generated. If you become aware of a refrigerant leak on your vehicle have your system serviced immediately and observe the following precautions: Stay away from the hot engine until the exhaust manifold has cooled. Do not permit any open flame in the area. Even a match or a cigarette lighter may generate a hazardous quantity of poisonous gas. Do not smoke in the area. Inhaling gaseous refrigerant through a cigarette may cause violent illness.

Heater

 **CAUTION**

During extreme cold weather, blowing hot defroster air onto a cold windshield can crack the glass. When the heater core is hot and the windshield is cold (such as idling the engine when the HVAC has been off), move the Temperature Control Dial to "COOL." Gradually increase the temperature as the windshield warms up. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

- Check all heater controls for full-range operation.
- Check hoses, connections, and heater core for condition and leaks.

Air Conditioner

 **WARNING**

The air conditioning system is under pressure. If not handled properly during servicing, it could explode. Any servicing that requires depressurizing and recharging the air conditioning system must be conducted by a qualified technician in an approved facility. Failure to comply may result in death, personal

injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

Always wear safety glasses when working with pressurized air. DO NOT exceed the recommended air pressure limits, look into the air jets, or direct the air jets towards yourself or another individual. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

- Listen to the compressor and drive clutch for noise and vibration. If you find problems, have the system checked thoroughly. A malfunctioning clutch usually indicates trouble elsewhere in the system.
- Check the evaporator core, filter, and condenser core for debris restricting air flow. Clean if necessary. Small particles may be removed with compressed air blown through the core in the opposite direction of normal air flow.
- Check the engine belt for condition and proper tension.
- Check all hoses for kinks, deterioration, chafing, and leaks. Adjust kinked or chafing hoses to eliminate restrictions

and prevent further wear.

- Check all components and connections for refrigerant leaks. If you discover a leak, do not try to tighten a connection. Tightening a connection may cause a leak to worsen. Have a qualified technician correct the problem.

i NOTE

A leaking evaporator or condenser core cannot be repaired; it must be replaced.

Have the air conditioning system fully serviced annually by your authorized dealer. Qualified service technicians will have to evacuate and recharge the system.

19.2 How to Replace Air Conditioner Filter

Inspect and clean cab air filter element every 3-6 months of service. Depending on the operating environment, if air flow from the air conditioner and heater is less efficient or windows fog easier, you may need to replace the cab air filter.

1. Tilt the hood open.
2. Locate air intake housing at passenger rear corner of vehicle under the rain tray.

3. Locate filter cover labeled "OPEN" with an arrow pointing rearward in vehicle. Slide filter cover rearward in vehicle until you are able to remove the cover.
4. Remove and inspect filter referring to maintenance interval schedule.
5. Replace filter in housing taking care to align the airflow direction that is indicated on the side of the side of the filter element with the airflow direction that is clearly marked on the air intake housing.
6. Replace the filter cover on the air intake housing and slide the cover forward in vehicle. An audible snap sound can be heard when the cover is correctly in place. If the snap feature is damaged there are two screw features that may be utilized to retain the cover in place.
7. Close and secure hood of vehicle.

19.3 Replace the Recirculation Air Filter

Please contact an authorized dealer when the service interval is required to inspect the cabin recirculation air filter.

20 LIGHTING

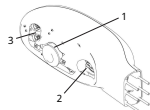
20.1 How To Replace a Headlight Bulb

This procedure applies to low and high beam halogen bulbs used in side-mounted headlight pods. Replace the bulbs with the vehicle parked. See Vehicle Light Bulb Specifications [on page 278](#) for correct replacement bulbs.

i NOTE

LED headlights (option) are not user serviceable. If you experience an LED headlight failure, contact the nearest dealer to correct the problem as soon as possible

Headlight Pod – Back (Cover Plate Removed)



1. Low beam rubber access cap
2. High beam bulb
3. Turn Signal and parking light bulbs



CAUTION

When replacing a halogen bulb, DO NOT touch the globe with your fingers. Oils or other contaminants on the skin can result in early bulb failure. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

1. Remove both screws securing the back-of-pod cover plate using a #3 Phillips-head screwdriver. Remove the cover plate.
The picture shows the coverplate removed.
2. If replacing the Low Beam bulb,

remove the rubber access cap (1). The High Beam bulb does not have an access cap (2).

3. Unlock the bulb from behind by turning the base (and its wired connector) a quarter-turn counter-clockwise. Then withdraw the bulb and connector from its seat.
4. Unplug the wired connector from the back of the bulb. Dispose of the bulb.
5. Plug the wired connector into the new bulb.
Do not touch the bulb globe with fingers.
6. Insert the new bulb into the seat. Then turn the base one quarter-turn clockwise to lock.
7. Replace the rubber access cap (if removed earlier in this procedure).
8. Replace and secure cover plate.

Final Checks

- After reconnecting everything, switch on the headlights and check for illumination.
- Have the headlights periodically checked for proper alignment by the dealer.
- Keep the headlights clean using only mild soap and water (see Maintaining Headlight Performance). A dirty

headlight reduces performance and creates glare.

20.2 Maintaining Headlight Performance

Bulb Replacement Considerations



WARNING

DO NOT install LED replacement light sources in PACCAR headlamps. Incorrect bulb types can overheat due to internal optics and may cause a fire. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



NOTE

Halogen, incandescent, and HID bulbs are brightest when they are new, and they dim over time. For optimal performance, replace your bulbs frequently. Keep a spare or lightly used bulb in the glove compartment and **never operate the vehicle with only one headlamp.**

i NOTE

LED headlights (option) are not user serviceable. If you experience a LED headlight failure, contact your nearest dealer to correct the problem as soon as possible.

Know your vehicle headlamp type – Standard Incandescent, Halogen, or LED. See Vehicle Light Bulb Specifications [on page 278](#) for headlight bulb replacement information.

- An unclear bulb indicates that it has overheated. It may perform poorly and/or be close to failure, and should be replaced as soon as possible.
- Bulbs should be replaced with a premium brand. Bulbs with the long life designation "LL" are recommended, but not required.
- When replacing a bulb, do not touch the globe with your fingers. Oil from human skin can focus the light locally, resulting in early bulb failure.
- If the access caps or fender liner are removed during the bulb replacement, they must be re-installed to protect the headlight from high pressure water spray and gravel bombardment.

Lens and Body Considerations

⚠ CAUTION

DO NOT clean the headlamp lens with solvents, abrasive brushes or substances, or petroleum products. Improper cleaning methods can break down the lens coating, which could cloud or scratch the lens. This may result in a glare that reduces headlight performance. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

- Use a soft cloth with mild, particulate free dish soap and water to clean your headlamp lenses.
- Replace your headlamp if the lens is so worn that it is not completely clear.
- A headlamp lens should only be buffed by a professional polishing service. To avoid stripping the lens of its protective coating, do not have the lens buffed more than twice in its lifetime.
- Do not hit or push on your headlamp lens, as it is only designed to withstand the force of wind.
- The headlamp assembly is equipped with filtered vents to keep out insects, allow for bulb cooling, and evacuate water vapor. Keep obstructions, or obstructing agents like mud, away

from the vents. The filters are non-serviceable since the filter cap is destroyed when removed.

Alignment Considerations

⚠ WARNING

DO NOT operate the vehicle with mis-aimed headlamps. Misaimed headlamps may impact the driver's ability to see the road and other drivers. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

i NOTE

Headlamp misalignment must be corrected by a trained technician. Please contact your nearest authorized dealership for next steps.

Headlamps are aimed according to safety standards before your truck leaves the factory. However, certain truck loads or trailer types may impact your vehicle's rake by offsetting the truck's weight distribution. This will misaim the headlamps. Some maintenance procedures can also affect headlamp alignment, such as:

- Headlamp assembly replacement

- Hood replacement

To check if your headlamps are properly aimed, park your truck on a level surface and direct the headlamps at a wall. If you notice that the focus of one light appears higher than the other, your headlamps are misaligned.

20.3 Final Checks

1. After everything is reconnected, turn on your headlights and check for operation.
2. Have your headlights periodically checked for proper alignment by dealer.
3. Keep your headlights clean, using only clean soap and water. A dirty headlight reduces performance and creates glare.

21 LUBRICANTS

21.1 Lubricants

Schedule service more frequently if you are operating under severe conditions such as extreme heat or cold, with very heavy loads, off-road, etc. For any special service requirements, consult your service manuals and your lubricant supplier. Please remember: one key to keeping your truck running

at top economy and prolonging its life is proper lubrication servicing. Neglecting this essential aspect of vehicle care can cost time and money in the long run.

WARNING

Handle lubricants carefully. Vehicle lubricants (oil and grease) can be poisonous and cause sickness. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

CAUTION

DO NOT mix different lubricant brands or different lubricant types, such as oil and grease. Before refilling or reapplying, drain or remove old lubricants from the component. Mixing different brands or lubricant types may damage vehicle components. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

Engine

Proper engine lubrication depends on the outside temperatures where you will be driving. Use the oil recommended for the conditions you are most likely to be operating in. You will find a complete engine lubrication

service guide in the Engine Operation Manual that came with your vehicle. The engine operator manual contains specific maintenance tasks that you or a qualified service technician need to perform to maintain the engine.

WARNING

DO NOT breathe engine exhaust. Engine exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless, odorless gas. Exhaust fumes can enter the cab from a poorly maintained exhaust system or from nearby vehicles. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

Routinely inspect and maintain your vehicle exhaust system. A poorly maintained, damaged, or corroded exhaust system can allow exhaust fumes to enter the cab. Engine exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless, odorless gas. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

⚠ WARNING

Never idle your vehicle for prolonged periods of time if you sense that exhaust fumes are entering the cabin. Investigate the cause of the fumes and correct it as soon as possible. If the vehicle must be driven under these conditions, drive only with the windows open. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

i NOTE

Keep the engine exhaust system and the vehicle's cab ventilation system properly maintained. It is recommended that the vehicle's exhaust system and cab be inspected (1) By a competent technician every 15,000 miles (24,140 km); (2) Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system; or (3) Whenever the exhaust system, underbody, or cab is damaged.

i NOTE

Use only an exact replacement DPF in exhaust systems. Using a noncompliant DPF as a replacement could violate

these standards and also void the emission system's warranty.

Oil Filter

Your engine is equipped with a oil filter that is designed to avoid contaminants and remove deposits from the oil that prolong an engine performance and life of internal components. You will find a complete filter lubrication service guide in the engine operator's manual that came with your vehicle. Please refer to the engine operator's manual for more details about the oil filter maintenance task.

Driveline Universal Joints

Refer to the Spicer Universal Joints and Driveshafts service manual and lubrication specifications.

Transmissions, Axles, and Hubs

See the manufacturer's operator's manual for recommended lubrication specifications and maintenance intervals.

21.2 Checking Oil Level

For oil reservoir with side filler plugs (transmission, axles, steering gear boxes, transfer cases, etc.) the oil must be level with the filler opening. Use care when checking

the oil level with a finger. Just because you can reach the oil level with a finger does not mean the oil level is correct.

Figure 41: Improper Oil Level



Figure 42: Correct Oil Level



22 NOISE AND EMISSION CONTROL

22.1 Noise and Emission Control

There are specific components on the vehicle that are designed to meet certain Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) emissions and noise regulations. To maintain conformance with the regulations, these components need to be functional and properly maintained.

Noise Emission Warranty

Peterbilt warrants to the first person who purchases this vehicle for purposes other than resale and to each subsequent purchaser that this vehicle as manufactured by Peterbilt, was designed, built, and equipped to conform at the time it left Peterbilt's control with all applicable U.S. EPA Noise Control Regulations.

This warranty covers this vehicle as designed, built, and equipped by Peterbilt, and is not limited to any particular part, component, or system of the vehicle manufactured by Peterbilt. Defects in design, assembly, or in any part, component, or system of the vehicle as manufactured by Peterbilt, which, at the time it left Peterbilt's control, caused noise emissions to exceed Federal standards, are covered by this warranty for the life of the vehicle.

Tampering with Noise Control System

Federal law prohibits the following acts or the causing thereof:

1. The removal or rendering inoperative by any person other than for purposes of maintenance, repair, or replacement, of any device or element of design incorporated into any new vehicle for the purpose of noise control prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use, or

2. The use of the vehicle after such device or element of design has been removed or rendered inoperative by any person. Among those acts presumed to constitute tampering are the acts listed below:

Air Intake System	Removing or rendering inoperative the air filter housing/silencers or intake piping
Engine Cooling System	Removing or rendering the fan clutch inoperative Removing the fan shroud
Engine	Removing or rendering engine speed governor inoperative so as to allow engine speed to exceed manufacturer's specifications Modifying ECU parameters
Exhaust System	Removing or rendering inoperative exhaust system components
Fuel System	Removing or rendering engine speed governor inoperative, allowing engine speed to exceed manufacturer's specifications Removing of air signal attenuator on engines equipped with this device Removing of diesel exhaust fluid tank and system
Inner Fender Shields and Cab Skirts	Removing shield or skirts Cutting away parts of shields, skirts or damaged or loose portions of shields or skirts

Noise Insulating Blankets	Removing noise insulators from engine block or from around the oil pan Cutting holes in, or cutting away part of noise insulators Removing hood-mounted noise insulation
----------------------------------	--

22.2 Inspecting Noise and Emission Components

If, during periodic inspection and maintenance of other systems and components, it is found that parts of the noise control system require attention, we recommend that those parts be inspected at more frequent intervals to assure adequate maintenance and performance.

The following instructions are based on inspection of the noise control system at regular intervals as indicated in the Noise Control System - Maintenance Log [on page 260](#).

Air Intake System

- Do all checks and maintenance procedures listed in this manual under engine air intake system and air filter housing.
- Check the induction tubing, elbow connections, clamps, brackets, and fasteners for deterioration, cracks, and security.
- If you find an air leak anywhere between the air filter housing and the

engine, repair that leak immediately.



CAUTION

Air leaks cause excessive noise and may result in serious damage to the engine. If you do not repair them, the engine damage will not be covered by your warranty. Repair all air leaks as soon as you find them. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

Engine Mounted Noise Insulators

- Check condition. Is the insulator secure? How you do this will depend on the method of attaching the noise insulators on the engine and around the oil pan (bolts, snap fasteners, or straps). Tighten loose fasteners and repair or replace any worn or damaged fasteners.
- Check insulators around fasteners and stress points, especially where they may be affected by engine vibration. Repair any cracked or damaged mounting points. Use suitable reinforcing plates to ensure that the insulators will remain in position.

Exhaust System

- Check for exhaust leaks, which would indicate a leaking manifold gasket;

replace gasket if necessary.

- Check cap screws for tightness, including those at the flanges. Refer to the engine manufacturer's service manual for proper tightening sequence and torque values.

Joints and Clamps

- Check for leaks, and tighten as necessary. Check for deterioration or dents in pipes and clamps which could allow exhaust to escape.
- Replace any serviceable joints, flexible pipes and gaskets at the service intervals.

Selective Catalysis Reduction (SCR)

- Check SCR canister filter, clamps and mounting brackets. Tighten if necessary. Inspect SCR canister for signs of rust or corrosion.

Exhaust Piping

- Check exhaust piping for rust, corrosion, or damage. Replace deteriorated piping before holes appear. If piping is perforated at any point, temporary patching or lagging is acceptable until you can have permanent repairs made. On turbocharged engines, check joints at flanges and mounting brackets for tightness.

Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)

- Check DPF, clamps, and mounting brackets. Tighten if necessary. Inspect DPF for signs of rust or corrosion.
- Check internal baffling. You can do this by listening for rattling sounds while tapping on the (DPF with a rubber mallet or revving the engine up and down through its normal operating range.

DEF Tank (See Aftertreatment System manual)

Exhaust Tail Pipe

Engine Fan and Shroud

Hood Insulation Blanket

Inner Fenders Shields and Cab Skirts

22.3 Noise Control System - Maintenance Log

To ensure your vehicle's noise control requirements are maintained, record maintenance checks. Use the following log sheet and retain copies of documents regarding maintenance services performed and parts replaced on the vehicle.

Component	Recommended Interval (Miles)	Date & R.O. No.	Repair Facility & Location	Work Performed	Date & R.O. No.	Repair Facility & Location	Work Performed
Exhaust System Routing Integrity	25,000						
Shutters Shrouds	25,000						
Hood Insulation Blanket	10,000						
Engine Mounted Hose Insulators Fasteners	10,000						
Inner Fender Shields	50,000						
Cab Skirts Fasteners	50,000						
Air Intake System Integrity Element	5,000						
Clutch type Fan Drive	10,000						

23 SEATING AND RESTRAINTS

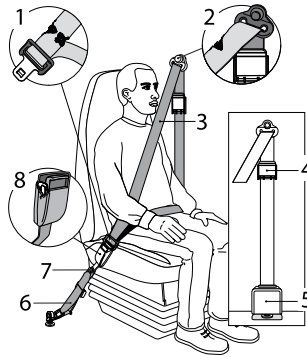
23.1 Safety Restraint System - Inspection

WARNING

Periodically inspect and maintain the safety restraint system. Safety restraint components can wear out and no longer protect the occupant in the event of an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

WARNING

If the vehicle has been in an accident, all safety restraints and safety restraint systems must be replaced, regardless of accident severity or whether the restraint was in use at the time of the accident. Visible and non-visible damage or wear can reduce the effectiveness of the safety restraint and may lead to restraint failure. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



1. Web cut or frayed or extremely worn at latch area
2. Web cut or frayed at D-loop web guide
3. Web for deterioration, due to exposure to the sun
4. Comfort Clip cracked or damaged
5. Retractor Web Storage for damage (located behind trim panel)
6. Tethers for web wear and proper tightness of mounting hardware
7. Mounting hardware for corrosion, proper tightness of bolts and nuts
8. Buckle casting broken

Factors contributing to reduced seat belt life:

- Heavy trucks typically accumulate twice as many miles as the average passenger car in a given time period.
- Seat and cab movement in trucks causes almost constant movement of the belt due to ride characteristics and seat design. The constant movement of the belt inside the restraint hardware and the potential for the belt to come in contact with the cab and other vehicle parts, contributes to the wear of the entire system.
- Environmental conditions, such as dirt and ultraviolet rays from the sun, will reduce the life of the seat belt system.

Due to these factors, the three-point seat belt system installed in your vehicle requires thorough inspection every 20,000 miles (32,000 km). If the vehicle is exposed to severe environmental or working conditions, more frequent inspections may be necessary. Any seat belt system that shows cuts, fraying, extreme or unusual wear, significant discoloration due to UV (ultraviolet) exposure, abrasion to the seat belt webbing, or damage to the buckle, latch plate, retractor hardware, or any other obvious problem should be replaced immediately, regardless of mileage.

Inspection Guidelines

Follow these guidelines when inspecting for cuts, fraying, extreme or unusual wear of the webbing, and damage to the buckle, retractor, hardware, or other factors. Damage to these areas indicates that seat belt system replacement is necessary.



WARNING

Replace the entire belt system (retractor and buckle side) if any part needs replacement. Hidden damage to components could prevent the system from functioning properly when needed. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

1. Check the web wear in the system. The webbing must be closely examined to determine if it is coming into contact with any sharp or rough surfaces on the seat or other parts of the cab interior. These areas are typical places where the web will experience cutting or abrasion. Cuts, fraying, or excessive wear would indicate the need for replacement of the seat belt system.
2. The pillar web guide (D-loop) is the area where almost constant movement of the seat belt webbing occurs

because of relative movement between the seat and cab.

3. Check the Komfort Latch for cracks or possible damage and check for proper operation.
4. Check buckle and latch for proper operation and to determine if latch plate is worn, deformed, or damaged.
5. Inspect the retractor web storage device, which is mounted on the floor of the vehicle, for damage. The retractor is the heart of the occupant restraint system and can often be damaged if abused, even unintentionally. Check operation to ensure that it is not locked up and that it spools out and retracts webbing properly.
6. If tethers are used, be sure they are properly attached to the seat and, if adjustable, that they are adjusted in accordance with installation instructions. Tethers must also be inspected for web wear and proper tightness of mounting hardware.
7. Mounting hardware should be evaluated for corrosion, and for tightness of bolts and nuts.
8. Check web in areas exposed to ultraviolet rays from the sun. If the color of the web in these areas is gray to light brown, the physical strength of

the web may have deteriorated due to exposure to the sun's ultraviolet rays.

Replace the system.

Once the need for replacement of the seat belt has been determined, be certain it is only replaced with an authorized PAC-CAR Parts replacement seat belt. If the inspection indicates that any part of the seat belt system requires replacement, the entire system must be replaced. An installation guide is attached to every replacement belt. Utilize the proper guide for your type of seat, and follow the instructions very closely. It is vitally important that all components be reinstalled in the same position as the original components that were removed and that the fasteners be torqued to specification. This will maintain the design integrity of the mounting points for the seat belt assembly. Contact your dealer if you have any questions concerning seat belt replacement.

24 STEERING SYSTEM

24.1 Steering System



WARNING

DO NOT operate the vehicle if the steering system is not working properly. If the steering system is not in good

working condition, you could lose control of the vehicle, resulting in an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

Visually check the steering gear and components frequently. Frequent checks are important, especially after traveling over rough roads. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

Adjustments or repairs made to any part of the steering system must be performed by an authorized dealer. Failure to comply may result in property damage, personal injury, or death.

 **WARNING**

On chassis equipped with Electronic Stability Control (ESC), recalibrate the steering angle sensor when servicing, removing, or replacing any part of

the steering system. The steering system includes, but is not limited to the wheels, steering column, tie rods, steering rack, and the steering angle sensor itself. The sensor should also be recalibrated in the event of airbag deployment. An uncalibrated steering angle sensor could result in a loss of vehicle control. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Hydraulic fluid (under low pressure) provides the power to operate the steering gear. It also serves to lubricate moving parts and remove heat. A loss of steering efficiency will occur if too much heat builds up in the system.

If the steering feels unbalanced from side-to-side while turning, check for the following possible causes:

- Unequal tire pressures
- Vehicle overloaded or unevenly distributed load
- Wheels out of alignment
- Wheel bearings improperly adjusted

If you cannot correct the problem, check with an authorized dealer.

Your vehicle is equipped with integral power steering. The system includes an engine-driven fluid pump, a fluid reservoir,

the steering gear, and connecting hoses. Because of the hydraulic power assist, little effort is required to turn the steering wheel. When no input is applied through the steering wheel, the steering gear will return to the neutral position. If, for any reason, the power assist system goes out, steering the vehicle is still possible but it will require much greater effort.

Visually check the following parts:

- Crosstube: Is it straight?
- Drag link castle nut: Check for looseness or interference. (Refer to Drag Link Castle Nut Torque [on page 273](#) for specified torque).
- Ball joints and steering U-joints: Check for looseness
- Steering wheel for excessive free-play. Check the simplest probable causes first: (A) unequal tire pressures; (B) loose cap nuts; (C) bent crosstube; or (D) lack of lubrication

If these checks do not reveal the problem, or if you correct them and still have a steering problem, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer for evaluation.

24.2 Check Power Steering Fluid Level

CAUTION

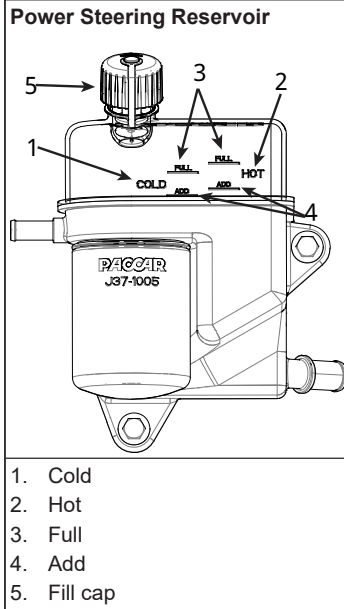
When adding fluid, only use fluid of the same type. While many fluids have the same description and intended purpose, they may contain incompatible additives. Incompatible fluids may cause damage to power steering system components. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

NOTE

Before removing reservoir cap, wipe the outside of the cap so that no dirt or debris falls into the reservoir.

Check the fluid level. Use the following procedure:

1. Park the vehicle on level ground and turn the engine off.
2. Open the hood.
3. Check the fluid level on the reservoir.



Choose from:

- If you check the fluid with the engine and steering system COLD, the fluid level should be above the Add indicator level and should generally not exceed the middle point between the Add and Full level indicators.
- If you check the fluid with the

engine and steering system WARM, the fluid should NOT exceed the Full level indicator and should generally not drop below the middle point between the HOT Full and Add level indicators.

4. To add fluid, open the fill cap to the power steering reservoir and then add fluid until the fluid level is in the middle of the appropriate Minimum and Maximum level indicators.
5. Reinstall the reservoir fill cap and close the hood.

24.3 Steering Shaft Bolt Torque Specifications

The steering (intermediate shaft) U-joint pinch bolt should be tightened on the first day or two of operation, then checked weekly (see Weekly Checks). The following are common torque specifications for most steering shafts.

Table 10: Steering U-joint Pinch Bolt

Fastener Size	Torque Spec. lb-ft (N•m)
7/16 -in.	37-43 (50-58)

Table 11: Pitman Arm Clamp Bolt

Fastener Size	Torque Spec. lb-ft (N•m)
3/4 -in.	300-320 (406-433)

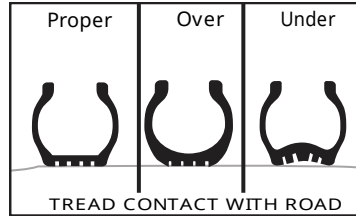
⚠ WARNING

Any modification to a vehicle with Electronic Stability Control (ESC) may result in a loss of vehicle control or non-compliance with Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards. Modifications include but are not limited to changes to the vehicle's axle weight ratings, number of axles, front and rear suspension, wheelbase length or frame, steering controls, or intended body type and size. A modified vehicle with ESC must be evaluated by a qualified technician before it can be operated. Contact your authorized dealer for evaluations. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

25 TIRES

25.1 Tires

Your tires are a very important part of your vehicle's whole braking system. How fast you can stop depends mostly on how much friction you get between the road and your tires. Keeping your tires in good condition is essential to the safe, efficient operation of your vehicle. Regular, frequent inspection and the right care will give you the assurance of safe and reliable tire operation. Here are some tips on maintaining your tires.



⚠ WARNING

All tire repairs should be performed by an expert. DO NOT repair damaged tires unless you are fully qualified and equipped to do so. Wheel and tire assemblies cannot be worked on without proper tools and equipment. Failure

to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Checking Inflation Pressure

Low pressure is a tire's worst enemy. Underinflation allows tires to flex improperly, causing high temperatures to build up. Heat causes early tire damage such as flex break, radial cracks, and ply separation. Low pressure may affect control of your vehicle, especially at the front wheels. Most tire wear problems are caused by underinflation as the result of slow leaks, so check tire pressure regularly. Lower tire pressure does not provide better traction on ice or snow. Give your tires a visual test every day, and check inflation with a gauge every week:

- When checking tire pressure, inspect each tire for damage to sidewalls, cuts, cracks, uneven wear, rocks between duals, etc. If a tire appears underinflated, check for damage to the wheel assembly. Don't forget to check between dual wheels. If you find wheel damage, have an expert tire service repair it.
- Maximum tire pressure will be indicated on the sidewall of a tire.
- Check pressure only when the tires are

cool. Warm or hot tires cause pressure buildup and will give you an inaccurate reading. So never deflate a warm tire to the specified pressure.

! WARNING

DO NOT operate a vehicle with under-inflated tires. Underinflation (or low tire pressure) can create extra heat leading to sudden tire failure (such as a tire fire or blow out) or may affect control of the front wheels, both conditions possibly resulting in an accident. Keep your tires inflated to the manufacturer's recommended air pressure. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

! WARNING

DO NOT install a damaged wheel assembly, and DO NOT install or inflate a tire that has been damaged or has been run flat. Always follow section 1910.177 of OSHA regulations. Truck wheels and tires should be serviced only by fully qualified and properly equipped technicians authorized to do so. Failure to comply may result in

death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

i NOTE

Follow all warnings and cautions contained within the tire and wheel manufacturers literature.

Overloaded Tires

Overloading your truck is as damaging to your tires as underinflation. The following chart shows how neglect or deliberate abuse can affect the life of your tires.

Table 12: Effects of Load and Pressure on Tire Life

Vehicle Load	Tire Pressure	Expected Total Tire Mileage
Normal	Normal	Normal
20% over	20% low	70%
40% over	30% low	50%
60% over	35% low	40%
80% over	45% low	30%
100% over	55% low	25%

Overinflated Tires

Overinflating the tires reduces the tread contact area with the road surface, concentrating all of the vehicle weight on the center of the tread. This causes premature wear of the tire.

! WARNING

Ensure all tires are inflated correctly according to the manufacturer's recommendations. Overinflated tires wear more quickly and are more subject to punctures, cracks, and other damage that can cause loss of vehicle control. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Matching Tires

Be sure to buy matching tires for your vehicle, especially on the rear axles. Mismatched tires can cause stress between axles and cause the temperature of your axle lubricant to get too hot. Matched tires will help your driveline last longer and will give you better tire mileage.

! WARNING

DO NOT mismatch or mix tires of different design such as steel belted radi-

als and bias ply tires, etc. Mixing tire types and sizes will adversely affect the road-holding ability of both types of tires and can lead to loss of vehicle control. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

DO NOT install regrooved or reinforcement repaired tires on steering axles. They could fail unexpectedly and cause loss of vehicle control. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Replacing Tires

Front: Replace front tires when less than 4/32 -in. of tread remains. Check at three places equally spaced around the tire. Drive Axles or Trailers: Replace tires on drive axles or trailers when less than 2/32 -in. of tread depth remains in any major groove. Check at three places equally spaced around the tire.

 **WARNING**

DO NOT replace original equipment tires with tires whose load ratings are less than the originals. Doing so could overload the tire and cause a failure resulting in a loss of vehicle control. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

 **NOTE**

To prolong your tires' life, have their radial and lateral run-out checked at your dealer. Anytime a tire is replaced or reinstalled, it should be balanced.

Tire Chains

The number of required tire chains may vary depending on your operating area. If tire chains are required, please review the area's regulations for more information.

 **NOTE**

To prolong your tires' life, have their radial and lateral run-out checked at your dealer. Anytime a tire is replaced or reinstalled, it should be balanced.

Speed Restricted Tires

 **WARNING**

Check each tire's sidewall and/or tire manufacture's data book for maximum rated speed. This vehicle is equipped with speed restricted tires and should not be operated at speeds in excess of maximum rated speed as this may cause sudden tire failure resulting in loss of control leading to an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

25.2 Greenhouse Gas Certified Tires

 **NOTE**

The tires installed on this vehicle at the factory as original equipment are certified for Greenhouse Gas and Fuel Efficiency regulations. Replacement tires must be of an equal or larger loaded drive tire size and an equal or lower rolling resistance level (TRRL or Crr). Consult with your tire supplier(s) for appropriate replacement tires.

In order to limit the rolling resistance of the tires and optimize fuel economy, the maintenance procedures specified by the tire manufacturer must be followed. Please see Vehicle Emissions Limited Express Warranty for warranty on greenhouse gas certified tires.

26 TRANSMISSION MAINTENANCE

26.1 Transmission Maintenance

Refer to the transmission manufacturer's manual provided with your vehicle.



CAUTION

When adding oil, types and brands of oil should not be intermixed. Different oil brands or types might be incompatible, which could decrease lubrication effectiveness and cause component failure. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

Vehicles configured with the PACCAR TX-12/TX-18 series must maintain the oil coalescing desiccant cartridge of the air dryer as part of transmission maintenance.



CAUTION

Replace the oil-coalescing desiccant air dryer cartridge semi-annually, regardless of mileage. Use of a non-oil-coalescing cartridge or missing a maintenance interval can damage vehicle components and may void warranty coverage. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

26.2 Allison Transmission Lubrication

- Refer to your transmission manual (furnished separately) for lubrication information.
- Refer to the Allison Transmission manual for servicing information.

27 WHEELS

27.1 Wheels

After the vehicle travels about 50 to 100 miles (80 to 160 km), wheel mountings seat in and will lose some initial torque. Check hub/wheel mountings after this initial period and retighten. Threads should be clean and dry. Do not lubricate wheel nuts or studs.



WARNING

Never use oil or grease on studs or nuts. Lubricants will result in improper torque readings, which could cause improper wheel clamping and could lead to wheel failure. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Wheel Replacement with Disc Brake Option




WARNING


Only use tires of the same wheel brand, size, and part number of those originally installed. A different wheel brand or size could cause the valve stem to interfere with a brake component, which could lead to loss of vehicle control. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Vehicles equipped with front disc brakes are fitted with wheels designed specifically for disc brake applications. If it ever becomes necessary to replace an original equipment wheel, the replacement wheel must be the same brand and size as


the take-off wheel. On vehicles equipped with 22.5 in. disc wheels, installing the wrong replacement wheel could result in the wheel valve stem making contact with the disc brake assembly. When installing any replacement wheel, always inspect the tires/wheels to ensure there is adequate clearance between other vehicle components. With the hood open, check for clearance between the wheel and disc brake assembly. Use a hydraulic jack to raise the front of the vehicle off the ground to allow the wheel to spin freely. While rotating the wheel, check to ensure there is adequate clearance between the wheel and disc brake assembly.

 **WARNING**

Follow the manufacturer's literature exactly when mounting and dismounting a wheel or tire. Improperly mounting or dismounting a wheel or tire could cause uneven tire wear, tire blowout, a loss of vehicle control, and lead to an accident. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.


 **WARNING**

Always ensure the hood lock has engaged whenever the hood is opened. If not properly locked open, the hood may close uncontrollably and without warning. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

 **WARNING**

Always support the vehicle with appropriate safety stands if it is necessary to work underneath the vehicle. A jack is not adequate for this purpose. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

Disc Wheels

 **WARNING**

Use the correct components and tools when working on wheels. Using an incorrect tool or component could misalign or damage the wheel and cause a loss of vehicle control. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury,


equipment damage, or property damage.

The end of the wheel wrench must be smooth. Burrs on the end of the wrench can tear grooves in the disc. These grooves may lead to cracks in the disc, and can cause it to fail.

Wheel Bearings

Service the bearings, seals and oil. This interval may be different depending on the results of the regular inspection. 350,000 mi (560,000 km). For safe, reliable operation and adequate service life, your wheel bearings must be adjusted properly at the recommended intervals. Contact your authorized dealer to make sure the wheel bearings are properly adjusted.

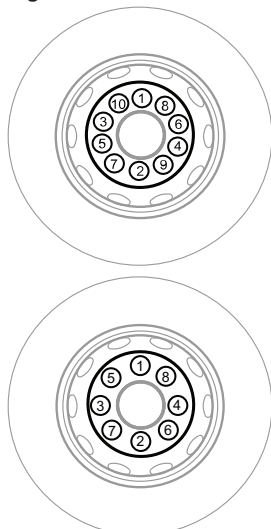
27.2 Tightening Wheel Cap Nuts

 **WARNING**

Torque wheel cap nuts properly. If they are not properly torqued, the wheel nuts could loosen allowing the wheel to detach or fail while the vehicle is moving. Failure to comply may result in

death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.

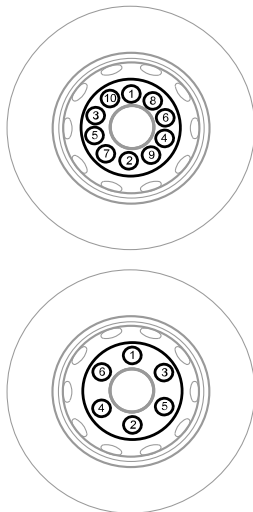
Figure 43: Hub Piloted Disc Wheels



Proper wheel torque can best be obtained on level ground. Install lug nuts and finger-tighten in the numerical sequence as shown below. This procedure will ensure that the wheel is drawn evenly against the hub. Contact an authorized dealer for information on the proper installation procedure

for the wheels on your truck. This is a job you may not be able to do yourself. You need the right torquing equipment to do it.

Figure 44: Stud Piloted Disc Wheels



28 WINDSHIELD WIPER/WASHER

28.1 Windshield Wiper/Washer

The windshield wiper system is designed to be maintenance-free. Check wiper blades annually, every 60,000 miles (96,000 km), or when they begin to show signs of wear. Check the washer reservoir water level daily, located in the engine compartment. If necessary, refill to the proper level.

28.2 How to Refill the Washer Fluid Reservoir

CAUTION

DO NOT use antifreeze or coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. These are harmful fluids to the seals and other components. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

1. Park the vehicle and apply the parking brake.
2. Open the hood and secure it in the open position.
3. Locate the washer fluid reservoir

located on the driver's side of the engine compartment, on top of the radiator, and open the filler cap.

4. Fill the 2.0 Gallon (7.6 Liters) reservoir with windshield washer fluid and replace the cap.
5. Close and secure the hood.

29 SPECIFICATION REFERENCE CHARTS

29.1 Pipe and Hose Clamp Torque Values

Torque specifications for engine parts.

Application	Type of Clamp	lb-in.	N•m
Radiator and heat exchanger hoses	Constant torque CT-L	90-110	10.2-12.5
Heater hoses	Constant tension	Not required	Not required
Air intake pipes	HI torque HTM-L	100-125	11.3-14.2
Plastic air intake pipes	Constant torque CT-L	88	10.0
Charge air intake hoses	Flex Seal™	70-100	7.9-11.3
	B9296	50-60	6-7
Fuel, oil and water heat exchangers (for hoses less than 9/16 in. diameter).	Miniature 3600L	10-15	1.1-1.7

29.2 Drag Link Castle Nut Torque

Ball Stud Fastener	Castle Nut Torque lb-ft (N•m)
7/8-14	120 to 170 (163 to 231)

intended clamp load may not be achieved if the nut is held and torque is applied to the bolt.

Incorrectly tightening a fastener may result in clamp load or frame failures. Failure to comply may result in equipment or property damage.

29.3 Frame Fastener Torque Requirements

CAUTION

When torquing fasteners, always consider the following:

- Use a torque wrench for final tightening of a fastener. **DO NOT** use an impact gun. Bolts may over-torque and break.
- When torquing a frame fastener that is not captured, welded, or riveted, the nut must rotate slightly before achieving the torque value. If the nut does not rotate, the fastener is over-torqued and should be replaced.
- To achieve correct clamp loads with a frame fastener that is not captured, welded, or riveted, torque must be applied to the nut. The

29.4 Lubrication Specification Chart

i NOTE

The responsibility for meeting these specifications, the quality of the product, and its performance in service rests with the lubricant supplier.

Consult manufacturer or lubricant supplier for special details.

Table 13: Component Lubrication Index

Application	Type
Steering Column	Multipurpose chassis grease
Alternator Bearing	High temperature ball bearing grease. Chevron SRI Mobile Grease HP, Texaco Multifax 2 (1)
Fan Hub	High temperature ball bearing grease. Chevron SRI Mobile Grease HP, Texaco Multifax 2 (1)
Power Steering Reservoir	MD3 or MERCON®-approved automatic transmission fluid
Steering Drag Link	Multipurpose chassis grease
Steering Knuckles	Multipurpose chassis grease
Spring Pins	Multipurpose chassis grease
Clutch Release Bearings	High temperature ball bearing grease. Chevron SRI Mobile Grease HP, Texaco Multifax 2
Brake Shoe Anchor Pins	High Temperature grease (Timken Spec. 0-616)
Brake Cam Bearings	High Temperature grease (Timken Spec. 0-616)
Slack Adjusters	Multipurpose chassis grease

Table 13: Component Lubrication Index

Application	Type
Starter Bearings	Engine oil for severe requirements (MIL-L-2104B /MIL-L-45199B) w/ 1.85 % max. sulfated ash
Water Pump	High temperature ball bearing grease. Chevron SRI Mobile Grease HP, Texaco Multifax 2 (1)
Suspension Fittings (other than threaded pins and bushings)	Extreme Pressure Lubricant (Lithium 12-hydroxystearate base NLGI 2)
Steering Axle: Grease Fittings on Steering Arm; Tie Rod Ends; Drag Link; King Pins	Extreme Pressure Lubricant (Lithium 12-hydroxystearate base NLGI 2)
Steering Shaft Grease Fittings	Extreme Pressure Lubricant (Lithium 12-hydroxystearate base NLGI 2)
Brake Treadle Hinge and Roller	Engine oil
Lock Cylinders	Lock lubricant
Door Hinges	Do not lubricate
Door Latches and Striker Plates	Polyethylene grease stick
Door Weatherstrip	Silicone lubricant
Hub-piloted Aluminum Wheels	Coat the wheel pilot or hub pads with Freylube #3 lubricant (light colored) or Chevron Zinc lube. Do not get lubricant on the face of the wheel or the hub.
Manual Transmission Hydraulic Clutch	DOT3 (Brake Fluid)
(1) Consult manufacturer or lubricant supplier for special details.	

29.5 Suspension U-Bolts, Grade 8

Tighten all U-bolts with a torque wrench. Torque requirements in the table below apply to PACCAR proprietary suspensions using Protect Torque/TEXO coated U-bolts only. For all other suspensions, follow the manufacturer's recommended torque values. PACCAR proprietary suspension U-bolts must be tightened in a specific sequence. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to tighten the U-bolts on your vehicle.

Table 14: Torque for Grade 8 U-Bolts

Front Suspension U-bolts		
U-Bolt Size Diameter (-in.)	Torque (lb-ft)	Torque (N•m)
3/4	260-290	353-393
7/8	370-415	502-563
For all non-PACCAR suspension systems, see the manufacturer's operator's manual for torque specifications.		

Rear Suspension U-bolts		
Rear Suspension Type	U-Bolt Diameter	Torque lb-ft (N•m) ¹
Low Air Leaf (U-bolt, spring)	M22 x 1.5	375-475 (508-644)
Flex Air	M22 x 1.5	325-375 (440-508)
Tandem Low Air Leaf	M22 x 1.5	375-475 (508-644)
Air Leaf (U-bolt, spring)	1.0 - in. NF	450-550 (610-746)
Air-Trac	1.0 - in. NF	450-550 (610-746)
13.5K Taper Leaf (Axle U-bolt)	¾ -in. 16 UNF	275-320 (373-434)
18K Taper Leaf (Axle U-bolt)	¾ -in. 16 UNF	275-320 (373-434)
18K Air Leaf (Axle U-bolt)	¾ -in. 16 UNF	275-320 (373-434)
For all non-PACCAR suspension systems, see the manufacturer's operator's manual for torque specifications.		

¹ Torques listed are for primed (or non-oiled) U-bolts.

NOTE

The values shown here are for suspension U-bolts and should not be applied to bolts and fasteners for the frame.

29.6 Rear Suspension Fasteners

AIR-TRAC FASTENER TORQUE VALUES

Fastener	Fastener Name	lb•ft (N•m)
M16	Tracking rod bolts	125-165 (170-224)
0.75 NF	Spring center bolt	165-210 (224-285) ¹
M16 0.75 NF	Radius rod bolts (forward)	155-195 (210-264)
	Radius rod bolts (at axle)	250-350 (339-475)
M16	Frame bracket bushing bolts	50-65 (68-88)

Fastener	Fastener Name	lb•ft (N•m)
1.0 NF	U-bolt ²	Refer to section on Suspension U-Bolts, Grade 8.
0.5 UNC	Air bag stud nut	40–50 (54–68)
M16	Tracking rod bolts	125–165 (170–224)

¹ Torque requirement applies at sub-assembly of air-spring support and leaf spring only.

² See owners manual for torque tightening sequence.

LOW AIR LEAF TORQUE VALUES

Low Air Leaf Torque values apply to both single and tandem axles.

Fastener	Fastener Name	Torque lb•ft (N•m)
M20 x 2.5	Bar pin bolts	325–425 (441–576)
M22 x 1.5	U-bolt, ¹ spring ¹	Refer to section on Suspension U-Bolts, Class 10.9.

Fastener	Fastener Name	Torque lb•ft (N•m)
0.5 UNC	Air bag stud nut	40–50 (54–68)
M16	Tracking rod bolts	125–165 (210–264)

¹ Contact your dealer for torque tightening procedure.

Fastener	Fastener Name	Torque lb•ft (N•m)
M20 x 2.5	Bar pin bolts	325–425 (441–576)
M22 x 1.5	U-bolt, ¹ spring ¹	Refer to section on Suspension U-Bolts, Class 10.9.
0.5 UNC	Air bag stud nut	40–50 (54–68)
M16	Tracking rod bolts	125–165 (210–264)

¹ Contact your dealer for torque tightening procedure.

FLEX AIR FASTENER TORQUE VALUES

Fastener	Fastener Name	Torque lb•ft (N•m)
M16	Drive bracket - frame bolts	125–165 (170–224)
	Drive bracket - link spring bolt	
	Drive bracket - radius rod bolt	
	Drive beam - shock bolt (lower)	
	Shock bracket - shock bolt (upper)	
	Tracking rod bolts (all)	
M10	Air spring support beam bolts	36–51 (49–69)
0.88 - 14 UNF	Drive beam - link spring bolt	380–460 (515–624)

Fastener	Fastener Name	Torque lb-ft (N•m)
0.88 - 14 UNF	Radius rod bracket bolt	380–460 (515–624)
M22 x 1.5	U-bolt ¹	Refer to section on Suspension U-Bolts, Class 10.9.
0.5 UNC	Air bag stud nut	40–50 (54–68)

¹ Contact your dealer for torque tightening procedure.

Fastener	Fastener Name	Torque lb-ft (N•m)
M16	Drive bracket - frame bolts	125–165 (170–224)
	Drive bracket - link spring bolt	
	Drive bracket - radius rod bolt	
	Drive beam - shock bolt (lower)	
	Shock bracket - shock bolt (upper)	
	Tracking rod bolts (all)	
M10	Air spring support beam bolts	36–51 (49–69)
0.88 - 14 UNF	Drive beam - link spring bolt	380–460 (515–624)
0.88 - 14 UNF	Radius rod bracket bolt	380–460 (515–624)

Fastener	Fastener Name	Torque lb-ft (N•m)
M22 x 1.5	U-bolt ¹	Refer to section on Suspension U-Bolts, Class 10.9.
0.5 UNC	Air bag stud nut	40–50 (54–68)

¹ Contact your dealer for torque tightening procedure.

29.7 Vehicle Light Bulb Specifications

Bulb Location	Type of Bulb	Notes
Low beam/ DRL halogen	H11-LL, 12 volts, 55 Watts	(Long life version not required)
High beam halogen	HB3A-LL, 12 volts, 60 Watts	(Long life version not required)
Turn signal/Parking/ Side-marker halogens ¹	4157NAK, 12 volts 28.5 Watts	N/A
LED Side markers	N/A	LED

Bulb Location	Type of Bulb	Notes
Rear tail lamps/ turn signals	N/A	LED
Interior map/Dome/ Indirect light	N/A	LED

¹ Bulb provides all three lighting functions.

29.8 Wheel Cap Nut Torque Specifications

At the first scheduled lube interval, have all wheel cap nuts torqued to their specified value. After that, check wheel cap nuts at least once a week.

Contact an authorized dealer for information on the proper installation procedure for the wheels on your vehicle. This is a job you may not be able to do yourself. You need the right torquing equipment to do it.

Wheel and Nut Configuration	Stud Size	Torque for Two Piece Flanged Cap Nuts	
		lb-ft	N•m
Hub-Piloted Disc-Type Wheel w/Two Piece Flanged Cap Nuts: Steel or Aluminum Wheel PHP-10; Budd Uni-Mount-10; WDH-8	M22-1.5	450-500	610-680
Stud Backnuts (when used)	3/4-16	175-200	240-270
	1-14	175-300	240-410
Cast Spoke Wheel Assembly Rim Clamp Nut Torque	1/2 in. Dia.	80-90	110-120
	5/8 in. Dia.	160-185	220-250
	3/4 in. Dia.	225-245	305-335

30 OVER-THE-AIR (OTA) SOFTWARE UPDATES

When OTA system updates are available for selected Electronic Control Units (ECU), a message appears on the digital display. To install the updates, use the Steering Wheel Control pad.



WARNING

Performing an over-the-air (OTA) update has the potential to render the vehicle inoperable. Perform the OTA only in a safe location. Failure to comply can result in death, personal injury, equipment or property damage.

Before you begin:

- Find a safe location preferably in a town or city
- Stop the truck
- Set the parking brake
- Switch off the engine
- Place the key in the ON position
- The 12 V battery must show as "OK"

Using the Steering Wheel Control pad:

1. Select "Menu."
2. Select "Settings."

3. Select "Start Installation."
 - The message "System Update In Progress" appears.
 - If successful, "System Update Complete" appears.
4. Turn the key to the OFF position to exit updates.



NOTE

If the restore fails, "System Restore Failed" appears. **At this point, it is possible that the vehicle is inoperable.** The instructions now direct the driver to seek service immediately. (See [Roadside Assistance on page 31](#)).

- If unsuccessful, "System Update Failed" appears AND the system automatically starts restoring the previous software version. A message appears to inform the operator of the start of the restoration process.
- If the system restore succeeds, "System Restored" appears.

CHAPTER 6: INFORMATION

1	Consumer Information.....	283
2	Vehicle Identification Labels.....	284
3	Clean Idle.....	287
4	Greenhouse Gas Certified Configuration.....	288
5	Vehicle Emissions Limited Express Warranty.....	291
6	Telematics Control Unit FCC Information.....	294

1 CONSUMER INFORMATION

How To Order Replacement Parts

You can obtain replacement parts from an authorized dealership. When you order, it is **IMPORTANT** that you have the following information ready:

- Name and address
- Serial number of the vehicle
- The name of the part you need
- The name and number of the component for which the part is required
- The quantity (qty) of parts you need
- How you want the order shipped

National Highway Traffic and Safety Administration (NHTSA)

If you believe that the vehicle has a dangerous defect, you must immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA). Also notify the vehicle manufacturer. If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it can open an investigation. If it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it can order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot get involved in individual problems between you, the dealer, and the vehicle manufacturer. Contacting NHTSA is pos-

sible through telephone, written mail, and email. NHTSA also has a website where you can input the comments directly to them on the Web. Use any of the four ways to contact NHTSA:

Ex: Toll Free 1-888-327-4236
(800-424-9153 TTY) 8:00 a.m. to 10:00 p.m. EST Monday-Friday

Mail: Office of Defects Investigations/
CRD NVS-216 1200 New Jersey Ave. SE
Washington, D.C. 20590

Website: www.safercar.gov

Email: nhtsa.webmaster@dot.gov

Transport Canada

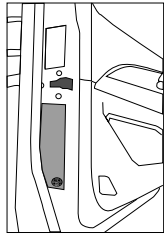
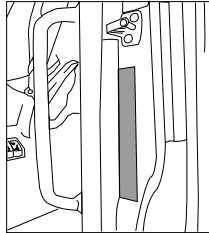
Canadian customers must report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls. You can reach them by telephone on the toll-free hotline at 1-800-333-0510. You can also contact Transport Canada by mail at:
Transport Canada, ASFAD Place de Ville
Tower C 330 Sparks St. Ottawa, ON K1A 0N5

For additional road safety information, visit the Road Safety website at:
<http://www.tc.gc.ca>

2 VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION LABELS

Each vehicle completed by Peterbilt Motors Company uses a vehicle identification number (VIN) that contains the model year designation of your vehicle. The practice is in compliance with 49 CFR 565, Code of Federal Regulations.

The full, 17-digit VIN is located on the Weight Rating Data Label. The label is located on the driver's side door edge or on the driver's side door frame.



Chassis Number

The Chassis Number refers to the last six characters of the VIN. This number will allow your dealer to identify your vehicle. You will be asked for this number when you bring it in for service. Chassis Number Locations:

- Right frame rail, top flange, about 3 ft. from the front end
- Back of cab, left-hand rear panel, lower edge
- Tire, Rim, and Weight Rating Data label (truck)
- Components and Weights label

- Noise Emission label
- Paint Identification label

Certification Labels

Your vehicle information and specifications are documented on labels. As noted below, each label contains specific information pertaining to vehicle capacities and specifications that you should be aware of.

Components and Chassis Weight Label

The Components and Chassis Weight Label is located on either the driver's side door edge or on the driver's side door frame. It includes chassis number, chassis weight and gross weight, plus model information for the vehicle, engine, transmission, and axles.

Tire, Rim and Weight Rating Data Label

The Tire, Rim, and Weight Rating Data Label is located on the driver's side door edge or on the driver's side door frame. It contains the following information:

- GVWR - Gross Vehicle Weight Rating
- GAWR FRONT, INTERMEDIATE and REAR - Gross Axle Weight Ratings for Front, Intermediate and Rear Axle
- TIRE/RIM SIZES AND INFLATION PRESSURES - Tire/Rim Sizes and Cold Pressure Minimums
- VIN including CHASSIS NUMBER

The components of your vehicle are designed to provide satisfactory service, if the vehicle is not loaded in excess of either the gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR), or the maximum front and rear gross axle weight ratings (GAWRs).



WARNING

DO NOT exceed the specified load rating. Overloading can result in loss of vehicle control, either by causing component failures or by affecting vehicle handling. Exceeding load ratings can also shorten the service life of the vehicle. Failure to comply may result in death, personal injury, equipment damage, or property damage.



NOTE

GVW is the TOTAL SCALE WEIGHT the vehicle is designed to carry. This includes the weight of the empty vehicle, loading platform, occupants, fuel, and any load.

Noise Emission Label

The Noise Emission Label is located in the driver's side door frame. It contains information regarding U.S. noise emission regulations, chassis number, and date of manufacture.

Paint Identification Label

The Paint Identification Label contains the paint colors used by the factory to paint your vehicle. It lists frame, wheels, cab interior and exterior colors. This label is located inside the glove box.

Federal Safety Standard Certification Label

The NHTSA regulations require a label certifying compliance with Federal Safety Standards, for United States and U.S. Territories, be affixed to each motor vehicle and prescribe where such label may be located. This certification label, which indicates the date of manufacture and other pertinent information, is located on the driver's side door edge or on the driver's side door frame.

Component Identification

Each of the major components on your vehicle has an identification label or tag. For easy reference, record component numbers such as, model, serial, and assembly number.

Engine	For further information, please refer to the Engine Operation and Maintenance Manual.
Transmission	For all transmissions, the identification number is stamped on a tag affixed to the right rear side of the transmission case.
Clutch	Enclosed in clutch housing. Location depends on manufacturer.
Steer Axle	The front axle serial number is stamped on a plate located on the center of the axle beam.
Axle Specification Number	Usually stamped on the right rear side of the axle housing. This number identifies the complete axle.
Axle Housing Number	Usually located on the left forward side of the housing arm. This tag identifies the axle housing.
Axle Differential Carrier Identification	Usually located on the top side of the differential carrier. The following information is either stamped, or marked with a metal tag: Model No., Production Assembly No., Serial No., Gear Ratio, and Part Number.

3 CLEAN IDLE

To comply with CARB or EPA emissions requirements, the vehicle must have the Certified Clean Idle label. Some vehicles, however, are exempt from these requirements because of their configurations (for example: fire truck service).

The vehicle could display any of these labels. When present, they display prominently that its engine meets the strict low exhaust emission regulations instituted by CARB or EPA. It is important that you do not remove or deface this label. Do not block it from view. Contact the authorized dealership to see if you can replace the label. The dealership helps you to determine whether or not the vehicle's engine is a candidate for a Certified Clean Idle label. Certain vehicles that did not ship with the label are still eligible to display one.



Engine Shutdown System (ESS)

To meet CARB certification, the engine must have an ESS. An ESS provides both the "limited idle" and "low exhaust emissions" standards required by CARB (and some additional states.) These regulations require that the engine comes with an automatic system to restrict the idle time

on certain vehicles, under certain circumstances. If so equipped, the ESS shuts off the engine when:

- the vehicle idles for more than 5 minutes with the parking brake set and the transmission is in "Neutral" or "Park"

The shutoff timer extends to 15 minutes with the parking brake OFF. If the engine is in one of the following states, the ESS does NOT shut down the engine:

- operating in Power Take Off (PTO) mode
- when the engine coolant is below 60 degrees Fahrenheit
- while performing a regeneration while parked

When the ESS shutdown timer reaches the last 30 seconds, the check engine light alerts the driver. During these 30 seconds, it is possible to reset the idle time by pressing on the accelerator pedal. These 30 seconds are the ONLY time that it is possible for the driver to reset the idle time using this method. More detailed information is available in the Engine Operator's Manual provided with the vehicle.

4 GREENHOUSE GAS CERTIFIED CONFIGURATION

This vehicle includes Greenhouse Gas (GHG) regulated parameters and technologies. A Vehicle Emission Control Information label is located on the driver's door with codes that partially identify the vehicle's GHG certified configuration. In addition to the Vehicle Emission Control Information label, other technologies that reduce GHG emissions and regulated parameters included in the vehicle's GHG certified configuration are described in this section.

i NOTE

Modifying a vehicle's certified configuration without good engineering judgment or PACCAR's approval may be a violation of the Clean Air Act and subject to fines and penalties. Please contact the vehicle manufacturer for further information about this vehicle's certified configuration.

Vehicle Emission Control Information Label Descriptions

Label Identifiers	Label Identifier Descriptions
Family Name	Describes the vehicle's certified manufacturer, regulatory category, and regulatory subcategory
Emission Controls	Describes regulated emission control devices installed on the vehicle
Compliance Statement	Describes the vehicle's compliance standards
Regulatory Subcategory	Describes the vehicle's certified regulatory subcategory

Emission Controls	Emission Control Descriptions
ARF	Aerodynamic roof fairing
ARFR	Adjustable height aerodynamic roof fairing

ATS	Aerodynamic side skirt and/or fuel tank fairing
AFF	Aerodynamic front fairing
AREF	Aerodynamic rear fairing
TGR	Gap reducing fairing
LRRR	Low rolling resistance tires (all)
LRRD	Low rolling resistance tires (drive)
LRRS	Low rolling resistance tires (steer)
VSL	Vehicle speed limiter
VSLS	Soft-top vehicle speed limiter
VSLE	Expiring vehicle speed limiter
VSLD	Vehicle speed limiter with both soft-top and expiration
IRT	Engine shutoff system

IRT5	Engine shutoff after 5 minutes or less of idling
IRTE	Expiring engine shutoff
ADVH	Vehicle includes advanced hybrid technology components
ADVO	Vehicle includes other advanced-technology components
INV	Vehicle includes innovative (off-cycle) technology
ATI	Automatic tire inflation system
TPMS	Tire pressure monitoring system

GHG Regulated Technology Not On the Vehicle Emission Control Information Label

Technology	Compliance Requirements
Wheel-Related Weight Reduction	Wheel-related weight reduction benefits may be included in this vehicle's certified configuration. Changing aluminum wheels to steel wheels may be a violation of the Clean Air Act and subject to fines and penalties.

Non wheel-Related Weight Reduction	Non wheel-related weight reduction benefits may be included in this vehicle's certified configuration. Changing aluminum material to steel material may be a violation of the Clean Air Act and subject to fines and penalties.
------------------------------------	---

Other Technologies This vehicle may be equipped with factory installed automatic engine shut-down (AES), neutral idle, start-stop systems, intelligent controls (Predictive Cruise Control and Neutral Coast), or extended idle reduction systems (Engine Idle Shut-down Timer, Engine Auto Start, Sleeper APUs, Fuel-Fired Sleeper Heater System). Disabling or modifying any GHG regulated technology may be a violation of the Clean Air Act and subject to fines and penalties.

GHG Regulated Powertrain Parameters Not On the Vehicle Emission Control Information Label

Powertrain Components	Regulated Parameters
Engine	Engine idle speed, torque, horsepower, and governed RPM
Transmission	Lock up gear, number of gears, and torque converter
Axle	Configuration and drive axle ratio

GHG Regulated Aerodynamic Performance

The vehicle needs to stay in as-built aerodynamic performance unless good engineering judgment shows that the modification will improve safety or will not increase greenhouse gases.

GHG Regulated Certified Tires

***i* NOTE**

The tires installed on this vehicle at the factory as original equipment are certified for Greenhouse Gas and Fuel Efficiency regulations. Replacement tires

must be of an equal or larger loaded drive tire size and an equal or lower rolling resistance level (TRRL or Crr). Consult with your tire supplier(s) for appropriate replacement tires.

In order to limit the rolling resistance of the tires and optimize fuel economy, the maintenance procedures specified by the tire manufacturer must be followed. Please see Vehicle Emissions Limited Express Warranty for warranty on greenhouse gas certified tires.

GHG Regulated Air Conditioning Leakage Standards

Loss of refrigerant from the air conditioning systems may not exceed a total leakage rate of 11.0 grams per year or a percent leakage rate of 1.50 percent per year, whichever is greater. This vehicle was built to meet these air conditioning leakage standards. Any modification of the air conditioning system must comply with leakage rates defined in SAE J2727.

***i* NOTE**

Modifying a vehicle's certified configuration without good engineering judgment or PACCAR's approval may be a violation of the Clean Air Act and subject to

finer and penalties. Please contact the vehicle manufacturer for further information about this vehicle's certified configuration.

5 VEHICLE EMISSIONS LIMITED EXPRESS WARRANTY

Original Equipment Tires

Peterbilt warrants the tires installed as original equipment on this vehicle only against defects in materials and workmanship which cause the vehicle to fail to comply with applicable U.S. and Canadian greenhouse gas emission limits ("Warrantable Emissions Failures"). This vehicle emissions limited express warranty relating to original equipment tires is valid for two (2) years or 24,000 miles (38,000 km), whichever occurs first. YOUR SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDY AGAINST PETERBILT IS LIMITED TO THE REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT OF ORIGINAL EQUIPMENT TIRES, SUBJECT TO PETERBILT'S TIME AND MILEAGE LIMITATIONS LISTED ABOVE. This Vehicle Emissions Limited Express Warranty relating to original equipment tires begins on the date of delivery of the vehicle to the first purchaser or lessee

and accrued time and mileage is calculated when the vehicle is brought in for correction of the Warrantable Emissions Failures relating to the original equipment tires. PETERBILT MAKES NO OTHER VEHICLE EMISSIONS WARRANTIES RELATING TO THE ORIGINAL EQUIPMENT TIRES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. WHERE PERMITTED BY LAW, PETERBILT EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE RELATING TO VEHICLE EMISSIONS. PETERBILT AND THE SELLING DEALER SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO: LOSS OF INCOME OR LOST PROFITS; VEHICLE DOWNTIME; COMMUNICATION EXPENSES; LODGING AND/OR MEAL EXPENSES; FINES; APPLICABLE TAXES OR BUSINESS COSTS OR LOSSES; ATTORNEY'S FEES; AND ANY LIABILITY YOU MAY HAVE IN RESPECT TO ANY OTHER PERSON OR ENTITY RELATING TO WARRANTABLE EMISSIONS FAILURES. This Vehicle Emissions Limited Express Warranty relating to original equipment tires is limited to emissions compliance only. The tires are separately warranted by their manufacturer for defects in materials and workmanship

other than those which cause non-compliance with U.S. and Canadian GHG regulations, subject to limitations and conditions contained within the tire manufacturer's warranty agreement. You are responsible for the safe operation and maintenance of the vehicle and its tires. Peterbilt does not warrant wear and tear of the tires.

Greenhouse Gas (GHG) Components Other Than Tires

This GHG vehicle Warranty applies to the vehicle (hereafter, vehicle) certified with the US Environmental Protection Agency.

Your Warranty Rights and Obligations

This vehicle is warranted for components that directly impact the manufacturers GHG certification with the US Environmental Protection Agency. Peterbilt must warrant these components for the periods of time listed below provided there has been no abuse, neglect or improper maintenance of the vehicle. If a GHG-related part on your vehicle is found to have a defect in material or assembly, the part will be repaired or replaced by Peterbilt.

Manufacturer's Warranty Coverage

This emissions warranty coverage is provided for five years or 100,000 miles (160,000 km), whichever occurs first, from the date of delivery of the vehicle to the

first purchaser or first lease. Where a Warrantable Condition exists, Peterbilt will diagnose and repair the vehicle, parts and labor included, at no cost to the first purchaser or first lessee and each subsequent purchaser or lessee. This warranty does not override any extended warranty purchased to cover specific vehicle components.

Owner's Warranty Responsibilities

You are responsible for performing required maintenance that is listed in your engine and vehicle Operator's Manuals. You are responsible for presenting the vehicle to a service location as soon as a problem exists. Any warranty repairs should be completed in a reasonable amount of time. You are responsible for ensuring that all manufacturer campaigns and federal recalls related to the Vehicle are complete. Peterbilt recommends that you retain all receipts. This includes, but is not limited to, routine service checks, oil changes, tire rotations, and any other preventative maintenance tasks specified in the operator/owners manuals. Failure to provide preventative maintenance documentation may affect the validity of the warranty. Peterbilt reserves the right to require proof of compliance with maintenance requirements before processing a claim. Inadequate or missing documentation may result in the

denial of warranty coverage for repairs or services related to the Vehicle. Peterbilt may deny warranty coverage if a vehicle component has failed due to abuse, neglect, improper maintenance, unapproved modifications (both physical components and computer programming) or using non-Original Equipment replacement parts. If there are any questions regarding these warranty rights and responsibilities, please contact the vehicle OEM manufacturer at the customer center telephone number provided with the vehicle operating instructions. Prior to the expiration of the applicable warranty, you must give notice of any warranted failure to an authorized Peterbilt dealer and deliver the vehicle to such facility for repair. You are responsible for incidental costs such as: communication expenses, meals, lodging incurred by you or your employees as a result of a Warrantable Condition. You are responsible for downtime expenses, cargo damage, fines, all applicable taxes, all business costs, and other losses resulting from a Warrantable Condition. You are responsible for maintaining all emissions related engine and vehicle computer program settings in accordance with manufacturer specifications. This responsibility includes GHG specific settings that may not be altered before the GHG-related expiration mileage

has been reached for each system. You are responsible for maintaining all physical parts related to GHG-regulations in the as-built configuration and in proper working order for the full regulatory useful life of 435,000 miles (700,000 km) or 10 years for Class 8 vehicles, 185,000 miles (300,000 km) or 10 years for Class 5-7.

Replacement Parts

Peterbilt recommends that any service parts used for maintenance, repair or replacement of GHG components be new or genuine approved rebuilt parts and assemblies. The use of non-genuine engine or vehicle replacement parts that are not equivalent to the Peterbilt engine or OEM vehicle manufacturer's original part specification as built from the factory may impair the engine and vehicle emissions control system from working or functioning effectively, and may jeopardize your GHG warranty coverage. In addition, genuine vehicle or engine parts must be replaced with the same material and function as the part assembled on the vehicle from the factory. The owner may elect to have maintenance, replacement or repair of the emission control parts performed by a facility other than an authorized Peterbilt dealer and may elect to use parts other than new or genuine approved rebuilt parts and assemblies for such maintenance, replace-

ment or repair; however, the cost of such service or parts and subsequent failures resulting from such service or parts may not be fully warranted if the manufacturer determines that the replacement part is not of similar material and function as the OEM part assembled to the vehicle at the factory.

Responsibilities

The warranty coverage begins when the vehicle is delivered to the first purchaser or first lessee. Repairs and service performed by any authorized Peterbilt dealer using new or genuine approved rebuilt parts and assemblies will utilize replacement parts that are selected and installed to support the GHG compliance certification. Peterbilt will repair parts found by Peterbilt to be defective without charge for parts or labor (including diagnosis which results in determination that there has been a failure of a warranted part).

Warranty Limitations

Sole and exclusive remedy against Peterbilt and the Selling Dealer arising from the purchase and use of this vehicle is limited to the repair or replacement of "warrantable failures", for replacement parts that are similar in material and function to OEM specifications and subject to Peterbilt's time, mileage, and hour limitations of the greenhouse gas warranty. The maximum

time, mileage and hour limitations of the warranty begin with the Date of Delivery to the first purchaser or first lessee. The accrued time, mileage, or hours is calculated when the vehicle is brought in for correction of warrantable failures. Peterbilt is not responsible for failures or damage resulting from what Peterbilt determines to be abuse, neglect or uncontrollable acts of nature, including, but not limited to: damage due to accident; operation without adequate coolants or lubricants; overfueling; overspeeding; lack of maintenance of cooling, lubricating or intake systems; improper storage, starting, warm-up, run-in or shutdown practices; unauthorized modifications to the vehicle and its components. In addition, Peterbilt is not responsible for damage caused by any commodity, including but not limited to: damage from corrosive chemicals directly hauled by the vehicle or damage caused by driving the vehicle through specific work environments. Peterbilt is also not responsible for failures caused by incorrect oil, fuel or diesel exhaust fluid or by water, dirt or other contaminants in the fuel, oil or diesel exhaust fluid. Failure of replacement parts used in repairs due to the above non-warrantable conditions is not warrantable. This warranty is void if the vehicle is altered with parts that do not meet the

material and functional specifications as manufactured from the factory. Any alterations to vehicle or engine computer settings will void GHG warranty and potentially cause the vehicle to become non-compliant with EPA Clean Air Act GHG regulations. Any alterations to GHG specific settings prior to the GHG related expiration mileage for each system will void GHG warranty and potentially cause the vehicle to become non-compliant with EPA Clean Air Act GHG regulations. This warranty is void if certain GHG components are not properly maintained and thus cannot perform to their designed capability. Peterbilt is not responsible for failures resulting from improper repair or the use of parts which are not genuine approved parts. Peterbilt is not responsible for the material and labor costs of emission control parts and assemblies replaced during Scheduled Maintenance of the engine as specified in Peterbilt Operator's Manuals. THIS WARRANTY, TOGETHER WITH THE EXPRESS COMMERCIAL WARRANTIES ARE THE SOLE WARRANTIES MADE BY PETERBILT IN REGARD TO THIS VEHICLE. THIS LIMITED GHG WARRANTY IS THE SOLE WARRANTY MADE BY PETERBILT AND THE SELLING DEALER. EXCEPT FOR THE ABOVE LIMITED WARRANTY, PETERBILT AND THE

SELLING DEALER MAKE NO OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. PETERBILT AND THE SELLING DEALER EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. PETERBILT AND THE SELLING DEALER SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO: LOSS OF INCOME OR LOST PROFITS; ENGINE OR VEHICLE DOWNTIME; THIRD PARTY DAMAGE, INCLUDING DAMAGE OR LOSS TO OTHER ENGINES, VEHICLES OR PROPERTY, ATTACHMENTS, TRAILERS AND CARGO; LOSS OR DAMAGE TO PERSONAL CONTENTS; COMMUNICATION EXPENSES; LODGING AND/OR MEAL EXPENSES; FINES; APPLICABLE TAXES OR BUSINESS COSTS OR LOSSES; ATTORNEYS' FEES; AND ANY LIABILITY YOU MAY HAVE IN RESPECT TO ANY OTHER PERSON OR ENTITY.

6 TELEMATICS CONTROL UNIT FCC INFORMATION

General Information

Model	IC
TCU2 NA IP30	2AUXS-TCU2NAIP30A
TCU2 NA IP67	2AUXS-TCU2NAIP67A

NOTE

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTE

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible

for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

NOTE

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver
- Connect the equipment into an

outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected

- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help

Radiofrequency radiation exposure Information:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 8 in. (20 cm) between the radiator and your body. This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Used Frequency Bands (+antenna)

Table 15: LTE

Band	MHz
7	2600
12 (incl. 17)	700
25 (incl. 2)	1900
26 (incl. 5)	850
66 (incl. 4)	1700
71	600

Table 16: Bluetooth™ and WiFi Frequencies

Bluetooth	2402 - 2480 MHz
Bluetooth, low energy	2402 - 2480 MHz
802.11b	2412 - 2742 MHz
802.11g	2412 - 2742 MHz
802.11n	2412 - 2742 MHz
	5180 - 5240 MHz
	5260 - 5320 MHz
	5500 - 5700 MHz
802.11ac	5745 - 5825 MHz
	5180 - 5240 MHz
	5260 - 5320 MHz
	5500 - 5700 MHz
	5745 - 5825 MHz

Canada-specific Information

Model	IC
TCU2 NA IP30	25847-TCU2NAIP30
TCU2 NA IP67	25847-TCU2NAIP67

Contains IC ID: 4441A-UMCSTD31BPN

NOTE

This device contains license-exempt transmitter(s)/receiver(s) that comply with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause interference
- This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device

RF Exposure Information:

This equipment complies with Canada radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. Install and operate this equipment with minimum distance of 8 inches (20 cm) between the radiator and your body.

Mexico-Specific Information

The operation of this equipment is subject to the following two conditions:

- This equipment or device may not cause harmful interference and
- This equipment or device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation

A

Accessories 119
Active Cruise Control
 Set Following Distance 145
Active Warnings 54
adaptive cruise control 136
Adaptive Cruise Control 144
Adaptive Cruise Control Notification (option) 52
Adaptive Cruise Display 144
Adaptive Cruise (option) 58
Additives to Cooling System 228
Adjust Seat 15
Adjust Side Mirrors 110
Advanced ABS with Stability Control 157
Air Conditioner 112
 Defrost Windshield 117
Air-Controlled Sliding Fifth Wheel 174
Air Disc Brakes 222
Air Dryer Maintenance 211
Air Gauges and Air Leaks 209
Air Horn 75
Air Intake System 247
Air Ride Height Data 170
Air System 208
 Air Compressor 211
 Air Dryer Oil-coalescing Cartridge 213
Air Tank Maintenance 213
Air Tanks 213

296

Air-Trac Fastener Torque Values 276
Allison Transmission Lubrication 268
Altering the Electrical System 236
Alternator 241
Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) 67
Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), Trailer 67
Anti-Theft 53
Appliances 120
At first 15,000 mi / 24,000 km or at first PM 183
Automatic Slack Adjuster Stroke Specification 223
Automatic Traction Control 155, 158
Auto-neutral 152
Auto Slack Adjuster 223
Axle
 Auxiliary 166
 Differential Lock 164
 Diff Lock 164
 Dual Range 164
 Pusher Tag 166
 Two Speed 164
Axle, Automatic Traction Control 89

B

Back Button 77
Batteries 237
Batteries, Low-Voltage Disconnect (LVD) 90
Battery, Jump Start 35

Bendix® AD-HF Series Air Dryer 212
Brake, Parking
 Manual release 38
Brakes, ABS Off-Road 90
Brake System 221
Brake System Malfunction 69
Bulb Check 52

C

Cab
 How to Lock and Unlock the Doors 11
Cab Access 10
Cab Air Filter 227
Cab HVAC Fresh Air Filter Replacement 227
Cab Maintenance 223
Cab Structure, Doors and Hoods 228
CAN bus 236
Care of Screens on the Dashboard 228
Check Engine Oil Level 243
Cigarette Lighter and Ashtray (Option) 119
Circuits Disconnected by LVD 90
Cleaning LCD Screens 228
Cleaning Screen 228
Clutch Abuse Protection 153
Collision Mitigation 145
Column Mounted Transmission Control 151
Column Shifter (Option) 103
Component Specific Intervals 185

Y53-6181-1C1 (01/2026)

Cooling system maintenance 228
 Cooling System Overheating 32
 Cranking Battery Specification 239
 cruise control 136
 Cruise Control 142

- Cancel 143
- Change Set Speed 143
- Resume Set Speed 143
- Set Speed 142
- Standard 141

 Custom Gauge View (Option) 56
 Custom Setup 56

D

Daily Checks 25
 Dash Switch

- Tailer Hand Brake 154

 Dash Switches 79
 Deep Snow and Mud Switch 159
 Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) - Diesel Engines Only 50
 Differential, Inter-Axle Lock 70
 Digital Display 51
 Digital Gauges 49
 Display Notifications 54
 Door Mounted Mirror Controls 110
 Drag Link Castle Nut Torque 273
 Drive Axle - Dana 220
 Drive Axle - Meritor 220

Y53-6181-1C1 (01/2026)

Drive Axle - SISU Breather and Brakes 221
 Drive Axle (SISU) Inspection 221
 Drive Axle - (SISU) Lube Filter 221
 Drive Axle (SISU) Oil Servicing 221
 Drive Neutral Reverse Selector 152
 Driver Assistance 141

- Object Detected Alert 145

 Driving Tips and Techniques 129
 Drum Brake Inspection 223
 Dual Air System Function Test 213
 Dual Range (Two-Speed) Rear Axle 164
 Dual USB Charger 119
 Dump Truck, Body Up 70
 Dump Truck, Trailer Body Up 70

E

Eaton/Dana Axle Lubrication 220
 ECU - Bendix SDP5 234
 Effectiveness and Limitations 160
 Electrical System 233
 Emissions 140
 Emissions Engine Derate 72
 Emissions, High Exhaust System Temperature 72
 Engine Aftertreatment System 140
 Engine Air filter 247
 Engine Brake 102

- Column Mounted Transmission Control 136

PACCAR Transmission 136
 Engine Brake Column Mounted Transmission Control 136
 Engine Brake indicator 136
 Engine, Brake Level 91
 Engine BrakeSaver or Transmission Retarder 70
 Engine, Check Engine 71
 Engine Coolant Temperature 48
 Engine Cooling Recommendations and Specifications 228
 Engine, Cruise Control On/Off 91
 Engine Fan 246
 Engine Fan Override 92
 Engine is overheating 32
 Engine, Low Coolant Level 71
 Engine Maintenance 242
 Engine Mounting 248
 Engine Oil Pressure 48
 Engine, Overspeed 71
 Engine, Shutdown 93
 Engine Start Module 35
 Engine Wait-To-Start Lamp 72
 Engine Warm Up 127
 ESM 35
 Every 15,000 mi / 24,000 km / Monthly 188
 Every 25,000 mi / 40,000 km / 6 Months 192
 Every 30,000 mi / 48,000 km 193

Every 60,000 mi / 96,000 km / 6 Months 195

Every 120,000 mi / 192,000 km / Annually 202

Every 240,000 mi / 384,000 km 206

Every 300,000 mi / 480,000 km / 6,750 Hours / 3 Years 206

Every 500,000 mi / 800,000 km / 5 years 207

Every 750,000 mi / 1,200,000 km/ 24,000 Hours / 8 years 207

Exhaust 140

Exhaust System 248

Exterior Lighting Flashes 108

Exterior Lighting Self-Test (ELST) 97

F

Fifth Wheel Bi-Annual Maintenance 250

Fifth Wheel Monthly Maintenance 250

Fifth Wheel Slide Switch 93

Final Chassis Bill of Material 10

Final Stopping Procedures 132

First 3,000-5,000 mi / 4800-8000 km 180

Flashing Headlamps, Aftertreatment Warning 140

Flash-to-Pass 109

Flash-to-Warn 108

Flex Air Fastener Torque Values 277

Following Distance Alerts 145

Frame 249

Frame Fastener Torque Requirements 273

Front axle and Suspension 217

Fuel System 250

Fuel Tank 251

Fuse

- Inspect and replace 33
- Location 34

Fuse box label 236

G

Gauges

- Fuel Level 50
- Optional 51
- Vehicle Air Pressure 49

Gauge Views 55

General Safety Instructions 6

Generic Air, Accessory 93

Glove Box 120

Greenhouse Gas Certified Configuration 214, 288

Greenhouse Gas Certified Tires 267

H

Hand Brake

- Trailer 154

Heater and Air Conditioner Maintenance 251

Heating and Air Conditioning 112

High Beams 107

- How to turn on 107

Hill Hold 73

Horn 75

Horn honking, Aftertreatment Warning 140

How to Add Coolant to the Cooling System 231

How to Adjust Mirrors 110

How to Check the Compressed Air System for Leaks 210

How to Enter the Passcode 53

How to inspect brake pads on disc brakes 222

How to Lock the Kingpin 171

How to Manually Control the Cab Air Conditioner 115

How to Recover a Vehicle

- Towing 36

How to Refill the Washer Fluid Reservoir 270

How to Replace a Headlight Bulb 253

How to Replace Air Conditioner Filter 253

How to Slide the Fifth Wheel 174

How to Start the PTO -(within PTO Operations) 138

How to Stop the PTO 139

How To Use a Recovery Hitch 40

How to Use a Seat Belt 20

How to Wash the Exterior of the Vehicle 226

HVAC 112
HVAC Air Filter 227

I

Ice 44
Illustrations 6
In Cab Battery Access 238
Inspect Coolant Level 231
Inspect Disc Brake Caliper for Running Clearance 222
Inspecting Noise and Emission Components 258
Install Engine Belt 246
Installing Batteries 239
Instrument Cluster 48
Instrument Panel 47
Introduction 111

K

Key Fob 241
Keyless Entry 241
Kingpin Release Switch 94
Komfort Latch 22

L

Lamps, Headlamps Flashing, Aftertreatment Warning 140
Left Switch Pod 75
Lighting Controls 134

Y53-6181-1C1 (01/2026)

Lights, Cab and Panel Dimmer Switch 91, 94

Lights, Exterior Lights Switch (ELS) 95

Lights, Flood ISO 3732 Spare 98

Lights, High Beam 73

Low Air Alarm 31

Low Air Leaf Torque Values 277

Low Oil Pressure Lamp 32

Low Voltage Disconnect (LVD) (Option) 235

Lubricants 256

Lubrication Specification Chart 274

M

Maintaining Headlight Performance 254

Maintenance Manuals 10

Maintenance Schedule 181

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 73

Manual and Automatic Mode 106

Manually lock a differential 42

MAX Mode

Operation 137

Menu 59

Menu Control Switch 99

Meritor Axle Lubrication 220

Message Waiting 74

Mirror Controls 110

Mirror switch 110

Mud 44

N

Neutral Coast Mode 152

New Vehicle Maintenance Schedule:

First 2,000 mi / 3,218 km 180

First 50-100 mi / 80-160 km 179

First 500 mi / 800 km 180

First Day 179

Noise and Emission Control 257

Noise Control System - Maintenance Log 260

Notifications

What are Notifications? 54

O

Off-Road ABS Function Switch (Optional) 159

Oil Level 257

Operation 90

P

PACCAR AMT Shifting gears 151

PACCAR Shifter 102

Park Brake 74

Pipe and Hose Clamp Torque Values 245, 272

Post Trip 61

power distribution box 236

Power Steering Fluid 263
 Prepare the Axles for Towing 41
 Preparing the Axles for Towing 41
 Pressure Units 50
 Pre-Trip Inspection 23
 Program Key Fobs 241
 PTO indicator 136
 PTO Mode 58
 PTO Operations 138
 Purpose 90

R

Radiator Hoses 231
 Radio Stereo System (option) 119
 Rear Axle Alignment 220
 Rear Axle and Suspension 218
 Rear Axle Lubrication 220
 Recovery hitch
 Best practices 43
 Prepare axles 41
 Recovery Hitch 40
 Recovery hitch capacities 43
 Releasing the Kingpin Manually 173
 Releasing the Kingpin Remotely (option) 172
 Remote Keyless Entry 241
 Removing Batteries 239
 Repairs 9
 Replace Battery Box Cover 240

300

Replace HVAC Air Filter 227
 Replace the Recirculation Air Filter 253
 Returning to Service after Recovering 44
 Right Switch Pod 76
 Roadside Assistance 31
 Roll Stability 157
 Roll Stability Example 157

S

Safety Messages and Notes 5
 Safety Restraint System - Inspection 261
 Sand 44
 Scroll Wheel 76
 Seat 15
 Seat Belt, Fasten 74
 Seat Belts 18
 Secondary Transmission Shift Features 104
 Set Shut Down Timer 140
 Settings 60
 Sliding Fifth Wheels 250
 Slow Battery Charging 240
 Snow 44
 Speedometer 48
 Stability Control (Option) 68
 Start Key Switch 94
 Steering Shaft Bolt Torque Specifications 264
 Steering System 262

Steering Wheel Controls (option) 75
 Stop/Turn Signal Lamp Operation 107
 Suspension, Air Retention 100
 Suspension, Axle, Pusher 100
 Suspension, Axle, Tag 100
 Suspension, Lift 100
 Suspension U-Bolts, Grade 8 276
 Systems Check 27

T

Tachometer 49
 Telematics Control Unit FCC Information 294
 Test the Exterior Lights 97
 Tether Belts 21
 Tilt Telescope 102
 Tire Inflation 265
 Tire Pressure Monitoring System 57
 Tires 265
 Topping Up the Engine Oil 243
 Towing Doubles Or Triples May Reduce The Effectiveness Of Stability Systems 161
 Towing the Vehicle 45
 Tow Pin 40
 Traction Control 69
 Trailer, Axle Lift Forward 101
 Trailer, Axle Lift Rear 101
 Trailer Dump Gate 101
 Trailer Hand Brake 91, 154

Dash Switch 154
Transmission
 , Automated 150
 Maintenance 268
Transmission, Check 74
Transmission Gear Display 147
Transmission Mode 106
Transmission Oil Temperature Gauge 147
Transmission, Oil Temperature High 74
Trip Info 58
Turbocharger 247
Turn Signal 102, 107
Turn Signal, Left 74
Turn Signal, Right 75

U

Under hood air filter housing 247
Upshifting and Downshifting 106
Using the Manual - Automatic Button 151

Using the Telematic System 121
Using this Manual 5

V

Variable Road Speed Limiter 143
Variable Speed Limiter
 How to Set the Variable Speed Lim-
 iter 143
Vehicle Emissions Limited Express War-
ranty 291
Vehicle ID Labels 284
Vehicle is stuck 44
Vehicle Light Bulb Specifications 278
Vehicle Loading 24
Vehicle Telematic System 120
Views 55
Visual inspection while approaching the
vehicle 25

W

Warm Up, Engine 127
Warning Lights
 Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) 69
 Stop Engine 31, 71
Warning Lights and Indicators 62
Weekly Checks 26
Welcome Screen 52
What to do before starting the vehicle 23
Wheel Cap Nut Torque Specifications 280
Wheels 268
Windshield Washer 110
Windshield Wiper 109
Windshield Wiper/Washer 270

Y

Yaw Control 158
Yaw Control Example 158
Yaw Stability 157

PETERBILT MOTORS COMPANY

A PACCAR Company
P.O. Box 90208
Denton, Texas 76202

Do not remove the manual from vehicle.
Before operating vehicle study the manual carefully.
Read and understand all warnings, cautions and notes.

Need help? Give us a call 24 hours a day
1.800.4.PETERBILT



SCAN THIS QR CODE
TO ACCESS ONLINE
DRIVER RESOURCES.
peterbilt.com/driver-resources



Y53-6181-1C1
Printed in the U.S.A. 01/26